

A COMPENDIOUS
INTRODUCTION
TO THE
LATIN TONGUE,
Collected from the best GRAMMARIANS
Both ANTIENT and MODERN,
WITH
Useful OBSERVATIONS on the WHOLE.

By WILLIAM PITTMAN, D. D.

Chaplain to his Grace the Duke of *Bridgewater*, and late
Fellow of *King's Coll.*

L O N D O N, ,

Printed for C. HITCH and L. HAWES, at the *Red
Lion in Pater-noster Row.* 1752.

1607/4700.

$\alpha/2$



ADVERTISEMENT.

The following Collection of Grammar was made with a View to the Ease of the Teacher, as well as Learner; how far this End is attained Experience only will evince; but those Gentlemen, who prefer teaching Latin by English Rules (as no doubt many do) will here find what is necessary for their Purpose; and others, who choose rather the old Way, will, I hope, have no reason to complain, if they find it somewhat shorter and smoother.



GRAMMAR lays down rules for the speaking and writing a language correctly and properly ; and consists of four parts, Orthography, Etymology, Syntax, and Profody.

ORTHOGRAPHY.

THE principles of grammar are letters ; letters make syllables, syllables words, and words sentences :

And of these rightly put together is formed a language, or speech.

The letters in the latin tongue are thus written :

Capitals.

A B C D E F G H I J K L M N O P Q R S T V U X Y Z :

Small.

a b c d e f g h i j k l m n o p q r s t u v x y z.

Of these, six are vowels, viz. a, e, i, o, u, y. The rest consonants.

A vowel will make a full, and perfect sound of itself.

A consonant cannot sound without a vowel.

Consonants are divided into mutes, liquids, and double letters.

The liquids are l, m, n, r ; the double are, j, x, z ; and the remaining ones are called mutes. K, Y, Z, are found only in words originally greek.

Letters are also denominated by radicals, and servile.

Radicals are those, which in the declining of words never alter :

Servile are those, which in declining of words are subject to alteration :

As, Domin - us, i, o, &c. Am - o, as, at, &c.

A syllable is a distinct sound of one, or more letters, that can be pronounced at one breath.

There are commonly as many syllables in a word as there are vowels.

But a diphthong is the sound of two vowels in one syllable

Of diphthongs, three are proper, viz. au, eu, ei ; in which both vowels are heard ; and two improper, viz. æ, œ, in which the a and o are not heard.

To these some add the three following (ai) as in Maia. (oi) as in Troia. (yi) or (ui) as in Harpia, or Harpuia.

OF THE USE OF CAPITALS.

Capitals are used to begin sentences, verses, titles, proper names, and remarkable words. When found alone they sometimes stand for abbreviations : as, A. D. Anno Domini : A. M. Anno Mundi : A. U. C. Ab Urbe Condita : H. S. Sestertius : S. C. Senatus Consultum : P. C. Patres Conscripti : R. P. Res Publica : CoSS. Consulibus : S. P. Q. R. Senatus, Populusque Romanus, &c.

Sometimes capitals stand for a latin prænomen. Thus A. stands for Aulus. C. for Caius. J. for Caia. D. for Decius, &c.

N. B. The Romans had usually three, and oft-times four names : as, 1st, Publius, 2d, Cornelius, 3d, Scipio, 4th, Africanus. The first their Prænomen, or proper name. 2d, Their Nomen, or name of their stock, or ancestors. 3d, Cognomen, or name peculiar to their particular branch of the family. 4th, Agnomen, or name given them from some remarkable event or deed.

Sometimes capitals serve to express numbers.

I.	1.		Ī.	1000.
V.	5.		V̄.	5000.
X.	10.		IX̄.	9000.
L.	50.		X̄.	10000.
C.	100.	Ɔ.	200.	
D or IJ.	500.		L̄.	50000.
M or CIJ.	1000.		C̄.	100000.
IJJ.	5000.	qj.	5000.	
CCIJJ.	10000.		M̄.	1000000.
IJJJ.	50000.			
CCCIJJJ.	100000.			

N. B. A less number before a greater is to be taken from it : as IX. 9 : but after a greater is to be added to it : as XI. 11.

OF POINTS, OR STOPS.

These are fix mark'd thus :

A Comma,



To be used at the shortest member of a sentence, and where the voice falls as little as possible : here the reader may stop till he can count one.

A Semi-

A Semicolon ;

To be used in marking the division, or opposition of things ; and where the sense is a little fuller : here the voice may fall somewhat more, and the reader stop till he can count two.

A Colon :

To be used in the middle of a sentence, where the sense is yet fuller, tho' the period not finished : here the opinion is still greater, and the reader may stop till he can count three.

A Period .

To be used only at the end of a sentence, where the sense and period are both compleat : here the voice falls gradually away, and the reader may stop till he can count four.

An Interrogation ?

To be used after asking a question : as, *Why so merry ?* here the voice must not be allowed to fall.

An Exclamation
or Admiration !

To be used after any sudden cry, or wondering : as, *O times ! O manners !* Note, these last are equal in time to the period.

The other marks used in writing are :

A Parenthesis ()

The words included between this mark may be left out in a sentence without spoiling the sense of it.

An Hyphen -

Is used either to connect the parts of words at the ending of one line, and the beginning of another ; or else to join two words into one : as, *Sun-burnt*.

A Diæresis, }
or Dialis } "

Is plac'd over diphthongs to part the two vowels into two distinct syllables : as, *airéal*.

An Apostrophe '

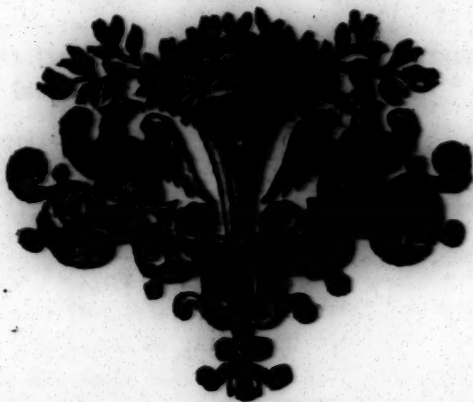
Is set over that part of a word, where a letter is left out : as, *'Tis for it is*.

Other marks are, [] Parathesis. § Section. ¶ Paragraph.
" Quotations. \ A Caret. †† References. * Asterism.
☞ An Index. ^ A Circumflex, never placed but over a long vowel. ˘ A breve over a short syllable. ˉ Over a long one.

Obs. Spell as you speak, this rule remember ever ;
The sounds of *simple*, parts of *compounds* sever.

THE USE OF POINTS.

The use of points is to ascertain the sense of words in construction, and to regulate the accent of the voice in reading.



E T Y M O L O G Y.

The parts of Speech are Eight : *

Noun	} declined, i. e. alter'd in it's end- ing.	Adverb	} undeclined, i. e. unal- ter'd in it's ending.
Pronoun		Conjunction	
Verb		Preposition	
Participle		Interjection	

O F A N O U N.

A NOUN is any thing you can give a name to.
Of nouns some be substantives and some be adjectives.

A noun substantive will make sense of itself, and take *a*, *an*, or *the* before it : as, *puer*, a boy ; *ovum*, an egg ; *aether*, the sky.

A noun adjective denotes the quality of a thing, and must have a substantive joined with it to shew it's signification : as, *bonus puer*, a good boy ; *malus puer*, a bad boy.

Substantives are either proper or common : They are called proper, when they belong only to the thing or person spoken of : as, *Londinum*, London ; *Petrus*, Peter ; common, when belonging to all of the same kind : as, *urbs*, a city ; *homo*, a man.

There are five things to be considered in Nouns :
Number, Case, Gender, Declension, and Person.

O F N U M B E R.

N O U N S have two numbers, the singular, and the plural ; the singular number speaketh but of one . as, *lapis*, a stone ; the plural of more than one : as, *lapides*, stones.

O F C A S E.

C A S E shews the different endings of the same noun.
Nouns have six cases in each number, viz. the nominative, genitive, dative, accusative, vocative, and ablative.

The nominative case cometh before the verb, and answereth to this question, *who ?* or *what ?*

The sign of the genitive is, *of*, or *'s* with an apostrophe, and answereth to this question, *whose* or *whereof*.

* These eight parts of speech may very well be reduced to three, or at most four, viz. *Noun*, *Adnoun*, *Verb*, *Participle* ; but for form sake we have kept to the old division.

The sign of the dative is, *to* or *for*, and answereth to this question, *to whom*, or *to what*.

The accusative case followeth after the verb, and answereth to this question, *whom* ? or *what* ?

The vocative speaks, or calls to, with or without the sign, *O*.

The ablative depends upon prepositions expressed, or understood, and is commonly known by these signs, *from*, *in*, *with*, *by*, *at*, *on*, *upon*, and *than* after a comparative degree.

OF GENDER.

NOUNS have three genders, the masculine (*hic*) the feminine (*hec*) the neuter (*hoc*). Which article is thus declined :

<i>Singulariter,</i>		<i>Pluraliter,</i>	
Nominativo	<i>Hic, hec, hoc,</i>	Nom.	<i>Hi, he, hec,</i>
Genitivo	<i>Hujus,</i>	Gen.	<i>Horum, harum, horum,</i>
Dativo	<i>Huic,</i>	Dat.	<i>His,</i>
Accusativo	<i>Hunc, hanc, hoc,</i>	Acc.	<i>Hos, has, hec,</i>
Vocativo	<i>Hic, hec, hoc,</i>	Voc.	<i>Hi, he, hec,</i>
Ablativo	<i>Hoc, hac, hoc.</i>	Abl.	<i>His.</i>

Some general rules for the genders.

The names of males are masculine, and of females feminine.

Nouns common to both sexes are the common of two genders.

Nouns of the 1st and 5th declension are feminine.

Nouns of the 2d and 4th are masculine ; but, *on*, *um*, *u*, and indeclinables are neuter.

Nouns of the 3d in, *er*, *or*, *os*, *o*, *u*, are masculine.

Nouns of the 3d in, *as*, *es*, *is*, *x*, or *s* with a consonant are feminine.

Nouns of the 3d in, *a*, *c*, *e*, *l*, *t*, *ar*, *ur*, *us*, are neuter.

Greek nouns commonly follow the gender of the original.

Some nouns, as *parens*, (a father or mother) may be declined with *hic* and *hec* ; these are said to be of the common gender.

Others, as *dies* (a day) *finis* (an end) may even in the same sense be masculine or feminine, and these are called doubtfuls.

Sed cum sine dies numero mas esto secundo.

Epicenæ, or words, in which the sex cannot easily be distinguished, are but of one gender ; and under that one gender, signify both male and female ; as, *aquila*, an eagle, both he and she.

OF DECLENSION.

THERE are five declensions of substantives all known by the ending of the genitive case.

First Declension.

In the first the genitive endeth in (*æ*) and the nominative commonly in *a* :

As in example.

<i>Singulariter,</i>				<i>Pluraliter,</i>			
Nom.	<i>hæc</i>	<i>Musa,</i>	<i>a song,</i>	Nom.	<i>hæ</i>	<i>Musæ,</i>	<i>songs,</i>
Gen.		<i>Musæ,</i>	<i>of a song,</i>	Gen.		<i>Musarum,</i>	<i>of songs,</i>
Dat.		<i>Musæ,</i>	<i>to a song,</i>	Dat.		<i>Musis,</i>	<i>to songs.</i>
Acc.		<i>Musam,</i>	<i>a song,</i>	Acc.		<i>Musas,</i>	<i>songs,</i>
Voc.	<i>ô</i>	<i>Musa,</i>	<i>o song,</i>	Voc.	<i>ô</i>	<i>Musæ,</i>	<i>o songs,</i>
Abl.		<i>Musâ,</i>	<i>from, with,</i>	Abl.		<i>Musis,</i>	<i>from, with,</i>
			<i>or by a song.</i>				<i>or by songs.</i>

Obs. 1. *Æ* in the genitive singular is by the poets changed into *ai*, or *as* : *as*, *aulai*, *viâs* for *aulæ*, *viæ*.

Obs. 2. *Arum* in the genitive plural is sometimes contracted into *ûm* : *as*, *cælicolûm* for *cælicolarum*.

Obs. 3. *Filia* and *nata* make the dative and ablative plural in *-is*, or *ia -abus* ; *deæ*, *mula*, *equa*, *liberta*, &c. (to distinguish the sex) in *-abus* rather. *Anima* and some old words likewise end in *-abus*.

Besides the common termination in *-a*, there are three more, in words, derived from the Greek, ending in *-as*, *es*, *e*, to be declined after the following examples :

<i>Singulariter.</i>						
Nom.	Gen.	Dat.	Acc.	Voc.	Ablat.	
<i>Æne - as</i>	<i>æ</i>	<i>æ</i>	<i>an rard -am</i>	<i>a</i>	<i>â</i>	
<i>Anchis - es</i>	<i>æ</i>	<i>æ</i>	<i>en r. -em</i>	<i>ê - a</i>	<i>ê - â</i>	
<i>Penelop - e</i>	<i>es</i>	<i>e</i>	<i>en r. -em</i>	<i>ê</i>	<i>ê</i>	

Obs. 1. From nominatives in *-a*, are found such vocatives as these : *Atrida*, *Orestæ*, *Thyestæ*, &c. and feminine accusatives in *an* ; *as*, *Majan*, *Æginan*, &c. especially in poetry, To which may be added *Ossan*.

Obs. 2. Patronymics in *-des*, stones, and some proper names in *-tes* are of the first declension ; Other nouns in *-es* are generally of the third, and some of both.

Words to be declined after the pattern of the first declension.

<i>f. ara</i> , an altar.	<i>f. ira</i> , anger.	<i>m. cometa</i> , a comet.
<i>f. causa</i> , a cause.	<i>f. mensa</i> , a table.	<i>m. planeta</i> , a planet.
<i>f. gemma</i> , a jewel.	<i>f. Helena</i> , Helen.	<i>m. poëta</i> , a poet.

Second Declension.

In the second the genitive endeth in (*i*) and the nominative commonly in *-us, er, um* :

As in example.

Singulariter,		Pluraliter,	
N. <i>hic</i>	Dominus, a lord,	N. <i>bi</i>	Domini, lords,
G.	Domini, of a lord,	G.	Dominorum, of lords,
D.	Domino, to a lord,	D.	Dominis, to lords,
A.	Dominum, a lord,	A.	Dominos, lords,
V. <i>ô</i>	Domine, o lord,	V. <i>ô</i>	Domini, o lords,
A.	Domino, from a lord.	A.	Dominis, from lords.

Singulariter,		Pluraliter,	
N. <i>hic</i>	Magister, a master,	N. <i>bi</i>	Magistri, masters,
G.	Magistri, of a master,	G.	Magistorum, of masters,
D.	Magistro, to a master,	D.	Magistris, to masters,
A.	Magistrum, a master,	A.	Magistros, masters,
V. <i>ô</i>	Magister, o master,	V. <i>ô</i>	Magistri, o masters,
A.	Magistro, with a master.	A.	Magistris, with masters.

Singulariter,		Pluraliter,	
N. <i>hoc</i>	Regnum, a kingdom,	N. <i>hec</i>	Regna, kingdoms,
G.	Regni, of a kingdom,	G.	Regnerum, of kingdoms,
D.	Regno, to a kingdom,	D.	Regnis, to kingdoms,
A.	Regnum, a kingdom,	A.	Regna, kingdoms,
V. <i>ô</i>	Regnum, o kingdom,	V. <i>ô</i>	Regna, o kingdoms,
A.	Regno, by a kingdom.	A.	Regnis, by kingdoms.

Obs. When the nominative endeth in *-us*, the vocative ends in *-e* : as, *dominus, domine* ; but these nouns following sometimes make the vocative in *-us*, though oftner in *-e* :

Ut caseus, populus, fluvius, chore, Bacchus, ocellus.

Some adjectives likewise are found with *-us* in the vocative, though this is very rare.

Deus, hath *Deus* in the vocative, and in the plural more frequently *Dîi*, and *Diis*, than *Dei*, and *Deis*.

Proper names in *-ius* form the vocative in *-i* : as, *Antonius. Antoni* ; also *filius*, often makes *filî*, and *genius, genî*. But Greek nouns still retain *-e* : as, *Tyrintie, Evie, Sperchie*, being properly adjectives.

Nouns of the neuter gender have the nominative, accusative, and vocative alike ; and in the plural number of every declension they end all in *-a*.

In the genitive singular *-ii* is sometimes contracted into *-i* : as, *negotii*, for *negotii*.

In the genitive plural *-orum* is sometimes contracted in *-um* : as, *deum* for *deorum*. The nominative and vocative are always alike in the plural number, and so are the dative and ablative.

Vir, and it's compounds, belong to this declension ; the other terminations are greekish, viz. *-os, on, eus, us*, and differ, as follows, from the latin form.

In <i>-os</i> short		<i>-os</i> long	
Nom. Delos		N. and V. Athos	
Acc. Delon.		G. D. Ac. Ab. Atho : or, on <i>-onis</i>	
		of the 3d regular.	
<i>-on</i>		<i>-eus.</i>	
Nom. Acc. and V. Ilion.		Nom. Orpheus, Acc. Orpheon, or	
		else of the 3d thus,	
		N. Orpheus	
		G. Orpheos	
		D. Orpheï	
		Acc. Orphean	
		V. Orpheu	
		Ab. Orpheo,	

Contract nouns in *-us* form the vocative in *-u* : as, *Pantbûs, o ? Pantbû. Oedipus, Voc. Oedipu, or Oedipu.*

N. B. The genitive plural of all greek nouns ends in (*ων*) *-ôn.*

Words to be declined after the pattern of the second declension.

<i>us,</i>	<i>er,</i>	<i>um.</i>
m. annus, a year.	m. ager -ri, a field.	n. damnum, a loss.
m. corvus, a crow.	m. aper -ri, a boar.	n. donum, a gift.
m. nasus, a nose.	m. gener -ri, a son in law.	n. membrum, a limb.
m. taurus, a bull.	m. focer -ri, a father in law.	n. templum, a temple.
m. turdus, a thrush.	m. puer -ri, a boy.	n. oppidum, a town.
m. ursus, a bear.	m. vir -ri, a man.	n. saxum, a stone.

*Third Declension.*In the third the genitive endeth in (*is*)

As in example.

<i>Singulariter,</i>		<i>Pluraliter,</i>	
N. <i>hic</i>	Labor, labour,	N. <i>hi</i>	Labores, labours,
G.	Laboris, of labour,	G.	Laborum, of labours,
D.	Labori, to labour,	D.	Laboribus, to labours,
A.	Laborem, labour,	A.	Labores, labours,
V. <i>ô</i>	Laber, o labour,	V. <i>ô</i>	Labores, o labours,
A.	Labore, from labour,	A.	Laboribus, from labours.

<i>Singulariter,</i>		<i>Pluraliter,</i>	
N. <i>hæc</i>	Navis, a ship,	N. <i>hæc</i>	Naves, ships,
G.	Navis, of a ship,	G.	Navium, of ships,
D.	Navi, to a ship,	D.	Navibus, to ships,
A.	Navem, vel im, a ship,	A.	Naves, ships,
V. <i>ô</i>	Navis, o ship,	V. <i>ô</i>	Naves, o ships,
A.	Nave, vel i, from a ship.	A.	Navibus, from ships.

<i>Singulariter,</i>		<i>Pluraliter,</i>	
N. <i>hoc</i>	Pondus, a weight,	N. <i>hæc</i>	Pondera, weights,
G.	Ponderis, of a weight,	G.	Ponderum, of weights,
D.	Ponderi, to a weight,	D.	Ponderibus, to weights,
A.	Pondus, a weight,	A.	Pondera, weights,
V. <i>ô</i>	Pondus, o weight,	V. <i>ô</i>	Pondera, o weights,
A.	Pondere, with a weight	A.	Ponderibus, with wts.

<i>Singulariter,</i>		<i>Pluraliter,</i>	
N. <i>hic et hæc</i>	Parens, a parent,	N. <i>hi et hæc</i>	Parentes, parents,
G.	Parentis, of a pt.	G.	Parentum, of pts.
D.	Parenti, to a pt.	D.	Parentibus, to pts.
A.	Parentem, a pt.	A.	Parentes, parents,
V. <i>ô</i>	Parens, o parent,	V. <i>ô</i>	Parentes, o parents.
A.	Parente, by a pt.	A.	Parentibus, by pts.

Observations

Observations on the 3d Declension.

Of the Accusative singular.

These end in *-im* only :

Cannabis, & cucumis, buris, sitis, atque securis,
Magudaris, gummi, vis, ravis, tussis, amussis,
Junge mephitis, item simul his conjunge sinapis ;
Plinius at cucumis profert, Cicerôque securam.

So the proper names of Gods (not men always) rivers, cities, and other places in *-is*.

N. B. For *-im* the poets sometimes use *-in*.

These generally make *-em*, rarely *-im* :

Pars, pelvis, strigilis, sementis, clavis, aqualis,
Febris, præsepis, novis, lens junge, cutisque [lendis].
Contra -im vix -em dant puppis, restis, quoque turris.

N. B. *Avim, cratim, messim, ovim, ratim, &c.* are more proper for observation, than imitation.

Of the Ablative singular.

Proper names in *-e*, and adjectives in *-is*, (when used for proper names) make the ablative only in *-e* : as, *Præneste, Martiale* ; so participles used absolutely. But if the noun be neuter, and not absolute, the adjective ends in *-i* only.

Neuters in *al, ar, e*, make the ablative only in *-i* : except

Sal, jubar, atque hepar, laquear, far, gausape, nectar :

Hæc per e nam finem tibi dant ; mare, mane per i -e.

Canalis, securis, and all those words whose accusative ends only in *-im*, or *-in*, or both, make their ablative only in *-i* : except *Tigris, Batis*, and *cannabis*, which have *-e*, and *-i* ; *sinapis -e* only.

Nouns that make *-em*, and *-im*, in the accusative, have *-e*, and *-i*, in the ablative. But *cutis* and *restis*, make *-e* only ; *sementis*, and *strigilis*, *-i* generally.

Continens, finis, occiput, rus, supellex, and *vestis*, have both terminations.

Old words, and poetical ones, have likewise *-e*, and *-i* : as, *Ædile -li, igne -ni, bipennis, bimestris, -e -i, &c.* To which add, *lux, tempus* and *vesper*.

Of the Nom. Acc. and Voc. plural.

These cases are found sometimes in *-eis*, or *-is*, especially from genitives in *-ium*.

In neuters, if the ablative singular ends in *-e*, the nominative, accusative and vocative plural make *-a* ; but if in *-i*, they make *-ia*. Note, *laquear* makes *laquearia*.

Of the Genitive plural.

Genitives in *-as*, or *-is*, make *-ium* : as, *Arpinas, Arpinatium ; Samnis, Samnitium*.

Disyllables, not increasing, make the genitive likewise in *-ium* :

Hæc sed in -um faciunt *vates, panisque, senesque,*

Sic *apis*, atque *pater*, sic *mater*, cum *cavo, frater*. ○

N. B. *Apium* is also read.

Words of two, or more syllables, that end in two consonants, or a double one, make -ium; except *hyems* and *judex*: To which may be added *aruspex, forceps*, and other compounds of *cipio*, in -cept, and the compounds of *facio* in -fex, which make -um; but these are properly adjectives.

Monosyllables, (not greekish) that end in two consonants, or a double one, make their genitive plural in -um: as, *ars, artium*; [*fax,*] *faucium*:

Sic *as, bes, cor, coa, dis, dos*, sic *glis* quoque [*gliris*]

Sic *lar, lis, mas, mus, os*, [*offis*] cum *pare, sal, vas*, [*vadis*].

Exceptions from words in X.

Dux, grex, lex, nux, rex, vox, strix, Phryx excipe, cum *Thrax*.

N. B. *Frugum*, and *precum* are from the obsolete nouns *frux*, and *prex*. The genitive plural of nouns defective in the singular, is to be formed by supposing a regular nominative.

Those nouns that make -i only in the ablative singular, make the genitive plural in -ium; -ium is sometimes contracted into -ûm by the poets.

N. B. Some few words in ancient authors are found to end in -um, and -ium.

Alis makes *alitum* commonly; and *caelites, caelitum*; *opes, opum*. Some old words have -orum: as, *ancilia, sponsalia*. *Bos* makes *bovm*; dative and ablative *bobus*, or *bubus*; so *subus* for *subus*. Lucret.

This Declension has no less than ten different endings in the nominative, viz. *a, e, o, c, l, n, r, s, t, x*. And as it is by much the most difficult, it will be of use to the Learner to practise upon the words hereafter mentioned, in order to make himself more perfect in the manner of declining.

Greekish Nouns.

Greekish nouns sometimes form the genitive in -as, and the accusative in -a:

as, *Areas* $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{adia} \\ \text{vel} \\ \text{ados} \end{array} \right\} \text{adi, ada, \&c.} \left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{as in D. P. sometimes.} \end{array} \right.$

Others take the Greek termination only in the accusative:

as, *Heros, herois, heroi, heroa*.

Those in -is, or -ys, pure in the genitive, are thus declined:

Fem. *Hereis* $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{-is} \\ \text{eos} \end{array} \right\} i \left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{in} \\ \text{-m} \end{array} \right\} i, i.$

Fem. *Tethys* $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{yis} \\ \text{yos} \end{array} \right\} yi \left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{yn} \\ \text{ym} \end{array} \right\} y, ye.$

In -is, impure in the genitive:

Mas. *Paris*, $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{-dis} \\ \text{idos} \end{array} \right\} di \left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{idem} \\ \text{-in} \\ \text{-im} \end{array} \right\} i, ide.$

Fem. Phyllis, { -idis } -di { -idem } i, ida.
 ides ida

N. B. *Archillis*, *Myfis*, *Thais*, occur in the voc. in Terence.

Some nouns make both -is and -idis in the genitive.

Sic *Themis*, atque *Ibis*, sic *Ists*, *Adonis*, & *Iris*,

Maotis, *Phalaris*, quæ jungit *Scrapis*, *Osiris*.

Decline *Dido*, and all other words like it thus :

	Nom.	Gen.	D. A. V. Ab.
Fem. <i>Dido</i>	ûs	ûs	û.

Or else according to the latin form :

<i>Dido</i>	-onis	-oni, &c.
-------------	-------	-----------

Oedipus -podis, &c. which *Juno* always fol-

lows.

Obf. Some proper names in -es form their accusative in -en ; as, *Tiridaten*, *Phraaten*, *Tigranem*. Others in -em or -en ; as, *Euphratem* -en, *Gangem* -en. They likewise frequently throw away -s in the vocative : as, *Achille*, *Ulysses*. Nouns that have -a in the accusative singular, may end in -as in the accusative plural : as, *lampadas*, *lampadas* ; *gigantas*, *gigantas*, &c. Neuters in -ma form the genitive plural in -um, & -orum, as, *poema*, *poematum*, and sometimes in -on : as, *epigramma*, *epigramma-* -on. The dative and ablative plural of such nouns commonly end in -is.

N. B. A word is said to be pure, when the two vowels before the last letter in it make two distinct syllables.

A—makes *atis* : as,

n. *Poema*, *atis*, a poem.

E—-is : as,

n. *Rete*, *is*, a net.

O—-onis : as,

m. *Cudo*,

a cap.

m. *Harpago*,

a grapple.

m. *Ligo*,

a spade.

m. *Lingo*,

one of *Langres*.

m. *Macedo*,

a Macedonian.

m. *Mango*,

-onis a dealer in

slaves.

m. *Spado*,

a eunuch.

m. *Udo*,

a sack.

m. *Unedo*,

the fruit of

the arbut.

but

m. *Anio*, -enis, the river *Anio*.

m. *Apollo*, -inis, *Apollo*.

f. *Caro*, -nis, *flask*.

c. *Homo*, -inis, a man, or woman.

c. *Nemo*, -inis, nobody.

m. *Turbo*, -inis, a whirlwind.

m. *Or -Do*, -dinis, an order.

f. *Vir -Go*, -ginis, a virgin.

C—

n. *Alec*, -ecis, a sort of pickle.

n. *Lac*, -ctis, milk.

L—-lis : as,

a. *Animal*, -is, an animal.

but

n. *Fel*, } gall.

-lis

n. *Mel*, } honey.

-nis : as,

f. *Babylon*, -onis.

but

m. *Acheron* -entis, one of the ri-
 vers of hell.

m. *Pan*, -anos, the God *Pan*.

En—neuter, -inis : as,

n. *Carmen*, -inis, a poem ; so

m. *Fidicen*, } a harper.

m. *Flamen*, } a priest.

m. *Pecten*, } -inis a comb.

m. *Tibicen*, } a piper.

R—-ris. Ter -tris.

Adjectives ber -bris, cer -cris : as,

m. *Lar*, -aris, a house god.

m. *Accipiter*, -tris, a hawk.

Celester, -bris, famous.

Volucer, -cris, winged.

but

n. *Cor*, -rdis, a heart.

n. *Ebur*, -oris, ivory.

n. *Fer*, -rris, corn.

n. *Femur*, -oris, a thigh.

n. *Hepar*, -atis, the liver.

n. *Jecur*, -oris, v. *inoris*, the liver.

m. *Imber*, -bris, a shower.

n. *Iter*,

- n. Iter, -ineris, a journey.
 m. Jupiter, jovis, *Jupiter*.
 n. Robus, oris, an oak.
 n. Uber, eris, a dug, fruitful.

S

As—— -atis : as,

- f. Ætas, atis, age.
 but
 m. As -sis, a pound.
 m. Mas, aris, a male.
 m. Vas, adis, a surety.
 n. Vas, asis, a vessel.
 Es—— -is : as,
 f. Nubes, is, a cloud.
 but
 f. Abies, etis, a fir.
 n. Æs, -ris, copper.
 c. Ales, itis, a great bird.
 d. Ames, itis, a net-stick.
 c. Antistis, itis, a prelate.
 m. Arius, etis, a ram.
 m. Bes -sis, 8 ounces.
 f. Ceres, eris, the Goddess Ceres.
 m. Chremes, etis, v. is, Chremes.
 m. Cespes, itis, a turf.
 m. Cocles, itis, one-eyed.
 c. Comes, itis, a companion.
 m. Cres, etis, one of Ceres.
 Defes, itis, sleekful.
 Dives, itis, rich.
 c. Eques, itis, one on horseback.
 m. Fomes, itis, fuel.
 m. Gorges, itis, a gulf.
 Hebēs, etis, dull.
 c. Heres, edis, an heir.
 c. Hospes, itis, a guest.
 c. Indiges, etis, one deified.
 Interpres, etis, an interpreter.
 m. Lebes, etis, a caldron.
 m. Limes, itis, a boundary.
 Locuples, etis, wealthy.
 m. Magnes, etis, a loadstone.
 f. Merces, edis, a reward.
 d. Merges, itis, a gripe of corn.
 c. Miles, itis, a soldier.
 c. Obles, idis, an hostage.
 m. Palmes, itis, a vine branch.
 c. Pedes, itis, one on foot.
 Perpes, itis, intire.
 m. Pes, edis, a foot.
 m. Poples, itis, the ham.
 Præpes, itis, swift winged.
 m. Præs, edis, a surety.
 c. Præses, idis, a governor.

- Pubes, eris, ripe of age.
 f. Quies, etis, rest.
 f. Requies, etis, v. ei, rest.
 Refes, idis, sluggish.
 m. Satelles, itis, an attendant.
 f. Seges, etis, corn land.
 Sospes, itis, safe.
 m. Stipes, itis, a stake.
 Superstes, itis, surviving.
 m. Tapes, etis, tapestry.
 f. Teges, itis, a mat.
 Teres, etis, round, taper.
 m. Termes, itis, a bough.
 m. Trames, itis, a path.
 d. Tudes, itis, v. is, a hammer.
 m. Vele, itis, a dragoon.
 Is—— -is : as,
 m. Panis, is, bread.
 but
 f. Capis, idis, a kind of cup.
 f. Cassis, idis, a helmet.
 d. Cinis, eris, ashes.
 m. Cucumis, v. er, etis, a cucumber.
 f. Cuspis, idis, a point.
 m. Dis, ditis, Pluto.
 m. Glis, iris, a dormouse.
 m. Lapis, idis, a stone.
 m. Lis, itis, strife.
 m. Pollis, v. en, inis, fine flower.
 d. Pulvis, eris, dust.
 m. Pirois, entis, one of Phœ- }
 bus's horses.
 m. Quiris, itis, a citizen of Rome.
 f. Salamis, inis, the isle Salamis.
 m. Tibris, idis, the river Tiber.
 f. Tigris, idis, a tiger.

So most other Greek nouns in is.

Os—— -atis : as,

- f. Dos, otis, a portion.
 but
 c. Bos, bovis, an ox, bull, or cow.
 c. Custos, odis, a guardian.
 m. Heros, ōis, a hero.
 m. Flos, ōris, a flower.
 m. Mos, ōris, a custom.
 n. Os, ōris, a mouth.
 n. Os -sis, a bone.
 m. Ros, ōris, dew.
 Us—— -eris, monosyllables, aris : as,
 n. Pondus, eris, a weight.
 m. Mus, uris, a mouse.
 but
 n. Corpus, eris, a body.
 n. Decus, oris, glory.

n. Facinus,

- n. *Facinus*, oris, a *fact*.
 n. *Fœnus*, oris, *usury*.
 n. *Frigus*, oris, *cold*.
 f. *Grus*, uis, a *crane*.
 f. *Incus*, ūdis, an *anvil*.
 m. *Lepus*, oris, a *hare*.
 n. *Litus*, oris, a *shore*.
 n. *Nemus*, oris, a *grove*.
 f. *Palus*, ūdis, a *marsh*.
 n. *Pectus*, oris, the *breast*.
 n. *Pecus*, oris, *large cattle*.
 f. *Pecus*, udis, *small cattle*.
 n. *Penus*, oris, *victuals*.
 n. *Pignus*, oris, a *pledge*.
 n. *Stercus*, oris, *dung*.
 c. *Sus*, uis, a *swine*.
 n. *Tempus*, oris, *time*.
 n. *Tergus*, oris, a *hide*.
 f. *Tellus*, ūris, the *earth*.
 m. *Tripus*, odie, a *tripod*.

BS bis. MS, mis.

PS pis, eps not monof. ipis : as,

- f. *Plebs*, bis, the *commonalty*.
 f. *Hyems*, mis, *winter*.
 f. *Stirps*, pis, a *stock*.
 m. *Princeps*, ipis, a *prince*.

but

- Anceps*, ipitis, *doubtful*.
 c. *Anceps*, upis, a *fowler*.
Biceps, ipitis, *two-headed*.
 m. *Gryps*, phis, a *griffon*.
Præceps, ipitis, *head-long*.
Triceps, ipitis, *three-headed*.
 LS, NS, RS -s, into tis : as,
 f. *Puls*, tis, *hasty-pudding*.
 f. *Frons*, tis, a *forehead*.
 f. *Ars*, tis, *art*.

but

- f. *Frons*, -dis, a *leaf*.

- f. *Glans*, dis, an *acorn*.
 f. *Juglans*, dis, a *walnut*.
 c. *Lens*, dis, a *nit*.
 Put -itis : as,
 n. *Caput*, itis, the *head*.
 X -cis, ex not monof. icis : as,
 f. *Fax*, cis, a *torch*.
 f. *Forfex*, icis, *shears*.

but

Astyanax, &c. ætis, *Astyanax*.

- f. *Alex*, æcis, a *ferry fish*.
 m. *Allobrox*, gis, a *sawyard*.
 m. *Aquilex*, gis, a *water-bailiff*.
 m. *Dumherix*, gis, *Dumherix*, &c.
 m. *Harpax*, gis, *amber*.
 m. *Grex*, gis, a *stock*.
 c. *Conjux*, gis, a *yoke-fellow*.
 m. *Hylax*, ætis, a *dog's name*.
 m. *Japix*, gis, a *westerly-wind*.
 f. *Lex*, gis, a *law*.
 f. *Nix*, nivis, *snow*.
 c. *Onyx*, chis, a *precious stone*.
 f. *Nox*, ætis, *night*.
 m. *Oryx*, gis, a *wild goat*.
 m. *Phalanx*, gis, a *squadron*.
 m. *Phryx*, gis, a *Phrygian*.
 m. *Remex*, gis, a *rower*.
 m. *Rex*, gis, a *king*.
 c. *Senex*, is, an *old man or woman*.
 f. *Sphynx*, gis, the *scorpion*.

Sphynx.

- f. *Strix*, gis, a *screech-owl*.
 m. *Styx*, gis, a *river of hell*.
 f. *Supellæx*, ætis, *goods*.
 f. *Sylæx*, gis, the *nymph Syrinx*.
 m. *Verver*, æcis, a *weather*.

These are the most usual endings,
 observation will supply the rest.

Fourth Declension.

In the fourth the genitive case endeth in (-*ūs*) except when the nominative ends in -*u*.

As in example.

Singulariter,		Pluraliter,	
N. <i>hic</i>	<i>Gradus, a step,</i>	N. <i>hi</i>	<i>Gradus, steps,</i>
G.	<i>Gradūs, of a step,</i>	G.	<i>Graduum, of steps,</i>
D.	<i>Gradui, to a step,</i>	D.	<i>Gradibus, to steps.</i>
A.	<i>Gradum, a step,</i>	A.	<i>Gradus, steps,</i>
V. <i>ō</i>	<i>Gradus, o step,</i>	V. <i>ō</i>	<i>Gradus, o steps,</i>
A.	<i>Gradu, by a step.</i>	A.	<i>Gradibus, by steps.</i>

Singulariter,		Pluraliter,	
N. <i>hoc</i>	<i>Tonitru, thunder,</i>	N. <i>hæc</i>	<i>Tonitrua, thunders,</i>
G.	<i>Tonitru, of thunder,</i>	G.	<i>Tonitruum, of thunders.</i>
D.	<i>Tonitru, to thunder,</i>	D.	<i>Tonitribus, to thunders.</i>
A.	<i>Tonitru, thunder,</i>	A.	<i>Tonitrua, thunders,</i>
V. <i>ō</i>	<i>Tonitru, o thunder,</i>	V. <i>ō</i>	<i>Tonitrua, o thunders,</i>
A.	<i>Tonitru, with thunder.</i>	A.	<i>Tonitribus, with thunders.</i>

N. B. *Jesús, G. Jesu, A. Jesum, Voc. Ab. Jesu.*

The dative singular sometimes ends in *u*; as, *vestis nimium indulget, sos vestitus.*

Obf. The genitive plural is sometimes contracted into -*ū*, as *currū* for *curruum*.

These words following make the dative and ablative plural in -*ibus*, viz.

Fortis, -ibus, -tribus, atque lacus, specus, arcus, & artus.

Portus -ibus vel -ubus, quæstusque, verûque, genûque;

Sed colus, & cornus, ficus, pinûsque, penûsque,

Et lacus, & laurus quartæ formæ, atque secundæ

Accipiunt; addas quæis, si placet, angiportus.

Tolle me, cum mi mis, si declinare domus vis.

N. B. These genitives, *tumulti, ornati*, and a few others, are still to be found in some authors, being formerly declined as well after the second as the fourth.

Words to be declined.

m. <i>fluctus,</i>	} - <i>ūs, a</i>	Wave.	n. <i>tonitru,</i>	} thunder.
m. <i>lurus,</i>		Riot.	n. <i>genu,</i>	
f. <i>manus.</i>		Hand.	n. <i>veru,</i>	
				} - <i>a knee.</i>
				} <i>spit.</i>

Fifth Declension.

In the fifth the genitive ends in (*ei*.)

As in example.

<i>Singulariter,</i>		<i>Pluraliter,</i>	
N. <i>hæc</i>	<i>Facies, a face,</i>	N. <i>hæc</i>	<i>Facies, faces,</i>
G.	<i>Faciēi, of a face,</i>	G.	<i>Faciērum, of faces,</i>
D.	<i>Faciēi, to a face,</i>	D.	<i>Faciēbus, to faces,</i>
A.	<i>Faciem, a face,</i>	A.	<i>Facies, faces,</i>
V. <i>ô</i>	<i>Facies, o face,</i>	V. <i>ô</i>	<i>Facies, faces,</i>
A.	<i>Facie, by a face.</i>	A.	<i>Faciēbus, by faces.</i>

Obf. All nouns of the fifth declension end in *-ies*, except *fides*, *spes*, and *res*, which are the only three that have *-e* short in the genitive and dative singular.

All nouns of the fifth declension want the genitive, dative, and ablative plural :

- Excipe *res*, sic et *facies*, *aciſque*, *diſque* :

Though some will have none but *res* and *dies* to be entire in the plural.

Hæc in *-ies*, *abies*, *arion*, *pariſque*, *quiſque*,

Rejice de quintis, nam casus tertia format.

N. B. The genitive and dative of this declension are sometimes found in *-e*: as, *fide*.

Words to be declined.

f. *acies*, an edge.

f. *glacies*, ice.

f. *progenies*, an offspring.

f. *res*, a thing.

f. *species*, a kind.

f. *spes*, hope.

Some irregular nouns are thus declined :

N. <i>hic</i> Pater-familias,		<i>hæc</i> Res-publica,	<i>hæc</i> Jus-jurandum,
G. <i>huj.</i> Patris-familias, &c.		<i>huj.</i> Rei-publicæ, &c.	<i>huj.</i> Juris-jurandi, &c.
<i>Singulariter.</i>	<i>Pluraliter.</i>	<i>Singulariter.</i>	<i>Pluraliter.</i>
N. <i>hæc</i> Vas	Vasa	N. <i>Vis</i>	Vires
G. <i>huj.</i> Vasis	Vasorum	G. <i>Vis</i>	Virium
D. <i>huic</i> Vasi, &c.	Vasis, &c.	D. <i>caræ</i>	Viribus, &c.
		A. <i>Vim</i> , &c.	

Substantive.

Substantive.

Adject. Plur.

Sing. N. A. V. Mille, Pl. N. A. V. Millia, N. A. V. Mille et Millia,

— Ab. Milli.

G. Millium,

G. Milliana,

D. Ab. Millibus. D. Ab. Millibus.

N. B. The adjective *Milli* is applicable to all genders.

The declensions of adjectives.

In adjectives of three endings, as *bonus, bona, bonum*, the first is masculine, the second feminine, and the third neuter.

<i>Singulariter.</i>	<i>Pluraliter.</i>
N. Bonus, bona, bonum,	N. Boni, bonæ, bona,
G. Boni, bonæ, boni,	G. Bonorum, bonarum, bono-
D. Bono, bonæ, bono,	D. Bonis, [rum,
A. Bonum, bonam, bonum,	A. Bonos, bonas, bona,
V. Bone, bonæ, bonum,	V. Boni, bonæ, bona,
A. Bone, bonæ, bono.	A. Bonis.

<i>Singulariter.</i>	<i>Pluraliter.</i>
N. Pulcher, pulchra, pulchrum,	N. Pulchri, pulchræ, pulchra,
G. Pulchri, pulchræ, pulchri,	G. Pulchrorum, pulchrarum,
D. Pulchro, pulchræ, pulchro,	pulchrorum,
A. Pulchrum, pulchram, pul-	D. Pulchris,
chrum.]	A. Pulchros, pulchras, pulchra,
V. Pulcher, pulchra, pulchrum,	V. Pulchri, pulchræ, pulchra,
A. Pulchro, pulchra, pulchro,	A. Pulchris.

<i>Singulariter.</i>	<i>Pluraliter.</i>
N. Tener, tenera, tenerum,	N. Teneri, teneræ, tenera,
G. Teneri, teneræ, teneri,	G. Tenerorum, tenerarum, te-
D. Tenero, teneræ, tenero,	D. Teneris, [nerorum,
A. Tenerum, teneram, tenerum,	A. Teneros, teneras, tenera,
V. Tener, tenera, tenerum,	V. Teneri, teneræ, tenera,
A. Tenero, tenera, tenero,	A. Teneris.

Solus, totus, unus, make the genitive in *-ius*, and the dative in *-i*.

<i>Singulariter.</i>	<i>Pluraliter.</i>
Nom. Solus, sola, solum,	Nom. Soli, solæ, solæ,
Gen. Solius,	Gen. Solorum, solarum, solo-
Dat. Soli,	Dat. Solls, [rum,
Acc. Solum, solam, solum,	Acc. Solos, solas, solæ,
Voc. Sole, sola, solum,	Voc. Soli, solæ, solæ,
Abl. Solo, solâ, solo.	Abl. Solis.

So decline *ullus, nullus, neuter*, and *uter* with its compounds, but without any vocative case.

Singulariter.

Singulariter.
 Nom. Alius, alia, aliud,
 Gen. Alius,
 Dat. Alii, &c.

Singulariter.
 Nom. Alter, altera, alterum,
 Gen. Alterius,
 Dat. Alteri, &c.

N. B. Some of these, as *alius* and *alter*, are found in the regular terminations.

In adjectives of two endings as, *tristis*, *triste*, *doctior*, *doctius*; the first is masculine and feminine, and the second neuter.

Singulariter.
 N. *hic* } *Tristis, hoc triste,*
et hæc }
 G. *hujus* } *Tristis,*
 D. *huic* } *Tristi,*
 A. *hunc* } *Tristem, hoc triste,*
et hanc }
 V. *ô* } *Tristis, et triste,*
 A. *hoc* } *Tristi,*
hac hoc }

Pluraliter.
 N. *hi* } *Tristes, hæc tristia,*
et hæ }
 G. *hor.* } *Tristium,*
har. hor. }
 D. *his* } *Tristibus,*
 A. *hos* } *Tristes, hæc tristia,*
et has }
 V. *ô* } *Tristes, et tristia,*
 A. *his* } *Tristibus.*

Singulariter.
 N. *hic* } *Doctior, hoc doctius,*
et hæc }
 G. *hujus* } *Doctioris,*
 D. *huic* } *Doctiori,*
 A. *hunc* } *Doctiorem, hoc doc-*
et hanc } *tius,*
 V. *ô* } *Doctior, et doctius,*
 A. *hoc* } *Doctiore, vel -i.*
hac hoc }

Pluraliter.
 N. *hi* } *Doctiores, hæc doc-*
et hæ } *tiora,*
 G. *hor.* } *Doctorum,*
har. hor. }
 D. *his* } *Doctioribus,*
 A. *hos* } *Doctiores, hæc doc-*
et has } *tiora,*
 V. *ô* } *Doctiores, et doctiora,*
 A. *his* } *Doctioribus.*

Adjectives of one ending are applicable to all genders as, *felix*.

Singulariter.
 N. *hic* } *Felix,*
hæc hoc }
 G. *hujus* } *Felicitis,*
 D. *huic* } *Felici,*
 A. *hunc* } *Felicem, hoc felix,*
et hanc }
 V. *ô* } *Felix,*
 A. *hoc* } *Felice, vel -i,*
hac hoc }

Pluraliter.
 N. *hi* } *Felices, hæc felicia,*
et hæ }
 G. *hor.* } *Felicitum,*
har. hor. }
 D. *his* } *Felicitibus,*
 A. *hos* } *Felices, hæc felicia,*
et has }
 V. *ô* } *Felices, et felicia,*
 A. *his* } *Felicitibus.*

Adjectives

Adjectives to be declined after their respective patterns.

Like <i>bonus</i>	Like <i>pulcher</i>	Like <i>tener</i> .
Albus, <i>white</i> .	Ater, tra, trum, <i>black</i> .	Asper, era, rum, <i>rough</i> .
Benignus, <i>kind</i> .	Creber, <i>frequent</i> .	Lacer, <i>torn</i> .
Curvus, <i>crooked</i> .	Glaber, <i>smooth</i> .	Liber, <i>free</i> .
Dignus, <i>worthy</i> .	Integer, <i>whole</i> .	Prosper, <i>fortunate</i> .
Ebrius, <i>drunk</i> .	Macer, <i>lean</i> .	Satur, ura, urum, <i>full</i> .
Like <i>trifis</i>	Like <i>doctior</i>	Like <i>felix</i> .
Brevis, <i>short</i> .	Brevior -us, <i>shorter</i> .	Audax, <i>bold</i> .
Comis, <i>courteous</i> .	Dulcior -us, <i>sweeter</i> .	Ferox, <i>ferce</i> .
Dulcis, <i>sweet</i> .	Gravior -us, <i>heavier</i> .	Procer, <i>impudent</i> .
Facilis, <i>easy</i> .	Levior -us, <i>lighter</i> .	Reccens, <i>fresh</i> .
Gravis, <i>heavy</i> .	Melior -us, <i>better</i> .	Vetus -eris, <i>old</i> .

The following adjectives want the neuter ending in the plural.

—clinis, *fox-pes-pes*, ales, con-de-gener, defes, refes, dives, bebes, im-memor, inops, locuples, pauper, panticope, puber, redus, superbes, supplex, teres, tricuspis, uber. N. B. Ditis is found from *dis*, the contract of *dives*.

The pattern of *Ambo, duo, & tres*.

Pluraliter.	Pluraliter.
N. Ambo, ambæ, ambo,	N. bi & bæ Tres, bæc tria,
G. Amborum, arum, orum,	G. bor. bar. ber. Trium,
D. Ambobus, abus, obus,	D. bis Tribus,
A. Ambos, ambas, ambo,	A. bos & bæ Tres, bæc tria,
V. Ambo, ambæ, ambo,	V. ô Tres, ô tria,
A. Ambobus, abus, obus	A. ab bis Tribus.

So decline *duo*.

Instead of *ambos* and *duos*, the ancients used *ambo*, and *duo*, in imitation of the Greeks; as,

Jurejurando obstringam ambo. Hor.

Si duo præterea tales Idæa tulisset

Terra virus. Virg.

Obf. Adjectives declined after the third declension of substantives, not increasing in the genitive case, form the ablative singular commonly in *-i*; the rest in *e* and *i*: but *memor* and *par*, with their compounds, make *i* only.

N. B. *Impare* is read once in Virgil, and *dispare* in Claudian.

Par substantivè positum cum comparè dant e.

Hospes, impubes, sospes, cum paupere, pubes,

Et calabr, impas, juvenis, cum divite, campos,

Atque senex, per -e dant finem; quibus adde superbes.

Those that make *-oris*, in the genitive case singular, make *ora*, in the neuter of the nominative plural, and *-orum* in the genitive. — In the rest the genitive plural ends in *-ium*, if the ablative singular ends in *-i* or in *e* and *i*.

*Hic sed in ar, faciunt vigil, & vetus, adde minorque,
 De ceter, & confors, ubi, cum supplic, puer,
 Degener; adit inopi.*

The following adjectives still retain the termination *-er* in the singular number.

*Campester, volucer, celebr, celer, atque saluber,
 Junge pedester, equester, & acer, junge paluster,
 Ac alacer, sylvester:*

Sing. Nom. Hic acer, hic & hac acris, & hoc acre, Gen. bujus acris, &c.

N. B. Plus and its compounds make plural, and plural.

THE COMPARISON of ADJECTIVES.

THERE are three degrees of comparison, (or rather of significations) the positive, the comparative, and the superlative.

The positive expresses the quality of a thing just as it is: as *durus*, hard, *parvus*, little.

The comparative heightens, or lessens that quality, by carrying it a degree higher, or lower: as, *durior*, harder, *minor*, less.

And it is formed of the first case of the positive that endeth in *-i*, by putting thereto *-or* and *-us*: as,

*Of Duri, comes hic & hac durior, hoc durius,
 Tristi, hic & hac tristior, hac tristius,
 Dulci, hic & hac dulcior, hoc dulcius.*

The superlative carries it to the highest or lowest degree of all; or else increases or diminishes its signification very considerably: as, *durissimus* hardest, *minimus* very little or least.

And is likewise formed from the first case of its positive in *-i*, by changing *-i* into *-issimus*: as,

*Of Duri durissimus, } but maturus makes maturissimus
 Tristi tristissimus, } or maturrimus.
 Dulci dulcissimus, }*

-Er in the positive takes *rimus* in the superlative: as, *pulcher, pulcherrimus*; & *ilis*, in these words changes into *illimus*: as, *facilis facillimus, humilis humillimus, similis simillimus, gracilis gracillimus, imbecillis likewise makes imbecillimus and imbecillissimus.*

Derivates from *disco, volo, facio, and loquor*, commonly change *us* into *entior*, and *entissimus*; but *mirificus*, makes *mirificissimus*.

If before final *-us*, a vowel be,

Choose to compare with *magis, maximè,*

Or else with *minus*, and with *minimè.*

As, *Pius, magis pius, maximè pius*; or, *pius, minus pius, minimè pius*: also *valde, longè, perquam, admodum, &c.* are of-

ten used to express the superlative ; as, *valde pius*; and likewise *per* or *præ* in composition : as, *perbenignus*, *prograndis*, &c.

N. B. The comparative is found to exceed the superlative : as, *major*, *maxime*, greater than the greatest.

It is likewise found in the following words to mean no more than the positive, viz. *plures*, *complura*, *senior*, *ocius*, *dexterior*, *sinisterior*. Nay any comparative may be used in a sense where it does not imply quite so much as the positive : as, *iracundior est paulo*, he is a little — somewhat — or pretty passionate. *Altius egressus celestia tellus cremabit, inferius terras* ; if you go too high you will burn the heavenly abodes, if too low the Earth. And by way of pleonasm, or exaggeration, *magis* is added to the comparative, and *maxime* to the superlative.

A short view of Irregular and defective comparison.

<i>Pos.</i>	<i>Com.</i>	<i>Superl.</i>
Bonus —————	melior —————	optimus.
Dexter —————	dexterior —————	dextimus.
Dives —————	ditior —————	ditissimus.
Exterus —————	exterior —————	extremus <i>vel</i> extimus.
Inferus —————	inferior —————	infimus <i>vel</i> imus.
Magnus —————	major —————	maximus.
Malus —————	pejor —————	peffimus.
Multum —————	plus —————	plurimum.
Nequam —————	nequior —————	nequissimus.
Parvus —————	minor —————	minimus. r. parvissimus.
Posterus —————	posterior —————	postremus <i>vel</i> postumus.
Superus —————	superior —————	supremus <i>vel</i> summus.
Vetus —————	veterior —————	veterimus.
—————	citerior —————	citimus.
—————	deterior —————	deterimus.
—————	interior —————	intimus.
Juvenis —————	junior —————	—————
Nuperus —————	—————	nuperrimus.
—————	ocior —————	ocysimus.
—————	prior —————	primus.
—————	propior —————	proximus.
Senex —————	senior —————	—————
—————	ulterior —————	ultimus, &c.

Adjectives in *-bundus*, *-icus*, *-imus*, *-inus*, *-ivus*, *-orus*, *-plex*, participles in *-dus*, and *-rus*, besides many others, are seldom compared, but yet may have their signification enforced by the addition of other words : as, *magis*, *maxime*, *plurimum*, &c. *colendus*.

N. B. Many in *-bilis* have the comparative, though very few of them the superlative. Some again have only the comparative, as, *anterior*, *seguior*, &c.

OF A PRONOUN.

A PRONOUN is used to supply the place of a noun, and is declined with gender, number, and case.

There are nineteen pronouns, *viz.*

Ego, tu, sui, ille, ipse, is,

Hic, iste, meus, tuus, suus, quis,

Qui, noster, vester, nostras, vestras ; some

To cujas add cujus, cuja, cujum.

Ego, tu, sui, are pronoun substantives, and thus declined :

	<i>Singulariter.</i>
Nom.	<i>Ego,</i>
Gen.	<i>Mei,</i>
Dat.	<i>Mihi,</i>
Acc.	<i>Me,</i>
Voc.	<i>carit,</i>
Abl. a	<i>Me.</i>

	<i>Pluraliter.</i>
Nom.	<i>Nos,</i>
Gen.	<i>Nostrum, vel tri,</i>
Dat.	<i>Nobis,</i>
Acc.	<i>Nos,</i>
Voc.	<i>carit,</i>
Abl. a	<i>Nobis.</i>

	<i>Singulariter.</i>
Nom.	<i>Tu,</i>
Gen.	<i>Tui,</i>
Dat.	<i>Tibi,</i>
Acc.	<i>Te,</i>
Voc.	<i>o Tu,</i>
Abl. a	<i>Te.</i>

	<i>Pluraliter.</i>
Nom.	<i>Vos,</i>
Gen.	<i>Vestrum, vel tri,</i>
Dat.	<i>Vobis,</i>
Acc.	<i>Vos,</i>
Voc.	<i>o Vos,</i>
Abl. a	<i>Vobis.</i>

Sing. & Plur. N. caret, G. Sui, Dat. Sibi, Ac. Ab. Se.
Of him-her-it-self-of themselves.

For *nostrum*, is found *nostrorum* speaking of men, *nostrarum* of women: for *vestrum*, *vestrorum*, *vestrarum*.

The rest are adjectives, of which *Ille, iste, ipse, is, hic*, are called *demonstratives* :

Qui, and its compounds *relatives* :

Quis, and its compounds *interrogatives* :

Meus, tuus, suus, noster, vester, are called *possessives* :

Nostras, vestras, and *cujas*, *gentiles* : and are thus declined.

<i>Singulariter.</i>			<i>Pluraliter.</i>		
N.	Ille,	illa, illud,	N.	Illi,	illæ, illa,
G.	Illius,		G.	Illorum,	illarum, illorum,
D.	Illi,		D.	Illis,	
A.	Illum,	illam, illud,	A.	Illos,	illas, illa,
V.	Ille,	illa, illud,	V.	Illi,	illæ, illa,
A.	Illo,	illâ illo.	A.	Illis.	So decline <i>iste</i> .

<i>Singulariter.</i>		
Nom.	Ipse,	ipfa, ipsum,
Gen.	Ipſius,	
Dat.	Ipſi,	
Acc.	Ipſum,	ipſam, ipſum,
Voc.	Ipſe,	ipſa ipſum,
Abl.	Ipſo,	ipſâ ipſo, &c.

<i>Singulariter.</i>			<i>Pluraliter.</i>		
Nom.	Is,	ea, id,	Nom.	Ii, eæ, ea,	
Gen.	Ejus,		Gen.	Eorum, earum, eorum,	
Dat.	Ei,		Dat.	Iis, <i>vel</i> eis,	
Acc.	Eum, eam, id,		Acc.	Eos, eas, ea,	
Voc.	<i>caret</i> ,		Voc.	<i>caret</i> ,	
Abl.	Eo, eâ, eo.		Abl.	Iis, <i>vel</i> eis.	

Hic, hæc, hoc : as, afore in the noun.

<i>Singulariter.</i>			<i>Pluraliter.</i>		
N.	Qui, quæ, quod,		N.	Qui, quæ, quæ,	
G.	Cujus,		G.	Quorum, quarum, quorum,	
D.	Cui,		D.	Quibus, <i>vel</i> quæis,	
A.	Quem, quam, quod,		A.	Quos, quas, quæ,	
V.	<i>caret</i> ,		V.	<i>caret</i> ,	
A.	Quo, quâ, quo, <i>vel</i> quî,		A.	Quibus, <i>vel</i> quæis.	

Note, That *quî* in the ablative is of all genders and numbers.

Obſ. *Quis* is thus declined, only in the neuter it makes *quod*, *vel quid*; but its compounds, *ſiquis*, *nequis*, *aliquis*, *nunquis*, in the feminine ſingular, and neuter plural for *quæ*, make *qua*, and *ecquis* makes both.

Meus, *tuus*, *ſuus*, are declined like *bonus*; *noſter*, and *veſter*, like *pulcher*; only *meus* makes *mi*, in the vocative.

Noſtras, *veſtras*, and *cujas*, like *felix*.

Sing. Nom. *hic hæc hoc Noſtras*,
Gen. *hujus Noſtratis*, &c.

Note, All nouns, or pronouns, which one cannot call upon, or addreſs ones ſelf to, have no vocative.

Pronouns compound and decompound.

Nominatives

Gen.

Dat.

Acci.

Quisnam, quænam, quodnam, *vel* quidnam. — Cujusnam, &c.

Quispiam, quæpiam, quodpiam, *vel* quidpiam, &c.

Quisquam, quæquam, quodquam, *vel* quidquam & quicquam, &c. — quenquam.

Quisq; quæq; quodq; quicq; *vel* quidq; &c.

Quisquis — quidquid, *vel* quicquid. — Cujuscujus. — Cuicui. Quicquid.

Quicunque, quæcunque, quodcunque. — Cujuscunque, &c.

Quidam, quædam, quoddam *vel* quiddam, &c.

Quilibet, quælibet, quodlibet, &c.

Quivis, quævis, quævis *vel* quidvis, &c.

Quotuscunque, quotacunque, quotumcunque, &c.

Quotusquisque, quataqueque. — D. Quotocuique. — Acc. Quotumquemque.

Unusquisque, unaqueque, unumquodque. Gen. Unuscujusque. Dat. Unicuique, &c.

Note. *Quidam* makes *quendam*, *quandam*, &c. in the accusative singular, and *quorundam*, *quarundam*, &c. in the genitive plural.

Singulariter.

Nom. Idem, eadem, idem,

Gen. Ejusdem,

Dat. Eidem,

Acc. Eundem, eandem, idem,

Voc. Idem, eadem, idem,

Abl. Eodem, eadem, eodem.

Pluraliter.

Nom. Iidem, eadem, eadem,

Gen. Eorundem, earundem, eorum.

Dat. Eisdem, *vel* iisdem, [dem,

Acc. Eisdem, eisdem, eadem,

Voc. Iidem, eadem, eadem,

Abl. Eisdem, *vel* iisdem.

Singulariter.

Nom. Iſtic, iſtæc, iſtoc *vel* iſtuc,

Acc. Iſtunc, iſtanc, iſtoc *vel* iſtuc,

Abl. Iſtoc, iſtæc, iſtoc.

Pluraliter.

Acc. Neuter Iſtæc.

Sing. Acc. { Eccum, } Plur. Acc. { Eccos, } ſo { Ellum, } Elloq;
 { Eccam, } { Eccas, } { Ellam, } Ellas.

Some have additional syllables : as, *ce*, *cine*, *met*, *pte*, *te*, tackt to them to render their signification more pointed and emphatical.

Sing. Nom. Hicce, hæcce, hocce. Gen. Hujusce. Plur. Hicce Dat. hicce.

N. Hiccine, — hæccine, — hoccine,

Sing. Acc. Huncine, — hancine, — hoccine, Plur. Neut. hæccine,

Ab. Hoccine, — hæccine, — hoccine.

Ab. Sin. { Mecum, Nobiscum,
 { Tecum, Vobiscum,
 { Secum, Plur. Secum,
 { Quicum, Quibuscum,
 or Quocum, — Yet the poets say *cum quibus*.

From *modus* are found such compound genitives as these :

Cujusmodi, *istiusmodi*, *hujuscemodi*, &c.

Note. That *Qui*, is sometimes used as *quis* — so *ecqui*, *nequi*, *aliqui* for *ecquis*, &c. And that *Quis*, *quisquis*, *quisquam*, were formerly applied to females.

OF A VERB.

A Verb is the principal word in every sentence, and expresses what the nominative or subject of the discourse, *is, does, or suffers.*

The chief kinds of verbs are three, *active, passive, and neuter*; to which may be added, *deponent, common, and impersonal.*

A verb active signifies *to do*, and by taking *r*, becomes a passive: as, *cado—r.*

It is called *transitive*, when the action of it passes on the noun that follows it: as, *cado te*, I beat thee — And *intransitive*, when the force or action of it terminates in itself: as, *curro*, I run.

A verb passive signifies *to suffer*, and by casting away *r*, becomes an active: as, *cador—o.*

A verb neuter signifies *inaction or being*; as, *sedeo*, I sit, *sum*, I am. — And may be distinguished from a verb active in that you cannot put (*it*) after it in good english.

A verb deponent has an active sense, but a passive ending: as, *imitor*, I imitate.

A verb common endeth in *or*, and is used both actively and passively: as, *sektor*, I follow, or am followed.

An impersonal verb is used in the third person singular only — The sign is commonly *it* or *there*.

Note, these five verbs in *o* have a passive sense, *exulo, fio, liceo, vapulo, veneo.*

OF MOODS.

A Mood expresses the manner of a verb's affirmation.

Verbs have four moods, the indicative, imperative, potential, and infinitive.

The indicative *affirms, denies, or asks a question.*

The imperative *commands, exhorts, and entreats*, and has often this sign *let* before it.

The potential signifies *power or duty*, and is commonly known by these signs, *may, can, might, could, would, should, or ought* *.

* This mood, when it implies *wishing*, is called the *optative mood*; when joined with a conjunction, relative, or indefinite, and depending upon some other verb in the sentence, the *subjunctive or conjunctive*.

The infinitive expresses the signification of the verb in general, but without number, person, or nominative case, and has, or may have this sign *to* placed before it.

OF TENSES.

TENSE expresses the time of a verb's affirmation.

There are six tenses or times ; the present, the preter-imperfect, and the future-imperfect tense. — The preterperfect, the preterpluperfect, and the future-perfect tense.

The present tense speaketh of a thing as now doing ; its sign *do*.

The preterimperfect refers to a certain past time, and expresses an action then begun, but not ended ; its sign *did*.

The future-imperfect speaketh of a thing to be done hereafter ; its sign *shall* or *will*.

The preterperfect speaketh of a thing as now done ; its sign *have*.

The preterpluperfect refers to some former time, and speaks of a thing that was over and done before that time ; its sign *had*.

The future-perfect tense speaks of a thing as done at some time hereafter ; its sign *shall* or *will have*.

Of GERUNDS and SUPINES.

GERUNDS are three, ending in *di*, *do*, *dum*.

Supines are two, ending in *um* and *u* ; but these properly are verbal nouns.

In gerunds, the active signification is more common than the passive. In supines, that in *um* has commonly an active, and that in *u* a passive signification.

Of the Numbers and Persons of Verbs.

VERBS have two Numbers, and three persons in each Number.

I, thou, he, in the Singular ; *we, ye, they*, in the Plural.

OF CONJUGATIONS.

THERE are four Conjugations, or ways of declining Verbs ; all known by the ending of the Infinitive Mood.

The first ends in *āre* long ; as, *amāre* *.

The second in *ēre* long ; as, *docēre*.

The third in *ere* short ; as, *legere*.

The fourth in *īre* long ; as, *audire*.

* Except *do*, to give, and its compounds of the first conjugation.

N. B. The infinitive passive changes *ere* short of the third conjugation into *i* ; the rest change only *e* into *i*.

Verbs in *O* of the four conjugations are declined after these examples.

1. Amo, amas, amavi, amare ; amandi, amando, amandum ; amatum, amatu ; amans, amaturus : *to love.*

2. Doceo, doces, docui, docere ; docendi, docendo, docendum ; doctum, doctu ; docens, docturus : *to teach.*

3. Lego, legis, legi, legere ; legendi, legendo, legendum ; lectum, lectu ; legens, lecturus : *to read.*

4. Audio, audis, audiui, audire ; audiendi, audiendo, audiendum ; auditum, auditu ; audiens, auditurus : *to hear.*

Obf. Some verbs are partly of the third, and partly of the fourth conjugation : as, *Capio*, formed thus. *Capio, capiebam, capiam, capo, capiam, caperem, capere.*

Sic cupio, facio, fodio, fugio, jacioque,

Et lacio, pario, quatio, rapio, sepioque

Et specio, gradior, m-orior, patior, pot-itur-rer.

Note. All other verbs in *-io*, are of the fourth conjugation, except *porricio*.

Indicative Mood.

	Singular.	Plural.	
	<i>I do, thou dost, he doth,</i>	<i>we do, ye do, they do.</i>	1.
Present tense.	Amo, amas, amat,	amamus, amatis, amant.	love.
	Doceo, doces, docet,	docemus, docetis, docent.	teach.
	Lego, legis, legit,	legimus, legitis, legunt.	read.
	Audio, audis, audit,	audimus, auditis, audiunt.	hear.
	<i>I did, thou didst, he did,</i>	<i>we did, ye did, they did.</i>	2.
Preterimperfect.	Amabam,		love.
	Docebam,	bas, bat, bamus, batis, bant,	teach.
	Legebam,		read.
	Audiebam,		hear.
	<i>I have, thou hast, he hath,</i>	<i>we have, ye have, they have.</i>	3.
Preterperfect.	Amavi,		loved.
	Docui,	isti, it, imus, istis, erunt vel ère.	taught.
	Legi,		read.
	Audivi,		heard.
	<i>I had, thou hadst, he had,</i>	<i>we had, ye had, they had.</i>	
Preterplu.	Amaveram,		loved.
	Docueram,	ras, rat, ramus, ratis, rant,	taught.
	Legeram,		read.
	Audiveram,		heard.
	<i>I shall or will, thou shalt or wilt, he shall or will, &c.</i>		
Fut. imperf.	Amabo,	bis, bit, bimus, bitis, bunt,	love.
	Docebo,		teach.
	Legam,	es, et imus, etis, ent.	read.
	Audiam,		hear.

Imperative Mood.

	Singulariter.	Pluraliter.	
	<i>Love thou, let him love.</i>	<i>let us love, love ye, let them love.</i>	
Present tense.	Ama, ato ; et, ato ;	amus ; ate, atote ; ent, anto.	love.
	Doce, eto ; eat, eto ;	eamus ; ete, etote ; eant, ento.	teach.
	Legè, ito ; at, ito ;	amus ; ite, itote ; ant, unto.	read.
	Audi, ito ; iat, ito ;	iamus ; ite, itote ; iant, iunto.	hear.

- Obf. 1. I love, I do love, or I am loving, &c.
 2. I loved, I did love, or I was loving, &c. } and so of the rest.
 3. And sometimes without the sign have.

N. B. Seldom ère in prose, if a vowel follows.

Potential or Subjunctive Mood.

	Singular.	Plural.
	<i>I may or can, thou may'st or canst, he may or can, &c.</i>	
Present tense.	Amem, es, et,	emus, etis, ent,
	Doceam, } as, at,	amus, atis, ant,
	Legam, }	
	Audiam, }	
		<i>love. teach. read. bear.</i>
	<i>I might or could, thou might'st or could'st, he might or could, &c.</i>	
Preterim tense.	Amarem, } res, ret,	remus, retis, rent,
	Docerem, }	
	Legērem, }	
	Audirem, }	
		<i>love. teach. read. heard.</i>
	<i>When I have, thou hast, he hath, we have, &c.</i>	
Futur-p. tense cum	Amaverim, } ris, rit,	rimus, ritis, rint.
	Docuerim, }	
	Legerim, }	
	Audiverim, }	
		<i>loved. taught. read. heard.</i>
	<i>When I had, thou hadst, he had, &c.</i>	
Proterplup. tes. cum	Amavissem, } ses, set,	semus, setis, sent.
	Docuissē, }	
	Legissē, }	
	Audivissē, }	
		<i>loved. taught. read. heard.</i>
	<i>When I shall have, thou shalt have, he shall have, &c.</i>	
Fut. per. ten. cum	Amavero, } ris, rit,	rimus, ritis, rint.
	Docuero, }	
	Legero, }	
	Audivero, }	
		<i>loved. taught. read. heard.</i>

N. B. The future imperfect of this mood is expressed by the present, or preterimperfect. See p. 35.

The future perfect in *ro* belongs to the indicative mood, as well as to the subjunctive; but, as it never implies *potentiality*, it cannot belong to the potential.

Infinitive Mood.

Present and preter- imperfect tense.	{ Amare, Docere, Legere, Audire,	}	to	{ love: teach. read. bear.
Preterper- fect and preterplu- perf. tense.	{ Amavisse, Docuisse, Legisse, Audivisse,	}	to have	{ loved. taught. read. beard,
Futura im- perfect tense.	{ Amaturum, Docturum, Lecturum, Auditurum,	}	esse, to be about to	{ love. teach. read. bear.
Future perfect tense.	{ Amaturum, Docturum, Lecturum, Auditurum,	}	fuisse, to have been about to	{ love. teach. read. bear.

Gerunds.

Amandi, of loving; Amando, in loving; Amandum, to love.
Docendi, of teaching; Docendo, in teaching; Docendum, to teach.
Legendi, of reading; Legendo, in reading; Legendum, to read.
Audiendi, of bearing; Audiendo, in bearing; Audiendum, to bear.

Supines.

um.		u.
Amatum, to love;		Amatu, to be loved.
Doctum, to teach;		Doctu, to be taught.
Lectum, to read;		Lectu, to be read.
Auditum, to bear;		Auditu, to be beard.

Participles.

Present tense.		Future in -rus.
Amans, loving;		Amaturus, about to love.
Docens, teaching;		Docturus, about to teach.
Legens, reading;		Lecturus, about to read.
Audiens, bearing;		Auditurus, about to bear.

An account of the Tenses from Dr. Clarke.

Tempus Præteritum	{ rei imperfectæ & rei perfectæ	{ abibat, <i>he was going.</i> cœnabat, <i>he was at supper.</i> ædificabatur, <i>it was in building.</i> abierat, <i>he was gone.</i> cœnaverat, <i>he had supped.</i> ædificatum erat, <i>it was built.</i>
Tempus Præsens	{ rei imperfectæ & rei perfectæ	{ abit, <i>he is going.</i> cœnat, <i>he is at supper.</i> ædificatur, <i>it is in building.</i> abiit, <i>he is gone.</i> cœnavit, <i>he has supped.</i> ædificatum est, <i>it is built.</i>
Tempus futurum	{ rei imperfectæ & rei perfectæ.	{ abit, <i>he will be going.</i> cœnabit, <i>he will be at supper,</i> ædificabitur, <i>it will be in build-</i> abierit, <i>he will be gone.</i> [ing. cœnaverit, <i>he will have supped.</i> ædificatum erit, <i>it will be built.</i>

Some farther Observations on the Tenses taken chiefly from
Dr. Clarke, Johnson, Ruddiman and Lowe.

Indicative Mood.

Pres. 1. In narrations, past actions are often expressed by this tense in order to render the discourse more lively and affecting.

2. In Interrogations, an exhortation or duty is sometimes implied: as, *Quin potius pacem exercemus?* Why don't we rather practice peace? *Age, quæ prima pericula vitæ, i. e. vitare debeam, or vitabo.* Come, say what dangers I am [shall] to avoid first.

Imp. This tense often signifies a person's doing any thing after his usual or accustomed manner: as, *Noctes vigilabat ad ipsum mane, diem totum stertebat;* He would sit up all night and sleep all day. 'Tis used also when some other thing has happened, the continuance of which a person is endeavouring to promote or prevent: as, *Senscere civitatem otio vatus undique materiam belli excitandi quarebat;* Fancying the people waxed old (or feeble) by peace, he began to seek every occasion of making war. Or else might have happened on some certain condition: as, *Anceps pedestre certamen erat in equites supervenissent;* The success of the war was doubtful (and would have been so) had not the horse unexpectedly come up.

Perf.

Perf. This tense speaks of a thing just now past ; as, *perii*, I am undone : or else that is ever so long done and over : as, *veni, vidi, vici*, I came, I saw, I conquered—without particularising the precise time of the action, unless some other words happen to determine it.

As the present tense is sometimes elegantly used where one would expect the perfect, so is the perfect no less elegantly made use of, where one would expect the present ; particularly when it is intended to express any sudden emotion and surprise, or describe the uncommon rapidity a thing is performed with : as in that of Virgil.

*Quaquam animus meminisse horret, luctuque refugit---
Gaudet hians immanè, comasque arrexit, & hæret, &c. again,
Non tam præcipites bijugo certamine curram
Corripuere, ruuntque effusi carcere currus ;
Nec sic inmisit aurigæ undantia lora
Concussere jugis, pronique in verbera pendent.*

This tense after, *antequam, postquam, ubi*, or *ut* for *postquam*, is often englished by *had* : as, *ut me salutavit*, after he had saluted me. *Postquam superavimus Isthmum*, after we had passed over the Isthmus.

Pluperf. This tense is used when it cannot well be englished by *had* : as, *literæ, quas proximè miseræ, perjunctæ fuerunt*, The letters, which you sent last, were very agreeable.

N. B. After a verb of this tense the english word *when* or *but* is sometimes elegantly inserted in the beginning of the next clause ; which, since boys seldom observe, it may not be improper to apprize them of ; as, *Vix ea fatus eram, tremere omnia visa repente* ; Scarce had I thus said, when every thing suddenly seemed to tremble.

Fut. The future indicative, especially in the second person singular, has sometimes the sense of the imperative : as, *valebis, meque amabis*, farewell and love me—and so has the future subjunctive : as,

*Dic quotus es, quanti cupias cœnare, nec ullum
Addideris verbum cœna parata tibi est.*

Imperative Mood.

This Mood bids, grants, exhorts, or prays.

And the third person plural of it is especially used in law-giving : as, *pietatem colunto*, Let them practise piety.

Potential or Subjunctive.

Pres. This tense after *quasi, tanquam*, and the like, is rendered sometimes—like the imperfect tense : as, *Quasi intelligant qualis sit*, as if they understood what kind of person he is.

Some-times by	{	shall ;	as,	<i>Eloquetur an filium ?</i> Shall I speak or be silent ?
		will ;		<i>Et quisquam Junonis numen adoret ?</i> And will any one worship the majesty of Juno ?
		could ;		<i>Hæu ! quid agat ?</i> Alas ! what cou'd he do ?
		would ;		<i>In facinus jurasse putes,</i> You would think they had sworn to wickedness.
		should ;		<i>Singula quid referam ?</i> Why should I mention every thing ?
		or imperatively ;		<i>Ne facias,</i> Do not do it.

Imperf. This tense is accommodable to any time, and is rendered,

Some-times by	{	might	as,	<i>Minanti similem adspiceret,</i> You might have seen him like one threatening.
		have ;		<i>Putaresne posse accidere ?</i> Could you have thought it possible ?
		could ;		<i>Quis hoc putaret ?</i> Who would have thought this ?
		would ;		<i>Prædiceres mihi,</i> You should have told me beforehand.
		have ;		
		should have.		

Perf. This tense after *quasi, tanquam,* and the like, is rendered some-times by (*had*) as, *Quasi affuerim,* as if I had been present.

Some-times by	{	may ;	as,	<i>Ut sic dixerim,</i> That I may so speak.
		can ;		<i>Non facile dixerim,</i> I cannot easily tell.
		might ;		<i>Fortasse errârim,</i> Perhaps I might be in an error.
		could ;		<i>Unus tantas strages ediderit ?</i> Could one [man] make such havoc ?
		would ;		<i>Libenter, audierim,</i> I would gladly hear.
		should ;		<i>Citius crediderim,</i> I should sooner believe.
		may have ;		<i>Forſitan audieris,</i> You may perhaps have heard it.
		should have ;		<i>Ubi ego audiverim ?</i> Where should I have heard it ?
		would have ;		<i>Eiaſerit enſis,</i> The sword would have deſtroyed.
		have ; or imperatively ;		<i>Ne dixeris,</i> Never say it.

N. E. 'Tis likewise used to express *conceſſion* : as, *Fuerint irati,* grant or ſuppoſe they were angry — And has often the ſame ſenſe as the future perfect.

Pluperf. This tense is peculiarly made use of in the recital of laws, ſpeeches, and predictions ; where it ſpeaks of a thing conſidered as future at a certain former time, to which there is generally ſome condition, penalty or promiſe, &c. annex : as, *Hiſ denunciavi, ſi rursus tam multa attuliſſent, omnia relatuſuros,* I declared to your ſervants, that if they brought (or ſhould bring) ſo many things again, they ſhould carry them all back. Now becauſe this condition, &c. cannot take place, till that

that which it depends upon is done and past, the propriety of using the pluperfect-tense in such cases is evident.

Put. perf. Though *shall have* is generally the sign of this tense, yet it is rendered

Sometimes by— *will have*: as, *Tibi Roma subegerit orbem*, Rome will have subdued the world for you.

Sometimes only by	{	shall ;	} as,	<i>Ego videro</i> , I shall look to it.
		have ;		<i>Non desistam donec perficero</i> , I will not desist till I have effected it.
		will ;		<i>Benignè faceris, si venies</i> , You will do kindly in coming.

Sometimes without any sign at all: as, *Si negaverit*, if he denies it.

Infinitive.

This Mood is differently englished according as the preceding verb varies its Tenses: as will appear in the following scheme.

{	<i>Dicit me scribere</i> , He says (that) I write.
	<i>Dixit me scribere</i> , He said (that) I was writing.
	<i>Dicet me scribere</i> , He shall say (that) I am writing.

{	<i>Dicit me scripisse</i> , He says (that) I wrote, or did write.
	<i>Dixit me scripisse</i> , He said (that) I had written.
	<i>Dicet me scripisse</i> , He shall say (that) I have written, or did write.

{	<i>Dicit me scripturum esse vel fore</i> , He says (that) I will write.
	<i>Dixit me scripturum esse vel fore</i> , He said (that) I would write.
	<i>Dicet me scripturum esse vel fore</i> , He shall say (that) I will write.

{	<i>Dicit me scripturum fuisse</i> , He says (that) I would have written.
	<i>Dixit me scripturum fuisse</i> , He said (that) I would have written.
	<i>Dicet me scripturum fuisse</i> , He shall say (that) I would have written.

N. B. The future perfect of the infinitive is commonly best rendered by *would have*.

Before we decline any verbs in -or for supplying many Tenses lacking in all such verbs, we must learn the verb *Sum*.

Sum, es, fui, esse, futurus,

To be.

Whose compounds may be thus formed.

Possum, potes, potui, posse,

To be able.

Prosum, prodes, profui, prodesse, profuturus, &c. To profit.

Note. *Insum* wants the perfect form, the other compounds are all regular, as, *Sum*.

Indicative

Indicative Mood.

	Singular.	Plural.
	<i>I am, thou art, he is,</i>	<i>we are, ye are, they are.</i>
<i>Present</i>	Sum, es, est,	sumus, estis, sunt.
<i>tense.</i>	Possūm, potes, potest,	possumus, potestis, possunt.
	Prosum, prodes, prodest,	prosumus, prodestis, profunt.

	<i>I was, thou wast, he was,</i>	<i>we were, ye were, they were.</i>
<i>Preter-</i>	Eram, eras, erat,	
<i>imperf.</i>	Poteram, eras, erat,	eramus, eratis, erant.
<i>tense.</i>	Proderam, deras, &c.	

	<i>I have been, thou hast been, he hath been, we have been, &c.</i>		
<i>Preter-</i>	Fui, fuisti, fuit,		<i>imus, istis, erunt vel ere.</i>
<i>perfect</i>	Potui, potuisti, potuit,		
<i>tense.</i>	Profui, profuisti, &c.		

I had been, thou hadst been, he had been, we had been, &c.

<i>Preter-pluperf. tense.</i>	Fueram,	} ras, rat, ramus, ratis, rant.
	Potueram,	
	Profueram,	

I shall or will be, thou shalt or will be, he shall or will be, &c.

<i>Future</i>	{	Ero,	eris,	erit,		erimus,	eritis,	erunt.
<i>imperf.</i>		Potero,	eris,	erit,				
<i>tense.</i>		Prodero,	proderis,	&c.				

Imperative Mood.

	<i>be thou, let him be,</i>	<i>let us be, be ye, let them be.</i>
<i>Present</i>	Sis, es, esto; sit esto	simus; sitis, este, estote; sint, sunt.
<i>tense.</i>	Prosis, des, esto, &c.	Note, <i>Possūm</i> has no imp. mood.

Potential or Subjunctive Mood.

	Singular.	Plural.
	<i>I may be, thou mayst be, he may be, we may be, &c.</i>	
<i>Present</i>	Sim, sis, sit,	
<i>tense.</i>	Possim, possis, &c.	imus, sitis, sint.
	Prosim, prosis, &c.	

I might

Singular.

Plural.

I might be, thou might'st be, he might be, we might be, &c.

Preter- imperf. tense.	{	Essem, esses, esset, Possem, posses, posset, Prodessem, -esses, &c.	{	emus, etis, ent.
------------------------------	---	---	---	------------------

When, I may have been, thou may'st have been, he may have, &c.

Preter- perfect ten. cum	{	Fuerim, fueris, fuerit, Potuerim, potueris, &c. Profuerim, ris, &c.	{	imus, itis, int.
--------------------------------	---	---	---	------------------

When, I had been, thou hadst been, he had been, &c.

Preter- pluperf. ten. cum	{	Fuissem, fuisses, fuisset, Potuissem, potuisses, &c. Profuissem, isses, &c.	{	emus, etis, ent.
---------------------------------	---	---	---	------------------

When, I shall have been, thou shalt have been, &c.

Future perfect ten. cum	{	Fuero, fueris, fuerit, Potuero, eris, erit, &c. Profuero, profueris, &c.	{	rimus, ritis, rint.
-------------------------------	---	--	---	---------------------

Infinitive Mood.

Present and preter- imp. tense.	{	Esse, to be. Posse, to be able. Prodesse, to profit.
---------------------------------------	---	--

Preterperf. and preter- plup. tense.	{	Fuisse, } to have been. Potuisse, } Profuisse, }
--	---	--

Future im- perfect ten.	{	Fore, vel futurum esse, } to be here-after. Profore, vel profuturum esse, }
----------------------------	---	--

Future perfect ten.	{	Futurum fuisse, } to have been about to be. Profuturum fuisse, }
------------------------	---	---

A Particip. of the fu- ture in rus.	{	Futurus, } about to be. Profuturus, }
---	---	--

Verbs in OR of the four Conjugations are thus de-
clined.

Amor, amaris vel amare, amatus sum vel fui, amari; ama-
tus, amandus: to be loved.

Doceor,

Doceor, docēris *vel* docēre, doctus sum *vel* fui, doceri ; doc-
tus, docendus : *to be taught.*

Legor, legēris *vel* legēre, lectus sum *vel* fui, legi ; lectus, le-
gendus : *to be read.*

Audior, audīris *vel* audire, auditus sum *vel* fui, audiri ; au-
ditus, audiendus : *to be heard.*

Passive Voice.

Indicative Mood.

	Singular.		Plural.
	<i>I am, thou art, he is,</i>		<i>we are, ye are, they are.</i>
<i>Present tense.</i>	<div style="display: inline-block; vertical-align: middle;"> <div style="display: inline-block; vertical-align: middle;"> <div style="display: inline-block; vertical-align: middle;">Amor,</div> <div style="display: inline-block; vertical-align: middle;">eris v. cre,</div> <div style="display: inline-block; vertical-align: middle;">etur,</div> </div> <div style="display: inline-block; vertical-align: middle; font-size: 3em;">}</div> <div style="display: inline-block; vertical-align: middle;">aris, v. are, atur,</div> </div>		<div style="display: inline-block; vertical-align: middle;"> <div style="display: inline-block; vertical-align: middle;">amur, amini, antur,</div> <div style="display: inline-block; vertical-align: middle;">emur, emini, entur,</div> <div style="display: inline-block; vertical-align: middle;">imur, imini, untur,</div> <div style="display: inline-block; vertical-align: middle;">iurur, iurini, iuntur,</div> </div> <div style="display: inline-block; vertical-align: middle; font-size: 3em;">{</div> <div style="display: inline-block; vertical-align: middle;"> <i>loved.</i> <i>taught.</i> <i>read.</i> <i>heard.</i> </div>

	<i>I was, thou wast, he was, we were, ye were, they were.</i>
<i>Preterim. ten.</i>	<div style="display: inline-block; vertical-align: middle;"> <div style="display: inline-block; vertical-align: middle;">Amabar,</div> <div style="display: inline-block; vertical-align: middle;">Docebar,</div> <div style="display: inline-block; vertical-align: middle;">Legebar,</div> <div style="display: inline-block; vertical-align: middle;">Audiebar,</div> </div> <div style="display: inline-block; vertical-align: middle; font-size: 3em;">}</div> <div style="display: inline-block; vertical-align: middle;">aris, v. are, atur,</div> <div style="display: inline-block; vertical-align: middle; font-size: 3em;"> </div> <div style="display: inline-block; vertical-align: middle;"> <div style="display: inline-block; vertical-align: middle;">amur, amini, antur.</div> <div style="display: inline-block; vertical-align: middle; font-size: 3em;">{</div> <div style="display: inline-block; vertical-align: middle;"> <i>loved.</i> <i>taught.</i> <i>read.</i> <i>heard.</i> </div> </div>

	<i>I have been, thou hast been, he hath been, we have been, &c.</i>
<i>Preterim. ten.</i>	<div style="display: inline-block; vertical-align: middle;"> <div style="display: inline-block; vertical-align: middle;">Amatus,</div> <div style="display: inline-block; vertical-align: middle;">Doctus,</div> <div style="display: inline-block; vertical-align: middle;">Lectus,</div> <div style="display: inline-block; vertical-align: middle;">Auditus,</div> </div> <div style="display: inline-block; vertical-align: middle; font-size: 3em;">}</div> <div style="display: inline-block; vertical-align: middle;"> <div style="display: inline-block; vertical-align: middle;">sum es est</div> <div style="display: inline-block; vertical-align: middle;">v. v. v.</div> <div style="display: inline-block; vertical-align: middle;">fui; fuisti; fuit;</div> </div> <div style="display: inline-block; vertical-align: middle; font-size: 3em;"> </div> <div style="display: inline-block; vertical-align: middle;"> <div style="display: inline-block; vertical-align: middle;">ti- sumus, estis, sunt, fuerunt.</div> <div style="display: inline-block; vertical-align: middle;">v. v. v.</div> <div style="display: inline-block; vertical-align: middle;">fuimus ; fuistis ; fuere.</div> </div> <div style="display: inline-block; vertical-align: middle; font-size: 3em;">{</div> <div style="display: inline-block; vertical-align: middle;"> <i>loved.</i> <i>taught.</i> <i>read.</i> <i>heard.</i> </div>

	<i>I had been, thou hadst been, he had been, we had been, &c.</i>
<i>Preterim. ten.</i>	<div style="display: inline-block; vertical-align: middle;"> <div style="display: inline-block; vertical-align: middle;">Amatus,</div> <div style="display: inline-block; vertical-align: middle;">Doctus,</div> <div style="display: inline-block; vertical-align: middle;">Lectus,</div> <div style="display: inline-block; vertical-align: middle;">Auditus,</div> </div> <div style="display: inline-block; vertical-align: middle; font-size: 3em;">}</div> <div style="display: inline-block; vertical-align: middle;"> <div style="display: inline-block; vertical-align: middle;">eram eras erat</div> <div style="display: inline-block; vertical-align: middle;">v. v. v.</div> <div style="display: inline-block; vertical-align: middle;">fuera; n; fueras; fuerat;</div> </div> <div style="display: inline-block; vertical-align: middle; font-size: 3em;"> </div> <div style="display: inline-block; vertical-align: middle;"> <div style="display: inline-block; vertical-align: middle;">ti- eramus eratis erant</div> <div style="display: inline-block; vertical-align: middle;">v. v. v.</div> <div style="display: inline-block; vertical-align: middle;">fueramus ; ratis ; rant.</div> </div> <div style="display: inline-block; vertical-align: middle; font-size: 3em;">{</div> <div style="display: inline-block; vertical-align: middle;"> <i>loved.</i> <i>taught.</i> <i>read.</i> <i>heard.</i> </div>

	<i>I shall or will be, thou shalt or wilt be, he shall or will be, &c.</i>
<i>Future tense.</i>	<div style="display: inline-block; vertical-align: middle;"> <div style="display: inline-block; vertical-align: middle;">Amabor,</div> <div style="display: inline-block; vertical-align: middle;">Docebor,</div> <div style="display: inline-block; vertical-align: middle;">Legar,</div> <div style="display: inline-block; vertical-align: middle;">Audiar,</div> </div> <div style="display: inline-block; vertical-align: middle; font-size: 3em;">}</div> <div style="display: inline-block; vertical-align: middle;"> <div style="display: inline-block; vertical-align: middle;">beris, v. bere, bitur,</div> <div style="display: inline-block; vertical-align: middle;">eris, v. ere, etur,</div> </div> <div style="display: inline-block; vertical-align: middle; font-size: 3em;"> </div> <div style="display: inline-block; vertical-align: middle;"> <div style="display: inline-block; vertical-align: middle;">bimur, bimini, buntur,</div> <div style="display: inline-block; vertical-align: middle;">emur, emini, entur,</div> </div> <div style="display: inline-block; vertical-align: middle; font-size: 3em;">{</div> <div style="display: inline-block; vertical-align: middle;"> <i>loved.</i> <i>taught.</i> <i>read.</i> <i>heard.</i> </div>

Impe-

Imperative Mood.

	Singular.	Plural.
	<i>Be thou, let him be, let us be, be ye, let them be.</i>	
Present ten.	Amare, ator; etur, ator; emur; amini, or; entur, antor,	loved.
	Docere, etor; eatur, etor; eamur; emini, or; eantur, entor,	taught.
	Legere, itor; atur, itor; amur; imini, or; antur, untor,	read.
	Audire, itor; iatur, itor; iamur; imini, or; iantur, iuntur	heard.

Potential or Subjunctive Mood.

	<i>I may or can be, thou mayst or canst be, be may or can be, &c.</i>	
Present tense.	Amer, ēris v. ēre, ētur, ēmur, emini, entur.	loved.
	Docear, ēris v. āre, ātur, āmur, amini, antur	taught.
	Legar, ēris v. āre, ātur, āmur, amini, antur	read.
	Audiar, ēris v. āre, ātur, āmur, amini, antur	heard.

	<i>I might or could be, thou might'st or could'st be, be might or could be, &c.</i>	
Preterim. ten.	Amarer, rēris, v. rēre, retur, rēmur, remini, rentur.	loved.
	Docerer, rēris, v. rēre, retur, rēmur, remini, rentur.	taught.
	Legērer, rēris, v. rēre, retur, rēmur, remini, rentur.	read.
	Audīrer, rēris, v. rēre, retur, rēmur, remini, rentur.	heard.

	<i>When, I have been, thou hast been, be hath been, &c.</i>	
Preterit. ten. cum	Amatus, fim fis fiti ti-fimus, fitis, sint,	loved.
	Doctus, v. v. v. v. v. v. v.	taught.
	Lectus, fuerim, fueris, fuerit, fuerimus, ritis, rint.	read.
	Auditus, fuerim, fueris, fuerit, fuerimus, ritis, rint.	heard.

	<i>When, I had been, thou hadst been, be had been, &c.</i>	
Preterit. pl. ten. cum	Amatus, essem esses esset i-essemus, setis, sent,	loved.
	Doctus, v. v. v. v. v. v. v.	taught.
	Lectus, fuisset, ses, set, fuisset, setis, sent.	read.
	Auditus, fuisset, ses, set, fuisset, setis, sent.	heard.

	<i>When, I shall have been, thou shalt have been, &c.</i>	
Future ten. cum	Amatus, ero eris erit ti-erimus, ritis, runt,	loved.
	Doctus, v. v. v. v. v. v. v.	taught.
	Lectus, fuero, eris, erit, fuerimus, ritis, rint.	read.
	Auditus, fuero, eris, erit, fuerimus, ritis, rint.	heard.

Note, Amatus ero, is properly the future perfect of the Indicative Mood.

Infia.

Infinitive Mood.

<i>Present and preter- imperfect tense.</i>	$\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{Amari,} \\ \text{Doceri,} \\ \text{Legi,} \\ \text{Audiri,} \end{array} \right\}$	<i>to be</i>	$\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{loved.} \\ \text{taught.} \\ \text{read.} \\ \text{heard.} \end{array} \right\}$
<i>Preterperf. and preter- plup. tense.</i>	$\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{Amatum,} \\ \text{Doctum,} \\ \text{Lectum,} \\ \text{Auditum,} \end{array} \right\}$	<i>esse, v. fuisse, to have been</i>	$\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{loved.} \\ \text{taught.} \\ \text{read.} \\ \text{heard.} \end{array} \right\}$
<i>Future im- perf. tense.</i>	$\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{Amatum,} \\ \text{Doctum,} \\ \text{Lectum,} \\ \text{Auditum,} \end{array} \right\}$	<i>iri, to be about to be</i>	$\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{loved.} \\ \text{taught.} \\ \text{read.} \\ \text{heard.} \end{array} \right\}$
<i>Future per- fect tense.</i>	$\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{Amatum,} \\ \text{Doctum,} \\ \text{Lectum,} \\ \text{Auditum,} \end{array} \right\}$	<i>fore, to be about to have been</i>	$\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{loved.} \\ \text{taught.} \\ \text{read.} \\ \text{heard.} \end{array} \right\}$

Participles.

<i>Preter tense.</i>		<i>Future in -dus.</i>	
Amatus,	<i>lov'd.</i>	Amandus,	$\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{loved.} \\ \text{taught.} \\ \text{read.} \\ \text{heard.} \end{array} \right\}$ <i>to be</i>
Doctus,	<i>taught.</i>	Docendus,	
Lectus,	<i>read.</i>	Legendus,	
Auditus,	<i>heard.</i>	Audiendus,	

Obf. Amatus sum, sometimes, I am loved. It generally denotes a thing finished, without regard to the time when. Amatus fui, denotes a thing finished, and sometime since interven'd. The like distinctions may be made between Amatus sum, and amatus fuero; as also between Amatum esse and Amatum fuisse. Amatus eram, sometimes like the preterimperfect, I was loved. It denotes a thing was finished at a certain time past referred to, with which it was contemporary. Amatus fuero denotes a thing was finished before a certain time past referred to, to which it was prior. The like distinction may be made between Amatus essem, and Amatus fuissem.

Of Deponent Verbs.

Deponents differ not from passives in their formation, excepting that they have Gerunds and the Participles of the present tense, and the future in *-rus*.

Such Deponents as have a neutral signification have no participle in *-us*, nor the passive future in *-um* or *-iri*.

They may be declined after these examples.

1. Imitor -aris, *v. are, atus sum, ari*; andi, do, dum; ans, aturus.
2. Vereor -eris, *v. ere, itus sum, eri*; endi, do, dum; ens, iturus.
3. Utor -ëris, *v. ëre, sus sum, ti*; endi, do, dum; ens, urus.
4. Largior -iris, *v. ire, itus sum, iri*; iendi, do, dum; iens, iturus.

Verbs to be conjugated after their respective Patterns.

Actives, and Neuters.

1. Amo.	2. Doceo.	3. Lego.	4. Audio.
apto, to fit.	censeo, to think.	lambo, to lick.	ambio, to court.
celo, to bid.	debeo, to owe.	vinco, to conquer.	custodio, to keep.
dono, to present.	moneo, to advise.	scindo, to cut.	finio, to finish.
guberno, to govern.	teneo, to hold.	jungo, to join.	impedio, to hinder.
judico, to judge.	timeo, to fear.	traho, to draw.	lenio, to mitigate.
lacteo, to tear.	careo, to want.	molo, to grind.	munio, to fortify.
muto, to change.	doleo, to grieve.	gemo, to groan.	obedio, to obey.
nuncio, to tell.	floro, to flourish.	sperno, to scorn.	nutrio, to nourish.
porto, to carry.	placeo, to please.	carpo, to crop.	polio, to polish.
tolero, to endure.	studeo, to study.	linquo, to leave.	scio, to know.

Passives.

1. Amar.	2. Doceor.
agitor, to be shaken.	moneor, to be advised.
crucior, to be tormented.	misceor, to be mixed.
debilitor, to be weakened.	prohibeor, to be forbidden.
fatigor, to be tired.	teneor, to be held.
mutor, to be changed.	terreor, to be affrighted.
3. Legor.	4. Audior.
claudor, to be shut up.	impedior, to be hindered.
ducor, to be led.	munior, to be fortified.
findor, to be cleft.	nutrior, to be nourished.
lædor, to be hurt.	punior, to be punished.
trahor, to be drawn.	vestior, to be clothed.

Deponents.

Deponents.

1.
conor, to endeavour.
furor, to fust.
hortor, to encourage.

2.
confiteor, to confess.
mereor, to despair.
vercor, to fear.

3.
labor, to slide.
loquor, to speak.
utor, to use.

4.
blandior, to flatter.
largior, to bestow.
mentior, to lie.

Not. Deponent verbs are very seldom found with the past form -*fui*. Decline them therefore with *sum, eram*.

Verbs Irregular declin'd.

Volo, vis, volui, velle ; volens, *to be willing.*
Nolo, nonvis, nolui, nolle ; nolens, *to be unwilling.*
Malo, mavis, malui, malle ; malens, *to be more willing.*
Edo, edis *v.* es, edi, edere *v.* esse ; edendi, edendo, edendum ;
esum, esu ; edens, esurus, *to eat.*
Fero, fers, tuli, ferre ; ferendi, ferendo, ferendum ; latum,
latu ; ferens, laturus, *to bear.*
Fio, fis, factus sum *vel* fui, fieri ; factus, faciendus, *to be made*
or done.
Fero, ferris, *vel* ferre, latus sum *vel* fui, ferri ; latus, feren-
dus, *to be born or suffered.*

Indicative Mood.

	Singular.	Plural.
<i>Present tense.</i>	Volo, vis, vult,	volumus, vultis, volunt.
	Nolo, nonvis, nonvult,	nelumus, nonvultis, nolunt.
	Malo, mavis, mavult,	malumus, mavultis, malunt.
	Edo, edis <i>v.</i> es, edit, <i>v.</i> est,	edimus, editis <i>v.</i> estis, edunt.
	Fero, fers, fert,	ferimus, fertis, ferunt.
	Fio, fis, fit,	firmus, fitis, fiunt.
	Feror, ferris <i>v.</i> ferre, fertur,	ferimur, ferimini, feruntur.
<i>Preterimperfect.</i>	Volebam,	
	Nolebam,	
	Malebam,	
	Edebam,	
	Ferebam,	
	Fiebam,	
	bas, bat,	bamus, batis, bant.
	Ferebar, baris, <i>v.</i> bare, batur,	bamur, bamini, bantur,
		<i>Preter-</i>

	Singular.	Plural.
<i>Præterperfect tense.</i>	Volui,	
	Nolui,	
	Malui,	
	Edi,	
	Tuli,	
	isti, it,	imus, istis, erunt, v, ère.
<i>Præterperfect tense.</i>	Factus	sum, es, est, ti-sumus, estis, sunt, fuerunt.
	Latus	v. v. v. v. v. v.
	fui, fuisti, fuit,	fuimus, fuistis, fuère.
<i>Præterplusperfect tense.</i>	Volueram,	
	Nolueram,	
	Malueram,	
	Ederam,	
	Tuleram,	
	ras, rat,	ramus, ratis, rant.
<i>Præterplusperfect tense.</i>	Factus	eram, eras, erat, ti eramus, eratis, erant.
	Latus	v. v. v. v. v. v.
	fueram, eras, erat,	fueramus, eratis, erant.
<i>Futura tense.</i>	Volam,	
	Nolam,	
	Malam,	
	Edam,	
	Feram,	
	Fiam,	
	Ferar, èris v. ère, etur,	emur, emini, entur,

Imperative Mood.

	Singular.	Plural.
<i>Present tense.</i>	Noli, nolito,	nolite, nolitote.
	Ede, edito ; edat, edito ;	edite, editote ;
	vel vel	edamus ; v. edant, unto.
	Es, esto ; — esto ;	este, estote ;
	Fer, ferto ; ferat, ferto ;	feramus ; ferte, fertote ; ferant, unto.
	Fi, fito ; fiat, fito ;	fiamus ; fite, fitote ; fiant, fuinto.
	Ferre, fertor ; feratur, tor ;	feramur ; ferimini, or, antur, untor.

Potential

Potential or Subjunctive Mood.

	Singular.	Plural.
Present tense.	Velim, {	is, it, imus, itis, int.
	Nolim, {	
	Malim, {	
	Edam, {	
	Feram, {	as, at, amus, atis, ant.
	Fiam,	
	Ferar, aris v. are, atur,	amur, amini, antur.
Preterimperfect tense.	Vellem, {	
	Nollem, {	
	Mallem, {	
	Ederem, {	
	vel {	es, et, emus, etis, ent,
	Essem, {	
	Ferrem, {	
	Fierem }	
	Ferrer, eris v. ēre, ētur,	emur, emini, entur,
Preterperfect tense.	Voluerim, {	
	Noluerim, {	
	Maluerim, {	ris, rit, rimus, ritis, rint.
	Ederim, {	
	Tulerim, {	
	Factus, {	sim, sis, sit, ti-simus, sitis, sint.
	Latus, {	v. v. v. v. v. v.
		fuerim, ris, rit, fuerimus, fueritis, fuerint.
Preterpluperfect tense.	Voluissim, {	
	Noluissim, {	
	Maluissim, {	ses, fet, semus, setis, sent.
	Edissim, {	
	Tulissim, {	
	Factus, {	essim, esses, esset, ti-essimus, essetis, essent,
	Latus, {	v. v. v. v. v. v.
		fuissem, issem, isset, fuissimus, fuissetis, fuissent.
Future tense.	Voluero, {	
	Noluero, {	
	Maluero, {	ris, rit, rimus, ritis, rint.
	Edero, {	
	Tulero, {	
	Factus, {	ero, eris, erit, ti-erimus, eritis, erunt.
	Latus, {	v. v. v. v. v. v.
		fuiro, eris, erit, fuerimus, fueritis, fuerint.

N. B. *Factus ero* and *latus ero* are properly the future perfect of the indicative.

Infinitive Mood.

Present and preterimperfect tense.	Velle, Nolle, Malle, Edere v. esse, Ferre, Fieri, Ferri,	Preter- perfect and pre- terplu- perfect tense.	Voluisse, Noluisse, Maluisse, Edisse, Tulisse, Factum Latum	} esse v. fuisse.
Future imperfect	{ Esurum Laturum Factum Latum			} esse. iri.

N. B. *Eo* and *queo*, make *ibam* and *quibam*, in the preterimperfect tense, *ibo* and *quibo*, in the future, and *eam* and *queam*, in the subjunctive—*eundi*, *eundo*, *eundum*, in the gerunds, and *iens*, *Gen. euntis* in the participles.

Defective Verbs.

Aio.	Indicat. Present tense Sing. Aio, ais, ait. Pl. Aiunt. Preterimperfect Sing. Aiebam, aiebas, aiebat. Pl. Aiebamus, aiebatis, aiebant. Preterperfect tense Sing. Aisti. Plu. Aistis. Imperative. Ai. Optat. Pres. Aias, aiat. Plu. Aiamus, aiant. Participle Pres. tense. Aiens.
Aufim.	Subjunctive Pres. tense. Sing. Aufim, aufis, aufit, Plu. Aufint.
Ave.	Imperat. Sing. Ave, aveto. Pl. Avete. Inf. Avere.
Salveo.	Indicat. future. Salvebis. Imperative. Salve, salveto. Pl. Salvete, salvetote. Infinitive. Salvere.
Valco.	Indicat. future. Valebis. Imperat. Sing. Vale, valeto. Pl. Valetote, valetote. Optat.

	<i>Optat. Pres. Valeas, valeat. Pl. Valeant.</i>
	<i>Infinitive. Valere.</i>
Cedo.	<i>Imperative utriusque numeri. Cedo. Pl. Cedite.</i>
Faxo.	<i>Subjunc. future Sing. Faxo vel Faxim, faxis, faxit.</i>
	<i>Plu. Faxint.</i>
Forem.	<i>Potential Preterimperf. Forem, fores, foret. Plu. Forent.</i>
	<i>Infinitive. Fore.</i>
Quæso.	<i>Indic. Pres. Quæso, quæsis, quæsit. Pl. quæsumus.</i>
	<i>Infn. Quæscere.</i>
Inquo.	<i>Indicat. Pres. Sing. Inquo v. inquam, inquis, inquit. Plu. inquitimus, inquitunt.</i>
	<i>Preterimperfect. Sing. Inquiebat. Plu. inquiebant.</i>
	<i>Preterperfect tense Sing. Inquisti.</i>
	<i>Future tense Sing. Inquies, inquiet.</i>
	<i>Imperative Sing. Inque, inquito.</i>
	<i>Participle. Inquiens.</i>
Memento.	<i>Imperative Sing. Memento. Plu. Mementote.</i>
Memini, Odi, Novi, & Corpi.	<p><i>Memini, Odi, Novi & Corpi, are all regular in the Perfect form, as Memini, memineram, meminirim, meminissem, meminero, meminisse, and though they want the Present form, yet they have the Signification of it, as Odi, I hate, hated, or have hated, perhaps Corpi is to be excepted.</i></p> <p><i>Most of the other defective Verbs are but single Words used only in the third Person, and rarely to be found but among Poets, as Desit, confit, infit, ovat, &c. Dic, duc, fer, fac, are generally used instead of Dice, duce, &c.</i></p>

Archaismi Declinationum.

1 G. Pater-Familias	2 G. Menandru	3 D. Morte
G. Materiali	D. Populoi	G. Epigrammatôn
4 G. Anuis	5 G. Progenii	
D. Metu	D. Facie	

Conjugationum.

Scibam for Sciebam.	Accessi for Accessisti.
Scibo. Reddibo. for Sciam, Reddam.	
Dicem for dicam.	Comedim for comedam.
Faxo, faxim, faxero, for Fecero, fecerim, fecissem.	
Prohibessim	Prohibuerim.
Prohibessim	Prohibuissim.
Prohibesso for	Prohibuero.
Prohibesse	Prohibuisset.
Prohibessere	Prohibiturum esse, &c.

IMPERSONAL VERBS.

Active.

	1.	2.	3.	4.
<i>Ind. Pr.</i>	Delect-at,	Dec-et,	Conting-it,	Even-it.
<i>Imp.</i>	Delect-abat,	Dec-ebat,	Conting-ebat,	Even-iebat.
<i>Perf.</i>	Delect-avit,	Dec-uit,	Contig-it,	Even-it.
<i>Plu.</i>	Delect-averat,	Dec-uerat,	Contig-erat,	Even-erat.
<i>Fut.</i>	Delect-abit,	Dec-ebit,	Conting-et,	Even-iet.
<i>Sub. Pr.</i>	Delect-et,	Dec-eat,	Conting-at,	Even-iat.
<i>Imp.</i>	Delect-aret,	Dec-eret,	Conting-eret,	Even-iret.
<i>Per.</i>	Delect-averit,	Dec-uerit,	Contig-erit,	Even-erit.
<i>Plu.</i>	Delect-avisset,	Dec-uisset,	Contig-isset,	Even-isset.
<i>Fut.</i>	Delect-averit,	Dec-uerit,	Contig-erit,	Even-erit.

Passives.

<i>Ind. Pr.</i>	Pugn-atur,	Vid-etur,	Lud-itur,	Mun-itur.
<i>Imp.</i>	Pugn-abatur,	Vid-ebatur,	Lud-ebatur,	Mun-iebatur.
<i>Per.</i>	_____	_____	_____	_____
<i>Plu.</i>	_____	_____	_____	_____
<i>Fut.</i>	Pugn-abitur,	Vid-ebitur,	Lud-etur,	Mun-ietur.
<i>Sub. Pr.</i>	Pugn-etur,	Vid-eatur,	Lud-atur,	Mun-iatur.
<i>Imp.</i>	Pugn-aretur,	Vid-eretur,	Lud-eretur,	Mun-iretur.
<i>Per.</i>	_____	_____	_____	_____
<i>Plu.</i>	_____	_____	_____	_____
<i>Fut.</i>	_____	_____	_____	_____
<i>Ind. Pr.</i>	Pugnatum est,	Visum est,	Lusum est,	Munitum est.
<i>Imp.</i>	Pugnatum erat,	Visum erat,	Lusum erat,	Munitum erat.
<i>Per.</i>	Pugnatum fuit,	Visum fuit,	Lusum fuit,	Munitum fuit.
<i>Plu.</i>	Pugnatum fuerat,	Visum fuerat,	Lusum fuerat,	Munitum fuerat.
<i>Fut.</i>	Pugnatum erit,	Visum erit,	Lusum erit,	Munitum erit.
<i>Sub. Pr.</i>	Pugnatum sit,	Visum sit,	Lusum sit,	Munitum sit.
<i>Imp.</i>	Pugnatum esset,	Visum esset,	Lusum esset,	Munitum esset.
<i>Per.</i>	Pugnatum fuerit,	Visum fuerit,	Lusum fuerit,	Munitum fuerit.
<i>Plu.</i>	Pugnatum fuisset,	Visum fuisset,	Lusum fuisset,	Munitum fuisset.
<i>Fut.</i>	Pugnatum fuerit,	Visum fuerit,	Lusum fuerit,	Munitum fuerit.

OF A PARTICIPLE.

A PARTICIPLE is an adjective derived from a verb, and so called because it takes part of a verb; as, tense and signification: and part of a noun; as, number, case, gender, and declension.

Participles are four: one of the present tense, another of the preter tense; one of the future in *-rus*, and another of the future in *-dus*.

A participle of the present tense hath its english ending in *-ing*; as, *loving, teaching, &c.* and its latin in *-ans* or *-ens*; as, *amans, docens, &c.*

A participle of the preter tense hath its english ending in *d*, *n*, or *t*; as, *loved, seen, knit*: and its latin in *-tus, -fus, or -xus*; as, *amatus, visus, nexus*: and one in *-uus*; as, *mortuus*.

A participle of the future in *-rus* is form'd from the supine in *-um*, by changing *-u* into *-rus*; as, *amatum, amaturus*: and frequently implies a likelihood, or design of doing a thing.

A participle of the future in *-dus* is form'd from the participle of the present tense, by changing *-s* into *-dus*; as, *amans, amandus*, and besides futurity, implies somewhat of necessity.

Obs. Those ending in *-ans* or *-ens*, are declined like *felix*; those in *-us* like *bonus*: The two of the active voice signify actively; the two of the passive voice passively.

The Participle in *-us* is often used to express time immediately past; as, *vilior hanc nobis, alio mittente fuisset*.

And sometimes has the signification of the future in *-rus*; as, *De provinciâ decedens Quæstorem Cælium præposui provinciæ*.

The participle perfect of a deponent verb has sometimes the signification of the present tense: as, *Ipsæ hîc Æneam salutat vocibus, inquit*. But for the elegant sense of the participles and tenses, see *Johnson, Ruddiman, and Lowe*.

OF AN ADVERB.

AN Adverb is a word added to a verb, adjective, or noun to increase, lessen, or qualify their signification: as,

Fecisti optime, You have done very well.

Mediocriter doctus, tolerably learn'd.

Latè Tyrannus, a prince of large dominions.

The number of adverbs being so great, and their names more pushing, than instructive, to beginners, it may be sufficient to mention some few of them here; and those such as express the manner, time, and place of things.

Modal.	Temporal.	Local.
Bene, <i>well.</i>	Quando, <i>when.</i>	Ubi, <i>where.</i>
Malè, <i>ill.</i>	Nunc, <i>now.</i>	Hic, <i>here.</i>
Prudenter, <i>wisely.</i>	Hodie, <i>to day.</i>	Illic, <i>there.</i>
Temere, <i> rashly.</i>	Crâ, <i>to morrow.</i>	Intus, <i>within.</i>
Separatim, <i>separately.</i>	Hier, <i>yesterday.</i>	Foris, <i>without.</i>
Pariter, <i>equally.</i>	Pridie, <i>the day before.</i>	Ubique, <i>every where.</i>
Sic, <i>so.</i>	Dudum, <i>heretofore.</i>	Nusquam, <i>no where.</i>
Aliter, <i>otherwise.</i>	Nondum, <i>not yet.</i>	Supra, <i>above.</i>
Parùm, <i>little.</i>	Nuper, <i>lately.</i>	Infra, <i>below.</i>
Nimis, <i>too much.</i>	Olîm, <i>formerly.</i>	Sursum, <i>upward.</i>
Simul, <i>together.</i>	Tum, <i>then.</i>	Deorsum, <i>downward.</i>
Solum, <i>alone.</i>	Cum, <i>when.</i>	Alicubi, <i>some where.</i>
Meliùs, <i>better.</i>	Semper, <i>ever.</i>	Ubivis, <i>any where.</i>
Pejus, <i>worse.</i>	Nunquam, <i>never.</i>	Quò, <i>whither.</i>
Non, <i>not.</i>	Statim, <i>immediately.</i>	Illud, <i>thither.</i>
Imò, <i>yet.</i>	Mox, <i>by and by.</i>	Unde, <i>from whence.</i>
Forfan, <i>perhaps.</i>	Quamdiu, <i>how long.</i>	Hinc, <i>from hence.</i>
Certè, <i>truly, &c.</i>	Tam diu, <i>so long.</i>	Indè, <i>from thence.</i>

Some admit comparison.

Pos.	Com.	Sup.
Diu	Diotius	Diotissimè.
Doctè	Doctius	Doctissimè.
Durè	Durius	Durissimè.
Fortiter	Fortius	Fortissimè, &c.

OF A CONJUNCTION.

A Conjunction joins words, and sentences together; and shews in some measure the dependance they have upon one another.

Some serve to unite things: as,

Et, que, quoque, atque, ac, &c. *And, also.*

Others to separate them: as,

Aut, vel, &c. *either, or.*

Others to conclude, or infer things: as,

Ergo, igitur, &c. *therefore.*

Others to distinguish between, or oppose things to each other:

as, Sed-enim, verum, autem, at, atque, &c.

Tamen, attamen, verum enimverò, &c. *nevertheless.*

Others to render a reason: as,

Nam, namque, enim, et enim, &c.

Quia, quippe, quoniam, quod, &c. *because.*

These below, when they follow one another, may be Englished thus :

Suspensives.	Redditives.
Et, both _____	Et, and.
que, both _____	que, and.
nec, neither _____	nec, nor.
neu, neither _____	neu, nor.
aut, either _____	aut, or.
vel, either _____	vel, or.
seu, whether _____	seu, or.
five, whether _____	five, or.
cum, both _____	cum, and.
tum, both _____	tum, and:

Aut aperi faciem, vel tunicata larva.

Que, is sometimes tackt to the end of a verb, otherwise than the natural order of the words require : as,

Ore pedes tetigitque crura.

Massalam terrâ dum sequiturque mari.

Monstrâque terribiles subsequiturque feras : but this is not to be imitated.

OF A PREPOSITION.

A Preposition either helps to compound other words, and thereby often alters their signification ; as, *prælongus*, *very long* ; *perbrevis*, *very short* : or else is put before a noun in a proper case ; as, *ad hostem*, *to the enemy*.

Note. *An-an-di-dis-re-se-can* may be called inseparable prepositions, being never found but in compounds.

OF AN INTERJECTION.

AN Interjection is a word thrown into a sentence to express some sudden passion of the mind.

Some are used to express joy : as, *O ! Evax.*

Others grief : as, *Heu, hei, ah.*

Others indignation : as, *Proh, Heu.*

Others admiration : as, *Papa ! Hui ! &c.*

N. B. Sometimes a noun, adjective, or even a verb is used interjectionally : as, *malum ! infandum ! obsecro !* all which practice will render easy.

OF SYNTAX OR CONSTRUCTION.

SYNTAX is the joining of words together, and consists of two parts, viz. *Concord* and *Government*.

OF CONCORD.

There are *three concords* or ways of agreement.
 The *first* between the *nominative case* and the *verb*.
 The *second* between the *substantive* and the *adjective*.
 The *third* between the *antecedent* and the *relative*.

First Concord.

The verb agrees with its *Nominative Case* in *Number* and *Person* : as,

<i>Poma dat Autumnus,</i>	Autumn yields fruits.
<i>Formosa est messibus Æstas,</i>	Summer is beautiful with crops.
<i>Ver præbet flores,</i>	Spring affords flowers.
<i>Ignè levitur Hyems,</i>	Winter is made easy by fire.

The way to find out the *nominative case* is to ask the question, *who?* or *what?* with the verb ; and the word that answers the question is the *nominative case* to it.

The *nominative case* of *pronouns* is seldom expressed ; except by way of *distinction* or *emphasis* : as,

Quamvis ille niger, quamvis tu candidus esses,
 Tho' he was black, tho' you were fair.

Tu dominus, tu vir, tu mihi frater eras,

You was my lord, you my husband, you my brother.

Sometimes an *infinitive mood*, or a *sentence* is used like a *nominative case* to a verb ; and then the verb must be the *third person* : as,

Errare humanum est, To mistake is a human frailty.

Didicisse fideliter artes emollit mores,

To have learnt the sciences thoroughly civilizes men's manners.

Exceptions.

A verb of the *infinitive mood* will have an *accusative* before it, when the english word *that* is or may be placed before such *accusative* : as,

Vivere me dicis,

You shall say I am alive.

Nec me suasisse negabo,

Nor will I deny that I advis'd it.

This accusative and infinitive is sometimes resolved by *quod* and *ut*, with a subjunctive mood. *See* § 1st. syntax.

When a verb stands between two nominative cases of different numbers, it may agree with either of them : as,

Vestes lanae sunt, The garments were wool.

Pectus quoque robora sunt, Her breast too is turned into oak.

A noun of multitude is sometimes joined to a verb (or adjective) plural : as, *Turba currit,* The multitude rush.

Partemque tenuere ratem,

Part plung'd under water laid hold on the ship.

Two or more singulars, cause the verb following for the most part to be put in the plural number : as,

Flebant matremque patremque, Both the father and mother wept.

And if the nominatives are of different persons, the verb commonly agrees with the most worthy. Where note, that the first person is more worthy than the second, and the second than the third : as,

Ego et tu sumus in culpa, I and thou are in fault. (*i. e. nos.*)

Tu et frater studetis diligenter,

Thou and thy brother study diligently. (*i. e. vos.*)

Obs. But sometimes the verb is made to agree with the nominative that stands nearest to it : as, *Ego et Cicero sumus fugiendi.*

The first person plural is often used for the first person singular, when a man is speaking only of himself : as,

Nec tamen Iunium non posui sperare equor sponte,

Yet I do not plough the Ionian sea of my own accord.

N. B. If a question be ask'd, or the verb be of the imperative mood, the nominative case is set after the verb, or after the sign of the verb : as, *amas tu,* dost thou love ? *amato ille,* let him love. Except such an interrogation precedes as, *quis* writes ? *quid* is written ?

Second Concord.

The adjective (whether noun, pronoun, or participle) agrees with its substantive in Gender, Number and Case ; and this, even when a verb comes between ; as,

Carmina proveniunt animo deducta sereno,

Verses flow easily composed with a serene mind.

Nubila sunt subitis tempora nigra malis,

Our seasons are cloudy with sudden evils.

Two, or more substantives will have an adjective plural, which adjective shall agree with the substantive of the most worthy gender : which in persons is the masculine, in things the

the neuter: as, *Rex et Regina beati*, The King and Queen are blessed. *Divitiæ, decus gloria in oculis jactantur*, Riches, honour, glory, are placed before your eyes.

N. B. This rule holds, tho' only some of the substantives signify things: as, *Jura, felix & superos ante calcas ruinas*.

When the word *thing* is join'd with an adjective, set nothing down for it, but put the adjective in the neuter gender: as,

Turpe fuit vinci, It was a shameful thing to be conquered.

So likewise when an infinitive mood, or a sentence, stands instead of a substantive, the adjective must be the neuter gender: as,

Dulce et decorum est pro patria mori,

It is sweet and honourable to die for one's country.

N. B. The infinitive mood is properly speaking a noun invariable, and when us'd as a nominative to a verb, or as a substantive to an adjective requires a verb of the third person, and an adjective of the neuter gender.

Obs. Sometimes the adjective agrees with the general word understood, especially when the substantives respect irrational animals, or plants: as,

Polypus & Chamaea sunt phlores &c. Solia. (i. e. animalia.)

Quid sit virtus Aristoteli dicam? quævis (i. e. arborum) *fructus.* Cic.

Hinc pecudes, armenta, vires, genus omne ferarum,

Quæque hæc sunt animæ destinationes æqueque virtus. Virg. (i. e. quæque animalium.)

In that of Lucan, *Hinc leges & plebsq; coacta*. The adjective seems to agree with *leges*, rather than *plebsq;*, as being the more general word, or else to avoid the quæstion. If the reading be right.

Third Concord.

The Relative agrees with the Antecedent in Gender, Number, and Person: as,

Odii sapientem, qui sibi non sapit,

I hate a wise man, that is not wise for himself.

Animum rege, qui, nisi paret, imperat,

Govern thy passion, which, unless it obeys, governs.

Sometimes a *sentence* supplies the place of the antecedent substantive, and then the relative must be put in the *number* gender : as,

In tempore veni, quod omnium rerum est primum,
I came in time, which is the main point of all.

If a relative stands between *two substantives*, of different genders, it may agree with either of them ; and if it refer to *two*, or *more clauses*, it shall be put in the *plural number*.

When there comes no *nominative case* between the relative and the verb, the relative is the *nominative to it* ; but when there *does*, the *relative* is govern'd of the *verb*, or of some *other word* in the sentence.

The way to find out the antecedent substantive is to ask the question, *who ?* or *what ?* with the verb :

1. And the way to know the *case of the relative* is to consider what case the antecedent would appear in after the verb, or governing word, and to put the relative in the same. An example will make it plain.

Sarmatis est tellus, quam mea vota petunt,

'Tis the Sarmatian land, which my prayers aim at.

2. Now what case would you put *tellus* in after *petunt* ?

Ans. In the accusative singular. Put the relative *quam* therefore in the same.

Note. The governing word is always *that* which may be construed *with the relative*, but if *left out* spoils the sense.

Interrogatives and indefinites follow the rule of the relative, and,

2. Indefinites commonly draw after them a *subjunctive mood* : as, *Quid videat nescit*, He knows not what he sees.

Words that *may ask a question* when us'd *without doing it* are called *indefinites*.

When the English word *that* may be changed into *who* or *which*, it is a relative, otherwise a conjunction.

Note. That the person of the relative is always the same with that of the antecedent : as,

Ego qui docet, I who teach. *Tu qui discis*, You who learn.

Lectio qua docetur, The lesson which is taught.

The *Question* and *Answer* to it must be made by the same case of a noun, and the same tense of a verb : as,

Quem librum legis ? Virgilium.

What book dost thou read ? *Ans.* Virgil.

Quid agitur in theatro? Ridetur.

What's doing in the playhouse? *Ans.* They are laughing.

1. In order to familiarise this intricate part of construction to young beginners, let them at first constantly repeat the antecedent with the relative, which will account for all the variation of it.

2. But this subjunctive mood is in some measure affected by a preceding verb in the sentence: as, *scio, scitis, video, intelligo, deduco*, and the like.

The Government of Substantives.

1. **W**HEN two substantives come together, betokening *divers things*, with *of* between them, the latter shall be put in the genitive case: as,

<i>Copia lymphæ,</i>	Plenty of water,
<i>Cultus agelli,</i>	A tillage of a little field.
<i>Tempora veris.</i>	The season of the spring.

This genitive is often turned into an *adjective possessive*: as,

<i>Patris domus,</i>	The house of my father, or
<i>Paterna domus,</i>	My father's house.

And sometimes it is elegantly turn'd into a dative: as,

Hinc nostro Vulcanus erat pater,
Vulcan was the father of this monster,
Prostrant sese Cæsari ad pedes,
They cast themselves at Cæsar's feet.

But if the two substantives refer to *the same thing*, they shall be put in *the same case*: and this, even when of different numbers: as,

Mæ requies curarum somnus habebat,
Sleep the relief of cares possess'd me.

Eccæ! læves Satyri, prævia turba dei,
Behold the nimble Satyrs, the preceding company of the god.

A *neuter adjective*, standing alone like a substantive, causes the noun following to be the genitive: as,

Quantum solis habent mortalia pectora!

How much of night have mortal breasts!

2. When the latter of two substantives hath an adjective join'd with it, denoting some quality of the *former*, it may be put in the genitive or ablative: as,

<i>Ingenui vultus puer,</i>	A boy of an ingenuous aspect.
<i>Egregiâ formâ mulier,</i>	A woman of exquisite beauty

The *cause* or *manner* of a thing is put after a substantive in the *ablative* : as,

Sum tibi natura pater, I am a father to you by nature.

Præceptor consilii, A master by counsel.

3. *Opus* and *opus* when latin for *need* require an *ablative* case :

as, *Quid verbis opus est ?* What need is there of words.

Nunc videtur opus, Now there is need of strength.

1. The sign of this genitive is commonly *of* or *'s* ; but sometimes 'tis rendered by other signs : as, *from, for, to, in, between, at, &c.*

N. B. The latter limits the general signification of the former, and shews some particular relation of one to the other.

2. The english sign is *of*, sometimes *with*.

3. The sign is *of*.

The Government of Adjectives.

Adjectives with a Genitive Case.

1. **ADJECTIVES** that signify *desire* and its contrary, *knowledge* and *ignorance*, *remembrance* and *forgetting*, *care* and *carelessness*, *fear* and *fearlessness*, *guilt* and *innocence*, require a *genitive* case : as,

Avidus laudis,

Greedy of praise.

Peritus belli,

Expert in war.

Memor mortis,

Mindful of death.

Axius vitæ,

Careful about life.

Timidus procelli,

Fearful of a storm.

Confessus facti,

Guilty of theft.

Adjectives derived from verbs and ending in *-ax*, govern a *genitive* : as,

Tempus edax rerum, Time a devourer of things.

2. *Partitive* nouns and nouns of *number* having *of* or *among* after them govern a *genitive* : as,

Aliquis nostrum, Some one of us.

Primus omnium, The first of all.

But this case is often alter'd by means of the prepositions *e, de, ex, inter, ante*, &c. : as,

Alter e-vobis,

One of you.

Primus inter v. antemnes, The first among, or before them all.

And sometimes 'tis expressed by an adjective : as, [del.]

Summa decurrit ab arce, He runs down from the top of the cita-

1. The sign is usually *of*, sometimes *in*.

2. Nouns partitive denote a part of some *Number* or *Whole*.

Adjectives of the comparative and superlative degree having *us*, or *than* after them require a genitive case : as,

Maior iustitia, The elder of the young men.

Pax optima rerum est, Peace is the best of things.

1. But *by* or *than* after the comparative degree causes the word following to be put in the ablative, except *than* be rendered by *quam* : as,

Maior dimidio, Bigger by half.

Candidior cygnis, Whiter than swans.

Note. The word *alio* when it may be rendered by any one but, besides, or any other than governs also an ablative : as,

Neque pater alium sapientem, laetumque beatum,

And lest you think any one but the wise and good man happy.

2. The thing compared has always *than* before it, which is therefore reckoned a sign of the ablative case. But sometimes the word following *than* does not signify the thing compared, and then *than* is rendered by *quam*, with the same case after it, as goes before it.

The sign *by* is most commonly left out in English : as,

Multo melius, much better.

Nil aliud per, nothing worse.

Alia instead of *quam* so much, by how much, we only put *The* before each comparative in English : as,

Quanto plura parasti, The more thou hast gotten.

Tanto plura cupis, The more thou desirest.

The comparatives may be elegantly varied by the superlatives getting *at* and its *in* *quanta* and *tanta* : as,

Ut quisque maximus est, ita maximè placabilis est,

The greater a man is, the more placable he is.

N. B. *Et* and *que*, *tanto* and *quanto* answer each other, though but one of them is frequently expressed : as,

Quo quisque est maior, magis est placabilis ira,

The greater every one is, of the more placable anger he is.

Adjectives with a Dative case.

1. Adjectives signifying profit or disprofit, likeness or unlikeness, pleasure, submission or relation to any thing will have a dative case : as,

Utile navigiis lignum, sed inutile telis,

A wood proper for ships, but improper for weapons.

Est similis matri, dissimilisque patri,

He is like his mother, and unlike his father.

Gratum opus agricolis, A work pleasing to farmers.

Supplex tibi, Submissive to you.

Proximus urbi, Next to the city.

But some of these adjectives govern also a genitive : as,
Es similis domini, Then art like thy master.
Temperantia inimica libidinis, Temperance is an enemy to lust.
Communis, immunis, alienus, govern various cases : as,
Communis est animantium omnium, vel animantibus omnibus,
It is common to all living creatures.
Illorum malorum, vel illis malis, vel ab illis malis immunes sumus,
We are free from those evils.
Ambitionis, vel ambitioni, vel ab ambitione alienus est,
He is a stranger to ambition.

1. The sign of relation is *to* or *for*.

1. *Natus, commodus, incommodus, utilis, inutilis, vebemens, aptus,* and some others, are sometimes joined to an accusative with the preposition *ad* : as,

Natus ad arma, Born to arms.

2. Verbals in *-bilis* taken *passively*, and participials in *-dus* require a dative : as, [star.

Lucus nulli penetrabilis astro, A grove to be pierc'd thro' by no
Flendus omnibus, To be lamented of, or by all.

1. Adjectives signifying motion or tendency to a thing choose rather the accusative with *ad* than the dative,—Those of fitness or unfitness may be made either way : as, *aptus bello* or *ad bellum*.

2. A participle denotes time, a participial does not : *Of* and *by* are the ordinary signs of this dative.

Adjectives with an Accusative case.

THE measure of magnitude, that is, the length, breadth, thickness, height, or depth of any thing is generally used after adjectives in the accusative ; and sometimes in the ablative, or genitive : as,

Turris centum pedes alta, a tower an hundred feet high.

Fons latus pedibus tribus, a well three feet broad.

Area lata pedum decem, a bed ten feet wide.

Adjectives with an Ablative case.

ADjectives that signify plenty or want govern an ablative, and sometimes a genitive : as,

Dives agris, Rich in lands.

Dives opum, Rich in substance.

Nudus agris, Strip of his lands.

Nudus omnium, Strip of all things.

The usual sign is *ex*, sometimes *in* or *with*.

The

The instrument, cause, form, or manner of a thing is used after adjectives in the ablative : as,

Infans jaculo,

Remarkable for his quiver.

Pallidus ira,

Pale with anger.

Ingenio pugnaz,

Warlike by nature.

Tam par aetate juvenis,

Youth so equal in age.

1. These adjectives, *dignus*, *indignus*, *præditus*, *capus*, *extorris*, *contentus*, *fructus*, govern likewise an ablative : as,

Dignus honore,

Worthy of honour.

Capus oculis,

Deprived of sight.

But *dignus*, *indignus*, and *extorris* are sometimes found with a genitive : as,

Carmina digna deæ,

Verses worthy of a Goddess.

Magnorum indignus avorum,

Unworthy of his great ancestors.

Extorris regni,

Banish'd from the kingdom.

2. The sign of *dignus*, *indignus*, *capus* is of, that of *contentus* and *præditus* with, that of *fructus* upon, that of *extorris* from.

N.B. Adjectives of diversity, viz. *alter*, *alius*, and *diversus* govern an ablative with *a* or *ab*. *Diversus* also governs a dative.

CONSTRUCTION OF PRONOUNS.

THESE genitive cases of the primitives, *mei*, *tui*, *sui*, *nostrum* and *vestrum*, are used when a person is signified : as,

Amor mei,

The love of me.

Part tui,

Part of thee.

But when action or possession is signified, *meus*, *tuus*, *suus*, *nostrum* and *vestrum*, are generally made use of : as,

Amor meus,

My love, i. e. with which I love.

Imago nostra,

Our picture, i. e. which we possess.

Nostrum and *vestrum*, follow after partitive nouns : as,

Nemo nostrum,

None of us.

Major vestrum,

The elder of you.

When *hic* and *ille* have respect to two foregoing substantives, *hic* commonly means the latter, and *ille* the former.

Sui and *suius* are called *reciprocalis*, because they reflect the sense back upon the person or thing mentioned before either in the same sentence, or in one connected by a copulative : as,

Se Fannius ipse peremit,

Fannius kill'd himself.

Annus in fontes rediit suos,

The rivers ran back to their fountains.

Voluitur,

Volvitur Ixion, et se sequiturque fugisque,

Ixion is rolled round, and both follows and flies from himself.

Where note, that when *hic*, or *iste*, may be turned into himself, or *seipsum*, it must be made by some case of the primitive *sui*.

And when *hic*, or *iste*, may be turned into his own, or their own, it must be made by some case of the possessive *sui*.

CONSTRUCTION OF VERBS.

Verbs with a Nominative Case.

SUM, *forem, fio, casso*, most verbs *passive*, and verbs of *gesture* will have a nominative either before or after them: as,

Non ego sum pastor, I am no shepherd.

Es in spectabile serpens,

Thou shalt be seen in the shape of a serpent.

Ego incedo regina, I walk as queen.

An *infinitive mood* likewise may have the same case after it as before it: as,

Hypocrita cupit videri justus, A hypocrite desires to seem just.

Ignarus non venit esse regandus,

Being ignorant that they were not all to be address'd.

Verbs with a Genitive.

SUM signifying *property, part, duty or belonging-to* will have a genitive: as,

Pecus est Melibœi, The cattle is Melibœus's.

Pastoris est numerare pecus,

It belongs to a poet man to number his cattle.

But these nominatives *meum, tuum, suum, nostrum, vestrum, humanum*, and the like are excepted: as,

Non est beneficentia maligne detrectare meum,

'Tis not thy property spitefully to lessen good actions.

1. Verbs of *esteeming or regarding* govern a genitive case of the *value*: as,

Pudor parvi penditur, Modesty is valued at a low rate.

Hoc mihi pluris eris, I shall value you the more for this.

These genitives *Flocci, nauci, nihili, pili, assis, bujus, teruncii*, are particularly added to *estimo, pendo, facio*: as,

Te nihili facio, I make no account of you.

2. Verba

2. Verbs of *accusing, condemning, warning and acquitting* will have an accusative of the *person*, and a genitive of the *thing* : as,

Hunc probris inquit, I accuso this man of dishonesty.

Et sceleris damnabilis simul? And will you condemn him of impiety?

Or else an oblique of the *crime or thing*, sometimes with, but often without a preposition : as,

De pecuniis repetundis damnatus est,

He is condemned of money unjustly taken.

Suspicionis absolutus est, He is clear'd from suspicion.

Uterque, nullus, alter, unus, unus, nemo, and all *superlatives*, are used after such verbs only in the oblique.

1. The verb *esse* governs also an oblique.

2. The prepositional to which one is connected is put in the genitive or oblique : as,

Quoniam huiusmodi estis, non sumus potius damnaturi,

Satago, misero, miseresco (and sometimes *undo* and *passio*) require a genitive : as,

Is rerum suarum satagit, He hath enough to do of his own affairs.

Miserere laborum, Pity our labours.

Miserescite regis, Pity the king.

3. *Remisco, obliuiscor, memini, recorder,* govern either a genitive, or an accusative : as,

Ingatus amicorum, vel antea obliuiscitur,

An ungrateful man forgets his friends.

Asterum dulce est meminisse laborum,

'Tis a pleasure to remember labours.

Meministis omnia amantes, Lovers remember every thing.

2. *Potior* governs a genitive, or an oblique : as,

Potior voti, v. voto, I obtain my wish.

1. *Memini*, to make much of, or fear of governs the oblique with *de*.

2. *Potior* is found also with an accusative.

Verbs with a Dative.

1. **A** L L Verbs put *acquisitively*, that is, denoting the person or thing, *to* or *for* which an action is done, whether it be good, bad, or indifferent govern a dative case : as,

Iunoni sacra parabant, They were preparing rites for Juno.

Hæret

Haeret latvi letbalis arundo, The fatal shaft sticks to her side.
Redeunt jam gramina campis, The grass now returns to the fields.

To this rule belong verbs that signify *profit*, or *disprofit*; *pleasing*, or *displeasing*; *flattering*, or *upbraiding*; *helping*, or *hurting*; *envying*, or *favouring*; *indulging*, or *forgiving*; *persuading*, or *congratulating*; also verbs of *comparing*, and *meeting*; *trusting*, or *distrusting*; *giving*, or *taking away*; *promising*, or *paying*; *commanding*, or *showing*; *obeying*, or *resisting*; *threatening*, or *being angry with*; and *sum*, with its compounds, except *possum*.

Verbs compounded with these adverbs *bene*, *satis*, *male*, and several other with these prepositions, *ad*, *con*, *in*, *super*, *ob*, *sub*, *pro*, *post*, *inter*, and *contra* will have a dative: as,

Malodixit utrique, She abused them both.

Præposui regnis ego te, I prefer'd you before kingdoms.

The verb *sum*, when used for *habeo*, turns the english nominative into a dative: as,

Illi corpus erat durum, He had a hard body.

Sum, puto, verto, habeo, tribuo, &c. will have a double dative: as,

Sum tibi præsidio (or præsidium) I am a safeguard to you.

2. *To* and *for* are the usual signs before this dative, and are implied in all datives.

N. B. *Loco, jure, aspectu, officio, &c.* govern an accusative.

Verbs with an Accusation.

1. **V**ERBS transitive govern an accusative case, whether they be *active*, *deponent*, or *common*: as,

Di pia facta vident, The gods behold pious deeds. [decs.]

Venerantur numina nymphæ, The nymphs worship the gods.

Fœbris depascitur artus, The fever feeds upon their limbs.

Verbs *neuter* also govern an accusative of a *like* signification with themselves: as,

Vivere vitam, To live a life.

Ire iter, To go a journey.

And if used *actively* they will have an accusative, though there be no similitude of sense: as,

Corydon ardebat Alexin, Corydon was passionately fond of Alexis.

Verbs of asking, teaching, and concealing govern *two* accusatives, and passive verbs of *asking* and *teaching* govern one: as,

Pacem

Pacem te poscimus omnes, We all desire peace of you.
Posceris exta bovis,
 You are required to sacrifice the intrails of a heifer.

Verbs with an Ablative.

1. **A** L. I. verbs require an ablative case of the instrument whereby, the cause why, or the manner how a thing is done; also the means whereby and respect wherein: as,
Demetit ense caput, He cuts off his head with a sword.
Pectora felle virent, Her breasts are green with gall.
Jam venist tacito curva senecta pede,
 Stooping old age will soon come with a silent foot.
Homines capiuntur voluptate, Men are taught with pleasure.
Præstat ingenio alius alium, One man exceeds another in wit.

2. The word of price is us'd after verbs (or adjectives) in the ablative: as,

Vendidit hic auro patriam,
 This man sold his country for gold.

Nocet emptæ dolore voluptas,
 Pleasure bought with pain does harm.

But *tanti*, *quanti*, *pluris*, *majoris*, *minoris*, and the compounds of *tanti*, and *quanti*, are used in the genitive without substantives: as,

Non unquam reputat quanti sibi gaudia cœlesti,
 She never reflects how much her pleasures cost her.

Vix Priamus tanti, totæque Troja fuit.

Scarcely Priam and all Troy was of so much value.

But if the substantives are express'd they are put in the ablative: as,

Minore pretio vendidi quam emi,
 I sold cheaper than I bought.

Note, That *valde* governs an accusative of the price, seldom an ablative.

3. Verbs signifying plenty or want, filling or emptying, loading or unloading, loosing or binding govern an ablative, and some of them also a genitive: as,

Missis replet juga nota querelis,

He fills the well known mountains with sad complaints.

Semper eget, liquidis semper abundat aquis,

He always wants, always abounds in clear waters.

Implem-

Implentur veteris Batubi, pinguisque ferinus,
They are fill'd with old wine and fat venison:

1. The signs of the instrument are *with* or *by*; those of the cause are *at*, *for*, *with*, *through*, or *by*, and those of the manner are *with*, *in*, *by* and *after*.

2. The english signs are *for*, *from*, *at* or *with*.

3. The signs after verbs of plenty, filling and loading are often *with* or *in*; and *of* or *from* after verbs of scattering, emptying or unloading; verbs of abounding, filling, and wanting govern also a qualitative.

Fuor, fruor, ator, dignor, nitor, veseor, muto, supersedo,
munto, commutuo, participio, afficio, impertio, impertior, pro-
sequor, govern also an ablative: as,

Fungitur officio, He discharges his duty.

Prætur meliori marito, She enjoys a better husband.

Utere sorte tua, Use thy good fortune.

Quem cæli notidum dignamur honore,

Whom we don't yet think worthy of heaven.

Virtute decet non sanguine niti,

You ought to rely on virtue, not blood.

Afficio vel prosequor te laude, I praise thee.

1. *Merco*, with these adverbs, *bene, male, melius, pejus, optime, pessime*, is join'd to an ablative with the preposition *de*: as,
Si bene quid de te merui, If I have deserved any thing well of you.

2. Verbs that signify *receiving, taking away, or distance*, will have an ablative with *a, ab, e, ex* or *de*: as,

Magistris artes accipit ab istis,

He received his instructions from the same masters.

Audio ex aliis eadem, I have heard the same things from others.

Ille rapit calidum de vulnere ferrum,

He pulls the reeking sword from the wound.

Hic longe distat ab urbe locus,

This place is far distant from town.

This ablative after verbs of *taking away*, and being *distant* from is often turned into a dative: as,

Quis te mihi casus ademit? What chance took thee from me?

Hic paulum distat inertie, This differs but little from sloth.

Verbs of *comparing*, or *exceeding*, may have an ablative case of the verb that signifieth the *measure of excess*: as,

Hunc multis gradibus superat.

He outdoes this man by many degrees.

3. A noun, pronoun, or two nouns join'd with a participle expressed, or understood, separated from the rest of the sentence, and having no word whereof they may be govern'd, shall be put in the ablative absolute : as,

Ille hæc, depositâ tandem formidine, satur,
 He having at length laid aside his fear, thus speaks.
Aspexi lacrymas, me lacrymante, tuas,
 I beheld your tears, when I was crying.
Quam bene vivebant, Saturno rege, (i. e. regnante)
 How well did they live, Saturn being King ?

1. The sign is always *of*.

2. The sign is *from* ; likewise *of*, *by*, or *concerning* after verbs of receiving.

3. The sign of the ablative absolute is commonly *being* or a word ending in *ing* ; and may be paraphrased by *when*, *while*, *seeing*, *if*, *as*, *after*, &c. just as the relation requires.

N.B. When the verb is put imperatively, the participle present is us'd, but when perfectly the participle of the perfect tense. And if the verb be deponent, the participle is used in the nominative agreeing with its substantive.

1. The *part affected*, whether mind or body, is put after verbs or adjectives in the ablative, the accusative, and sometimes the genitive : as,

Animusque, et corpus torpet.
 He is stupified both in mind and body.
Micant auribus, et tremis artus,
 His ears quiver and his joints tremble.
Despiebam mentis, I boasted.

2. Adjectives and especially participles passive in this sense are generally followed by an accusative ; as, *multis membra, fractus membra* : And may be rendered in English by *as to*.

Verbs passive.

VERBS passive require an ablative case of the agent, or doer, with *a*, *ab*, or *abs*, and sometimes a dative: as,
Vincor ab Æneâ, I am vanquished by Æneas.
Murus pulsatur ab hoste, The city wall is battered by the enemy.
Vix audior ulli, I am scarce heard of or by any body.

The sign is by sometimes of.

Verbs Infinitive.

WHEN two verbs come together, without any nominative case between them, the latter shall be put in the infinitive mood: as,

Tu pugnare potes, Thou can'st fight.

Scire volunt omnes, All desire to know.

Nescit vox missa reverti, A word let go cannot return.

And one infinitive will govern another: as,

Possit mori cupies, You will desire to be able to die.

This infinitive mood is us'd likewise after participles and adjectives: as,

Iussus confundere fœdus, Commanded to violate the treaty.

Dignus amari, Worthy to be lov'd.

N. B. An infinitive mood is sometimes put after the verb like an indeclinable substantive in the accusative case: as,
Reddes dulcè loqui, You must give me back my entertaining talk.
Reddes ridere decorum, You must give me back my graceful laugh.

Gerunds.

1. **T**HE gerund in *-di* is used after certain substantives, and adjectives that govern a genitive case: as,

Furit ardor edendi, The desire of eating rages.

Non ita certandi cupidus, Not so eager of contending.

But here the poets sometimes use the infinitive mood: as,

Tempus abire tibi, It is time for you to be gone.

Avidus committere pugnam, eager to engage.

The gerund in *-do* is used after these prepositions, *a, ab, abs, de, e, ex, cum, in, pro* : as,

Ignavi a discendo citò deterrentur,

Idle boys are soon discouraged from learning.

Or else without a preposition, like the ablative case of the manner or means : as,

Quid fidem certet Phœbum superare canendo ?

What if the same person should strive to excel Phœbus in singing.

Posse capi faciendo, Pergama cepi.

I have taken Troy, by rendering it capable of being taken.

And sometimes like a dative case, after adjectives signifying usefulness and fitness : as,

Max apta natando crura dat.

Presently it gives them legs fit for swimming.

1. These generally express will or knowledge : as, *voluntas amor, ardor, studium, cupido, libido, licentia*—*avidus, cupidus, certus, peritus, ignarus*—also *causa, consilium, consuetudo, facultas, gessus, gratia, locus, modus, norma, occasio, opportunitas, otium, potestas, principium, ratio, satietas, spes, tempus, vis, &c.*

N. B. The gerund in *di* is often expressed in English by the participle of the present tense, and *of*, after a substantive : as,

Studium legendi, a desire of reading : and the sign *of*, or *in*, after an adjective : as,

Cupidus visendi, Desirous of seeing.

Peritus jaculandi, Skillful in throwing darts.

1. The gerund in *-dum* is used, like an accusative case, after *ad*, or *inter*, and sometimes, though very rarely with *ante*, *ob*, *propter*, and *circa* : as,

Promptus ad audiendum, Ready to hear.

Inter canandum, Whilst at supper.

Ante domandum, Before they are tamed.

The gerund in *-dum* is used also with the verb *esse*, put impersonally, after this english *must* or *ought* : as,

Omnibus esse moriendum, All must die.

Gerunds, if the verb they come from be transitive, are frequently turned into participles in *-ds*, agreeing with their substantives in gender, number, and case : as,

Pecoris nunc hora creandi, Now is the season for breeding cattle.

A com-

A compendium carminum, From writing poetry.
Ad accusandos homines, To accuse men.

Supine.

2. **T**HE supine in *-um* hath for the most part an active signification, and is used after *verbs of motion*, like an accusative case: as,

Spectatum veniunt, They come to see.

3. The supine in *-u* hath for the most part a passive signification, and is used after *adjectives*, like an ablative case: as,
Mirabile dictu, Wonderful to be spoken.

1. The prepositions, *ad, ob, propter* denote a cause or reason, but *inter* and *ante* respect time.

2. But as it is made use of to signify the *end*, it is sometimes found after other verbs besides those of motion: as,

Nec ego vos ultum injurias horter.

N. B. In neuter passives and when used with *iri*, it signifies passively.

3. 'Tis found also after, *fat, agere, and nefas*. It may likewise be express'd by the infinitive mood; or else by *ad* and the gerund in *-dum*; as,
turpe dictu, dici, dicere, ad dicendum.

This supine, when us'd, in an active sense, most commonly follows verbs of motion: as, *Surgit abitu, redit venatu.*

N. B. Prepositions are sometimes us'd with both the supines.

Participles and Verbals.

PARTICIPLES, gerunds, supines, and other verbals, commonly govern such cases, as the verbs they come of: as,
Utendum est etate. We must make use of our time.

Non Graius servitum matribus ibo,

I shall not go to serve the Grecian dames.

Tendens ad sidera palmas, Lifting up his hands towards the skies.

Vitabundus castra hostium,

Desiring to avoid the camp of the enemy.

Participles of the *Passive voice* have sometimes a dative case, but more especially if they end in *-du*: as,

Nemo ex hoc numero mihi non donatus abibit.

No one of this number shall go away unrewarded by me.

Ille mihi ferendus aper, That boar is to be smote by me.

1. But great care must be taken to distinguish these from *participial nouns*, which are known four ways.

First,

First, when they are joined to a different case from what the verb governs: as, *appetens vini*, Greedy of wine.

Secondly, when they are compounded with a preposition, which the verb cannot be compounded with: as, *imbecus*, unlearned.

Thirdly, when they form all degrees of comparison: as, *Amans, amantior, amantissimus*, loving, more loving, most loving.

Fourthly, when they have no respect to, nor express difference of time: as, *homo laudandus*, a man worthy to be praised.

Participles, when changed into nouns, require a genitive: as,

Fugitans litium, Avoiding law-suits.

Indolens pile, Unskilful at ball.

Cupientissimus tui, Most desirous of thee.

Lactis abundans, Abounding with milk.

2. *Exosus, perosus, pertæsus*, signifying actively, govern an accusative: as,

Exosus sævitiam, Hating cruelty.

Perosus arma, Thoroughly hating arms.

Pertæsus vitam, Weary of life.

These participles signifying birth, *natus, prognatus, satus, cretus, creatus, procreatus, oriundus, ortus, editus, genitus, generatus*, govern an ablative case with, but oftner without a preposition: as,

Nate Deâ, Born of a Goddess.

Sate sanguine Divum, Sprung from the blood of Gods.

Ab origine cretus eâdem, Descended from the same original.

1. Observe likewise that participial nouns include in their sense an ability, qualification, or disposition for doing a thing: as, *patiens inedia*, denotes one actually suffering hunger, *patiens inedia*, one capable of doing it.

2. *Perosus* and *pertæsus* are found also with a genitive.

Of Impersonals.

A Verb impersonal has no nominative case before it. Most impersonals govern a dative case; and the sign is commonly *is* or *there*: as,

Non mihi scire licet, It is not lawful for me to know.

Aliis malè creditur, There's no trusting to the others.

But

But *interest* and *refert* govern a genitive ; unless these pronoun possessives are used, *mea, tua, sua, nostra, vestra*, and *cujus* : as,

Interest regis,

It concerns the king.

Tua refert,

It concerns thee.

1. *Poenitet, taedet, miseret, miserescit, pudet, piget*, govern an accusative of the *person*, and a genitive of the *thing* : as,

Regem poenitet ira, It repenteth the king of his anger.

Miseret me tui, I pity thee.

Juvat, dicit, delectat, oportet, govern an accusative of the *person*, with an infinitive mood after it : as,

Me juvat ire per altum, It delights me to go by sea.

2. Except when both are persons, as in the last example.

N. B. This genitive is frequently turned by the infinitive : as,
Poenitet me peccasse.

Of Time and Place.

Of Time.

2. **T**HE time *when* is put in the ablative case : as,
Nocte latent munda, Blemishes are not seen in the night.

3. The time *how-long* in the accusative, and sometimes in the ablative : as,

Hic jam ter centum totos regnabitur annos,

Here from that time kings shall reign full three hundred years.

Hic tamen huc mecum poteris requiescere nocte,

Here however you shall lodge with me this night.

2. This ablative signifies generally *in, at, or on* such a time. It means also *within such a time*, or else refers to *time past*. Sometimes the prepositions *in* or *de* are added.

3. The prepositions sometimes expressed are, *ad, ante, intra, per, post*.

Of Place.

THE distance *between place and place* is put generally in the accusative case, though sometimes in the ablative : as,

Mille quidem passus distat ab urbe locus,

The place is distant indeed a mile from the city.

In a town or at a town, if the word be of the first or second declension, and singular number, is put in the genitive, otherwise in the ablative : as,

Roma Tibur amo ventus, Tibur Roman, } It answers the
 I being unconstant at Rome love Tibur, at Tibur Rome.
Regnavit Amyclis, He reign'd at Amyclis.

N. B. At a town is made likewise by the accusative with *ad* And when the signification is *about* or *near* a place, we make use of the same preposition : as,

Gesserat ad Trojam bellum, He waged war at (or near) Troy.

To a place is put in the accusative case : as, } It answers
Tendimus hinc rectè Beneventum, } the Qu. Quo ?
 From hence we make directly to Beneventum.

Rus and *domus* have the same construction : as,

Rus ibo, I'll go into the country.

Ite domum, Go ye home.

1. *From, by, or through* a place is put in the ablative : as, } It answers the
Egressus Româ, Gone from Rome. } Qu. unde ? or
Eboraco sum facturus iter, } quâ.

I intend to take my journey by, or thro' York.

Rus and *domus* again have the same construction : as,

Rure rediit, He is returned out of the country.

Exiit domo, He is gone from home.

These words *Humi, domi, militiae, belli,* are used like proper names in the genitive : as,

Fusus humi, Laid along on the ground.

Cacuat domi, He sups at home.

1. *By* a place or *through* a place is put also in the accusative with *per*.
 OBL. Common names of places and names of countries and islands are oftner used with a preposition than without ; and proper names of cities and towns much oftner without than with.

THE CONSTRUCTION of ADVERBS.

1. **A**dverbs of quantity, time, and place, govern a genitive case : as,

Satis lucri, Enough of gain.

Tunc temporis, As that time.

Nusquam loci, No where.

En and *ecce* are oftner join'd to a nominative, than to an accusative : as,

En ! Priamus, *Lo ! Priam.*
Ecce ! tibi status noster, You see our condition.
En ! quatuor aras, Behold four altars.

But when us'd in a jeering way they are commonly followed by an accusative : as,

En ! habitum, Do but mind his dress.
Ecce ! autem alterum, See here comes the other.

1. But adverbs of quantity signifying *enough* for, or *sufficient* for, govern a dative by acquisition : as, *Turbæ viæ satis una ratio.*

Insuper and *ergo*, govern a genitive case, *cado* an accusative, and adverbs derived from adjectives, such cases as the words they are derived from.

Obs. Two negatives among the Latins generally speaking make an affirmative.

What Moods Adverbs are join'd to, viz.

Postquam, *antequam*, *priusquam*, *simul*, *simulut*, *simulac*, *simulatque*, also *ubi* and *cum*, will have an indicative, or subjunctive : as,

Simul atque volam, As soon as I please.
Simul atque adoleverit ætas, As soon as you shall be grown up.
Hæc ubi dicta dedit, When he had said these words.
Ubi nos laverimus, When we have washed.

Dum and *donec* for *quandiu* an indicative : as,

Dum quod te dignum est facies,
 As long as you shall do what is worthy of you.
Donec eram sospes, As long as I was safe.

3. *Dum* and *donec* for *quoad* or *usquedum* an indicative, or subjunctive : as,

Tityre, dum redeo, brevis est via, pascæ capellas,
 Feed my goats, Tityrus, till I return, the way is but short.
Tertia dum Latio regnantem videt ætas,
 Till the third summer shall have seen him reigning in Latium.
Donec partu dabit Ilia prolem, Till Ilia shall bring forth.
Donec redierit, Until he shall be come back.

Dum for *dummodo* only a subjunctive : as,

Dum prosum tibi, So be I can serve you.

Quoad for *quandiu*, an indicative or subjunctive ; for *quousque* only a subjunctive : as,

Quoad fuit in urbe, As long as he was in the city.
Quoad possem, As long as I cou'd.
Quoad exercitus hic mittatur, Until the army be sent hither.

Ut for *postquam* an indicative : as,

Ut dolor unius Danaos pervenit ad omnes,
 After that the grief of one man reach'd all the Greeks.

For *quomodo*, denoting admiration, the same : as,

Ut perii ! Ut me malus abstulit error !

How did I die ! How did fatal error run away with me ?

When taken indefinitely only a subjunctive : as,

Cerni,

Cernis ut igneum corrumpant otis corpus !

You see how instantly destroys a heavy body !

When it signifies *similitude*, or in *proportion to*, an indicative, or subjunctive : as,

Ut tute es, ita omnes censes esse,

As you yourself are, so you think all others to be.

Ut sementem faceris, ita et metas,

As you have sown, so also will you reap.

Quasi, quæsi, ut quæd, tanquam, f, tanquam signifying (*as if*) a subjunctive (*even as*) an indicative : as,

Quasi non norimus nos inter abs,

As if we did not know one another.

Quasi verò paulum interstet,

As if there was but little difference.

Tanquam si res tua agatur,

As if it were your own case.

Tanquam feceris ipse aliquid,

As if you yourself had done somewhat.

Fuit olim, quasi ego sum, senex,

There was formerly an old man, even as I am.

Ac si, perinde ac si, haud secus ac si, perinde quasi, a subjunctive : as,

Ac si magis Gnæcorum malis implere ceterum,

Than by choosing rather to fill up the great numbers of the Greeks.

Nè, ut nè, quò nè, signifying *lest* ; also *nè, utinam nè,* signifying *wishing*, govern a subjunctive : as,

Cave nè stiteris,

Take care lest you stumble.

Nè sin salvis,

I wish I may die.

Nè, an adverb of *forbidding*, is join'd either to the imperative, or subjunctive : as,

Nè sciri, magna sacerdos,

Don't be angry, great priestess.

Nè metuas,

Don't be afraid.

An, nè, *num,* put interrogatively, are used with an indicative : as,

Superatus, et vesatur aurâ, Is he alive, and does he breathe the air ?

But taken doubtfully or indefinitely, they govern a subjunctive : as,

An hoc intempestum et inutile factu, necne sit, addubium ?

Can you doubt whether this be scandalous and pernicious to be done, or no ?

Vise, num redierit,

Go see, whether he be return'd.

The subjunctive mood is most us'd.

THE CONSTRUCTION OF CONJUNCTIONS.

Conjunctions copulative and disjunctive, with these four, *quam, nisi, præterquam, an*, commonly couple like cases, moods and tenses : as,

Quærit opes et amicitias, He seeks after riches and friendships.

Consumit ferrum lapideoque vitustas,

Age consumes iron and stone.

Non formosus erat, sed erat facundus Ulysses.

Ulysses was not handsome, but he was eloquent.

But sometimes the particular construction of a noun may require a different case : as,

Emi librum centum et pluris,
I bought the book for a hundred pence and more.
Vixi Romæ et Venetiis, I liv'd at Rome and Venice.

Sometimes also they couple like moods, but different tenses ; but then the sense of the verb requires it should be so : as,

Nisi me lætâsses amantem, et falsa spe produceres,
Unless you had fed me up being in love, and still drew me on with false hope.

Obs. When the conjunctions *cum* and *tum* are used, the latter often implies somewhat more than the former : as,

Odit tum litteras, tum virtutem,
He both hates learning and also (or more especially) virtue.

What Moods Conjunctions are join'd to.

Et, tametsi, etiamsi, quauquam in the beginning of a sentence require an indicative, in the middle or end an indicative, or subjunctive : *quauquam* and *licet* generally a subjunctive : as,

Quauquam animus meminisse horret, Altho' my mind dreads to relate it.
Quauquam Elysia miretur Græcia campos,
Altho' Greece admires the Elysian fields.

Quin, signifying *why not ?* is commonly join'd to an indicative, sometimes to an imperative, or subjunctive : as,

Quin huc ad vos venire propero ?
Why do I not hasten to come hither to you ?

Quin after a negation signifying *but*, *but that*, governs only a subjunctive : as,

Nemo qu quin malis, There is no one but had rather.

Ni, nisi, si, siquidem, quid, quia, quàm, are joined both to an indicative and subjunctive : as,

Miram ni domi est, 'Tis a wonder but he is at home.

Nisi immortalitatem optare velles, Unless he would wish for immortality.

Ni, nisi and *si* will have a subjunctive in the former part of the sentence, when a subjunctive follows in the latter : as,

Ni nesciam causam crederem vera hunc loqui,
Unless I knew the case, I shou'd think he speaks true.

Nisi in litteris viverem, haud possem vivere,
Unless I were to live among books, I could not live at all.

But *si* for *quauquam* always a subjunctive mood : as,

Redeam ? non, si me obsecres, Shall I return ? no, altho' she intreat me.

Siquis commonly an indicative, rarely a subjunctive : as,

Siquis ades, If any one be present.
Thaida siquis opor, If any one should ask Thais.

Quid in the beginning of a sentence, signifying *whereas*, requires an indicative ; when it follows after, *non quod*, or *nihil quod*, and signifies *why* or *wherefore*, a subjunctive : as,

Quod ad me scripsisti, Whereas you wrote to me.

Non est quod timeas, There is no reason why you should be afraid.

Nihil est quod (or cur) me inviteas,

There's no reason wherefore you should invite me.

Quod or qui put for the causal that a subjunctive : as,

Quo facilius civitatem in officio contineret,

That he might the more easily keep the state in its duty.

Quando, quandoquidem, quoniam and quippe an indicative : as,

Dicite, quandoquidem in molli consuevimus heruli,

Say on, for as much as we are sat together upon the soft grass.

Quippe veter satis --- Because I am forbidden by the fates.

Ut qui being only a subjunctive : as,

Non est tibi fidendum, ut qui tuus sefalleris,

You are not to be trusted, seeing you have so often deceiv'd.

Utpote qui

or

Quippe qui

} will have an indicative or subjunctive : as,

Utpote qui peregre pugnavit (or pugnaverit,)

Because he fought abroad.

Utpote cum

or

Quippe cum

} a subjunctive only : as,

Quippe cum satis habeat auctoritatis,

Seeing it has authority enough.

Cum for *quid* requires an indicative, for *licet* a subjunctive, for *quandoquidem*, or *quoniam* generally a subjunctive ; though sometimes an indicative : as,

Gratuler tibi cum tantum vales apud Dolabellam,

I congratulate you that you have such an interest with Dolabella.

Cui sententia cum Cato intercessisset, tamen est perscripta,

Which vote though Cato oppos'd it, yet pass'd.

Cum se officio, Gravibus, vultibus aptus,

Seeing that you are, Mars, fit for manly offices.

Cum huic veritus est optima adolescenti facere injuriam,

Seeing he made a conscience of doing an injury to this most deserving young Lady.

Ut, when put for *ne non*, after verbs of fear requires a subjunctive mood : as,

Metuo ut substat hospes (i. e.) ne non substat,

I fear lest this stranger should not stand his ground.

Ut for *quoniam*, or when it signifies that denoting the cause or reason of a thing, ever governs a subjunctive, and so does *uti* ; as,

Ut defint vires tamen est laudanda voluntas,

Tho' strength be wanting, yet a good will is to be commended.

Te oro, Dave, ut redeat jam in viam,

Favus, I intreat you that now he may return into the way.

Utinam and *O si* commonly a subjunctive : as,

Utinam promissa liceret non dare,

I wish it were in my power not to give what I have promised.

O si urnam argenti fors qua mihi monstraret !

☉ if fortune would but shew me an urn of silver any where !

The Construction of Prepositions.

1. **T**HE ablative case is sometimes governed of a preposition understood : as,

Fallit nos vitium specie virtutis (i. e. *sub*)

Vice deceives us under the shape of virtue.

Ter fessus valle refedit, (i. e. *in*)

Being tired thrice he sat down in the valley.

1. Where we can distinctly understand the sense without it.

A preposition oft-times governs the same case in composition that it does without it : as, *Exeat aulæ*, Let him leave the court.

But this rule only takes place when the preposition may be dissolved from the verb, and put before the case by itself : as,

Alloquor patrem, I speak to my father, i. e. *Loquor ad patrem*.

And even then the preposition is frequently repeated : as,

Exire a finibus suis, To quit their country,

Prepositions when they lose their case become adverbs : as,

Longo post tempore venit, He came a long time after.

Coram quæ quæritis adsum,

I the person you seek am here before you.

These Prepositions govern an Accusative, viz.

Ad, penes, adversus, cis, citra, circiter, extra,

Erga, apud, ante, secus, trans, supra, versus & intra,

Ultra, post, præter, propter, prope, pons, secundum,

Per, circum, circa, contra, juxta, inter, ob, infra.

His quoque prædictis adjungas *clanculum et usque*.

These govern an Ablative.

Abs, ab & a sic, absque, palam, de, ex, e, sine, coram,

Cum, pro, præ, tenus, et plurali cum genitivo ;

Casum utrumque regunt hæc, subter, sub, super, in, clam.

N. B. *Tenus, versus* and *penes*, are usually set after the case they govern.—And so is *usque* sometimes. *Floris usque tenus* with an accusative : as, *Duciam tenus venit*.

In sub, and *super* signifying motion to a place, person, or thing, generally govern an accusative ; but when motion, or rest in a place is implied, as generally an ablative.

Subter and *clam* govern either case indifferently. But for the more exact and elegant use of these prepositions consult *Ainsworth's Dictionary*.

The

The Construction of Interjections.

Interjections are often put *independently* without a case : as,
Spem gregis, ah, filice in nudâ connixa reliquit,
 Having yean'd she left the hope of the flock, alas! on
 the bare flint stones.

The Interjection *O!* governs a nominative, accusative and
calling upon only a vocative : as,

O! festus dies hominis! O the joyful day of mortal man

O! fortunatos agricolas! O fortunate husbandmen!

O! formosæ puer, O beautiful boy!

Heu, a nom. dat. acc. and vocative : as,

Heu pietas, heu prisca fides, Ah his piety, ah his ancient integrity.

Heu misero mihi, Ah miserable wretch that I am.

Heu stirpem inuisam, Ah the odious stock,

Heu miserande puer, Ah piteous youth.

Prob a nominative, accusative and vocative : as,

Prob dolor, O the grief.

Prob Deum atque hominum fidem,

Alas the help of Gods and men.

Prob sancte Jupiter! O sacred Jupiter!

Hei and *ea* a dative only : as,

Hei mihi, Wo is me.

Væ misero mihi, Wretched man that I am!

Hæc and *Obe* a vocative : as,

Hæc! Syre, Soho Syrus.

Obe! libelle, 'Tis enough my little book.

Hem, ab, and *vab,* an accusative and vocative : as,

Hem asinus, Oh the roguery.

Ab virgo infelix, Ah unhappy young Lady.

Vab salus mea, O rare my preserver.

Apage an accusative : as,

Apage nugas tuas, Away with your trifles.

Of ELLIPSIS, or CRITICAL SYNTAX.

From Mr. HOLMES.

IN Syntax, notwithstanding what may seem contrary, these six, according to *Sanctius*, *Perizonius*, *Vossius*, the *Oxford* commentator, and other *Grammarians* of note, are found to be constant rules.

I. Every *nominative* hath a *verb* expressed or understood ; and every *verb* hath a *nominative*. — *At*, O festus dies hominis : by **ELLIPSIS**, O quam est, &c. Heu pietas ! *Ellip.* Heu quanta est pietas. Quis est in scholâ ? *Præceptor*, *Ellip.* est in scholâ. Aurum vilius est quam virtutes, **ELLIP.** sunt. So that properly there can be no *Impersonal* : *at*, Delectat me studere, *is* studere delectat me. Pluit, *Ellip.* Cælum pluit, &c.

II. Every *adjective* hath a *substantive* expressed or understood. — *At*, Mortalis, *Ellip.* Homo. Odober, *Ellip.* Mensis. Oriens & Occidens, *Ellip.* Sol. Altum vel profundum, *Ellip.* Mare. Meum est, *Ellip.* Officium. Omnia, *Ellip.* Negotia. Interest mea, *Ellip.* Officia, or negotia, or opera. Vendidit equum minimo, *Ellip.* Pretio, &c.

III. Every *genitive* follows a *substantive* expressed or understood. — *At* Paululum pecuniæ, a little matter of money ; **ELLIP.** Negotium. Hoc noctis, *Ellip.* Tempore. Avidus gloriæ, peritus belli, amans patriæ, *Ellip.* De re, causâ, gratiâ. Unus, alter, senior, humanissimus sapientum, *Ellip.* ex numero. Hoc pecus est Melibæi, *Ellip.* Hoc pecus est pecus Melibæi. Est regis, Interest omnium, Refert populi ; *Ellip.* Officium. Pudor parvi penditur ; Me pili æstimat ; *Ellip.* Pretio. Boni consilio, *Ellip.* in loco. Accusat eum furti, *Ellip.* de crimine. In rerum suarum satagit, &c. Agit rē Sat. rerum. Misere laborum, *Ellip.* Dolori. Datæ fidei reminiscitur, obliviscitur ; *Ellip.* Verba. Potiti sunt armorum, *Ellip.* Spolium. Penitet me peccati, *Ellip.* Commissio. Tædet me vitæ, *Ellip.* Afflictio. Satis vini, &c. rē Sat. vini. Commune animantium, *Ellip.* Naturæ. Areæ latæ pedum denūm, *Ellip.* ad mensuram. Plenus or implentur vini, *Ellip.* cum re vel liquore. Tanti valet, *Ellip.* tanti aris pretio. Eget defensionis, *Ellip.* in re. Discrucior animi, *Ellip.* dolore. Quid Romæ faciam, *Ellip.* in urbe. Domi bellique simul vivimus, *Ellip.* in re or loco. Crurum tenuis, *Ellip.* ad altitudinem, &c.

IV. Every *dative* hath its force in itself, that is, in *English* the signs *to* or *for* are expressed or understood. — *At*, Similis matri, like the mother ; Dedit mihi librum, He gave me a book ; Promitto hoc tibi, I promise you this ; Ne credas mulieri, trust not a woman ; *Ellip.* to. Est mihi, I have ; respondit votis, huic succurro, imperat aut servit cuique, obtemperat patri, occurrere morbo ; here at first sight *to* or *for* appear not, but the force of *acquisition* plainly appears, as it doth also in most verbs compounded with adverbs and prepositions. — Perhaps no verb governs two datives ; *at*, Sum tibi præsidio, Verto tibi vitio, Do tibi laudi, *Ellip.* pro. *Laud* being the ancient ablative in *e* or *i*. Do tibi culpæ, *Ellip.* in loco. Amatus, amandus omnibus, *Ellip.* ab. Auditus, memorandis, mihi, *Porticæ*. Dicede peritis, *Ellip.* a or ex. Nutritus Thebis, *Ellip.* in. *Enofus* Deo, *Ellip.* a or ex. Luci laborandum, *Ellip.* in, &c.

V. Every *accusative* follows the force of a *verb active* or a *proposition* expressed or understood. And every *verb active* governs an *accusative*. — *At*, Schola lata sex ulnas; Schola patet sex ulnas; *Ellip.* ad or per. Liber valet sex solidos, *Ellip.* ad. Manebit totam Hyemem; *Ellip.* per or ad. Ibat Londinum; redit domum; reditio domum, *Ellip.* ad. Cedo arbitrum *for* cedito. Heu stirpem invisam, *Ellip.* perde. Proh Desim atque hominum fidem; *Ellip.* appello ad. Pridie calendas, *Ellip.* ante. Petrus currit, it, vivit; *Ellip.* Cursum, iter, vitam. Rogo patrem pecuniam, *Ellip.* ut daret mihi pecuniam. Doceo te literas; *Ellip.* secundum literas. Induit se calceos; *Ellip.* in se. &c.

VI. Every *ablative* is governed of a *preposition* expressed or understood. — *At*, Vir nullâ fide; *Ellip.* cum or de. Opus est nobis autoritate; *Ellip.* in autoritate. Viginti minis usus est filio, *Ellip.* in minis. *Opus & usus* being properly substantives. Aurum vilius virtutibus, *Ellip.* præ. Dies triginta & plus eo in navi fui; *Ellip.* præ eo spatio. Plenus vino, abundans amore, pallidus irâ; *Ellip.* cum. Schola lata ulnis tribus; Schola patet ulnis tribus, *Ellip.* a, ab or in. Dignus es odio, *Ellip.* de. Virtute præditus, *Ellip.* cum. Virgo prognata bonis parentibus, *Ellip.* a, ab or ex. Potitæ sunt armis, *Ellip.* Spolium in armis. Georgius regnat, Dei gratiâ, æquitate & armis. *Ellip.* a gratia, in æquitate, cum armis. Vendidit librum duobus solidis, *Ellip.* pro. Fungitur magistratu, fruitor vitâ, utitur pecuniis, *Ellip.* Officium, tempus, negotium, opus in. Vescitur carnibus, *Ellip.* Stomachum cum. Rege veniente hostes fugerunt, *Ellip.* sub. Discessit Londino, vitium crescit tegendo, surgit, cubitu, *Ellip.* a, ab, or e. Nemo sapit omnibus horis, *Ellip.* in; &c.

ELEGANCIES of PLACING, &c.

From Messrs. WATT and STIRLING.

1. The substantive in the vocative case hath both its adjective and verb in the imperative mood before itself. 2. The case governed is placed before the word governing it. 3. The verb is placed almost always in the end of the sentence. 4. The relative is placed before the antecedent. 5. The interrogative is placed at the end of the sentence. 6. The infinitive mood is placed before the finite mood. 7. Adverbs are placed before verbs. 8. The adjective is placed before the substantive with some word or words between. 9. *Quoniam*, *cum*, *quia*, and such like, have some words before them. 10. Prepositions are often placed between the adjectives and substantives which they govern.

EXAMPLES.

1. Vale, mi Cicero. 2. Pauci dolorem ferre potuerunt. 3. Munificentissimam hostium civitatem Cæsar occupavit. 4. Quos amo, hos castigo. 5. Partes orationis quot sunt? 6. Maleficere qui vult, nusquam causam non invenit. 7. Lælius Scipionis familiarissimæ utebatur. 8. Gravissima est prohi hominis iracundia. 9. Omnes, cum valemus, recta ægrotis consilia damus. 10. Eâdem de causâ.

N. When *se* is joined to a verb, the nominative case must always stand after the verb.

RULES for CONSTRUING.

1. Read the sentence distinctly to a point, then seek out the nominative and verb agreeing in number and person. 2. When you see a genitive, seek out the substantive, adjective, verb or adverb governing it, or going before it in sense. 3. When you see a dative, seek out the substantive, adjective, verb or adverb going before it in sense. 4. When you see the accusative, seek out an active verb, or signifying actively, or participles, gerunds or supines, signifying actively, or a preposition governing that case. 5. When you see the vocative, the interjection is either expressed or understood. 6. When you see the ablative, seek out the preposition governing it, which is rather understood, and to be supplied after adjectives, verbs and adverbs of the comparative degree. 7. When you see the infinitive mood, seek out the substantive, adjective, or verb before it in sense, and sometimes it is put absolutely. 8. When you see an adjective, seek out a substantive agreeing with it in gender, number and case. 9. When words are suppressed by Ellipsis, they are to be supplied.

F I G U R A.

FIGURÆ dictionis sunt, *Prothesis, Anaphora, Syncope, Epenthesis, Apocope, Paragoge, Tmesis, Metathesis, Antithesis.*
Apocope Prothesis capiti; sed *Anaphora* aufert.
Syncope de medio tollit; sed *Epenthesis* infert.
Aufert Apocope fini; sed dat *Paragoge*.
Tmesis verba lecat; *Meter* sed *Thesis* ordine mutat,
Literulam *Antithesis*. Sic *Quatus tremere, dixi*
Indugratorum, Di, dicier, ex alio illi,
For Natus, contemnere, dixisti, imperatorem, Dii, dici, egredon, illi.
Qua-m-e-cun-que vocant terræ: *Tmesis.*

P R O S O D I A.

Regule Carminibus inferiöntes.

Carmen sit ex pedibus: pedes & syllabis quantis.

Syllabarum quantitas duplex est, longa nempe & brevis, sed quædam sunt communes.

Pedes duo sunt, *Dactylus* & *Spondeus*.

Dactylus constat tribus syllabis, quarum prima longa est, duæ postremæ breves: ut, *Frīgida*.

Spondeus constat duabus longis: ut, *Lætæ*.

Carmen Adonicum.

Carmen *Adonicum* constat duobus pedibus *Dactyle* & *Spondeo*: ut, *Frīgida lætæ*.

Carmen

Carmen Hexametrum,

Sive *longum*, constat sex pedibus, è quibus quatuor priores *dactyli* sunt vel *spondæi*; quintus sèrè *dactylus*, sextus semper *spondæus*: ut,
Nòn ègò dèirètò jàcùissèm frīgìdà lègès. Ov.

Carmen Pentametrum,

Sive *breve*, constat quinque pedibus ita divisis, ut in priore parte duo sint pedes; *dactyli* vel *spondæi*, cum *syllabâ longâ*: in posteriore, *duo dactyli*, cum *syllabâ item longâ*: ut,
Nèc quèrèrèt tårdis ìrè rēlictà diēs. Id.

Scanfioni Accidentia.

Scanfioni accident, *Synalepha*, *Æthipsis*, *Synæresis*, *Diaeresis* & *Cæsura*,
Synalepha est *Elisio* vocalis in fine dictionis ante alteram in initio sequentis: ut,

Serâ n' mīs vīr' èst crāstinū vīr' bōdīō. Mart.

At *Hen* & *O* nunquam eliduntur; quibus adde *ab*, *bei*, *ben*, *io* & *cui* monosyllabum.

Æthipsis est quoties *m* cum *suâ vocali* perimitur, proximâ dictione a vocali extorsâ: ut,

Mōstr' hōrrēnd' infērnū ingēns cūi lūmēn ādīmpētū. Virg.
pro monstrum, horrendum, infernus.

Synæresis est duarum syllabarum in unam contractio: ut,

Sint Mācēnātēs, nōn dēirūt, Flācī, Mārōnēs. Mart.

Diaeresis est ubi ex unâ syllabâ dissecta fiunt duæ: ut,

Dēbuerānt fūos evēlūissē mōs. Ov.

Pro coarctiss.

Cæsura est cum post pedem absolutum syllabâ brevis in fine dictionis extenditur: ut,

Pœcūrib' inbīlān spīrāntiā cōsūlīt extā. Virg.

Hic assilias *syssolen*: ut *scitrum* quod *scitrum*.

Et *diastolen*: ut, *Præmides* pro *Præmides*.

N. B. But these three last are not to be imitated.

*Regule Quantitatis.**I. Generales.*

Vocales nempe *a*, *e*, *i*, *o*, *u*, ubique pro brevibus habentur.

Diphthongi nempe *æ*, *au*, *ei*, *ai*, *eu*, pro longis.

I. Sed vocalis ante duas consonantes, vel in eâdem dictione vel in diversis aut ante duplicem, nempe *x*, *z*, *j*, positione longa est: ut,

Vēnus-ā-ā-xis-Majestas: nisi in compositis a *jugum*.

Vocalis naturâ brevis, ante mutam, sequente liquidâ, communis redditur; ut *mediocris* vel *mediocritas*. Longa verò non mutatur: ut, *māter*, *mātris*.

* But this is sometimes dispensed with: as,

Credimus? An qui amant ipsi sibi somnia fingunt?

I. Sometimes the last vowel of the preceding word, though naturally short, is made long; if the next begins with two consonants: as,
Quid gladium Romana stringis in ora? but this is not to be imitated.

Mutæ sunt *b, c, d, f, g, p, q*, liquidæ sunt *r, l*.

2. In vocibus hyperdisyllabis quantitas penultimæ cognosci potest pronuntiatione : ut, *Felicitis, criminis*.

Syllaba cuiusque versûs, u'tima habetur communis.

Literæ *b* nulla habetur ratio : ut,

Siv' qu' s' Ant' l'ebûm narrâbût ab Hæc'rê w'cûm.

Obe & lo interjectiones priorem syllabam communem habent, sed *eben* longam.

Note, Every contracted syllable is long.

* And in Greek words, *m, n*, as *Tecmessa Cygnus*. Mart. Corripit *suarûgdus*.

2. Adjectives in *-inus* are long ; as, *clandestinus, repentinus, &c.* Except *diutinus, crastinus, pristinus, perendinus & materialis* ; as, *Isaginus, abryssalinus, adamantinus, &c.*

2. Speciales.

3. Græcæ dictiones plerumque servant quantitatem suæ originis : ut, *Rhodop'ius, æer, Enyo, Japetus, Læertes, Pierides, Siôicus, Thâin, &c.* Derivata primitivorum quantitatem ferè sequuntur : ut,

amo, amans, amator †, m'vi, m'veram, m'verim, m'vissem, &c. His exceptis, *vox v'cis a v'ico, lex l'gis a l'go, rex r'gis a r'go, s'eda & s'edilo a s'edo ; & vicè versâ, dux d'cis a d'co, f'ides a f'ido, d'cax & maled'icus, & id genus multa à d'co ; l'ucerna a l'uco, s'por a s'pio, & multa alia quæ tibi inter legendum occurrunt.*

Composita itidem ferè simplicium : ut, *p'one, postp'no, extipias, inn'ba, pron'ba a n'bo ; dej'ro & pej'ro a j'ro, cogn'itus & agn'itus a n'otus* : Item *ibidem, ibique, quand'que, quand'cunque.*

Præpositiones, *a, de, præ, se, e, tra, ve*, in compositione ubique producuntur, nisi vocali sequente : ut, *amoveas*—si *d'c'ruat*. Di etiam producitur (nisi in *dirimo & disertus*.)

Pro itidem in compositione plerumque producitur : ut, *longo præf'icte usu*. Præterquam in istis *præcella, præfugus, prætervus, prænepos, prænop'is, præpheta, prælogus, præboscis, præsanus, præfiteor, præfiscor, præfari, præfugio, præfessid, præfessus, præfessus, præfundus*.—*Præfundo, præpello, præpulso, præpago, præpino, præumbo*, primam syllabam habent communem.

Præpositiones, *ab, ad, ob, sub, re ‡ in, per, circum*, si finat postio

Note, *-is* in the subjunctive is common, *v'mus*, and *v'itis* in the præterperfect tense are short, in the future long.

3. Greek words have *a* long before *o, u* ; except in *Ag'læodoi, ch'os* : And *e* long before *i, u*, except in *carbas'us, Cyclop'us, Pegas'us, Tartar'us &c.* *Æneida, Ner'-is* are common.

† And so in middle syllables : as, *animare, animosus, ab animus*.

‡ But *refert* for interest makes the first long. And *re* is found long in *refert* and *recidi*.

corripunter : ut, *pauca loquatur adâ*.

Cum

Omne *preteritum* dissyllabum priorem habet longam: ut, *vīdi*, *mōvi*:
Excipe *fidi* à *fido*, *bibi* à *bibo*, *scidi* à *scindo*, *stidi* à *sto*, *stidi* à *sisto*, *dē-*
dī à *dō*, *cūdi* à *furo*. †

Itidem *supina* dissyllaba priorem habent longam: ut, *vīsum*, *mōtum*.
Excipe *itum*, *litum*, *quītum*, *sītum*, *rūtum*, *ratum* *dātum*, *sātum*; *cītum*
à *cio*, & *stātum* à *stō*—sed *stāturus*

Plurimæ dictiones producant vocales ex autoritate pœtarum: ut,
rāmus, *rēmus*, *plānus*, *plēnus*, *cōtus*, *mūtus*, &c. quæ assiduo usu &
lectione discenda sunt.

Vocalis ante alteram in eādē dictione purè latinā ubique brevis est:
ut, *Dīus*, *mīus*, *pīus*, *vīi*, *spīi*, *stīi*, &c.

Diphthongus etiam, sequente in eādē dictione vocali, sæpe corripitur:
ut, *judibufor* *præstū*.

Excipiendi sunt genitivi & dativi *quintæ* *declinationis*, ubi *e* inter geminum *i* collocatur: ut *faciēi*, *dīi*.

Excipiendi sunt etiam genitivi *primæ* *declinationis* in *ai*: ut, *Aulīi*; et vocativi *Propiorum*: ut, *Cai*, *Pompai*.

Excipias etiam genitivos in *ius*, ubi *i* communis reperitur: ut, *illius* vel *illius*, nisi in alterius ubi *i* semper brevis est, & in *alius* ubi *i* semper longa.

Si quoque in *fo*, ubique producit: ut, *Si femina fas*: nisi *r* sequitur, ut in *f.orem* & *f.ori*, ubi *f* brevis est.

Dius priorem syllabam habet longam, *Diana* communem.

† The doubled syllable of the Preterperfect tense is likewise short: as *p̄pendi*; &c.

Ultimarum Syllabarum quantitas.

Longa Monosyllaba omnia.

Excipe quæ in *b*, *d*, *t*, desinunt—aut ad diphthongos refertur.

Item *Lac*, *nec*, *fac*, *ne* interrogativum, *quæ*, *ut*; Adjectiones syllabicas, *et*, *et*, *per*, pronomen *hic*, *nil*, *nil*, *fil*, *vel*, *an*, *in*, *per*, *ter*, *vir*. *Cōr*, *vā* *vadis*, *is*, *a* *sum*, *de* *affu*, *is*, *his* *cis*, *quis*.

Excipe.

i, *u*, *e*

{ *Cūi*, *nisi*, *scudī*, *scutī*, *nocudī*, *donā*.
Item *Gummi*, *moſi*, *Phylli*, *Phyllidi*, *ſmilia* &c.

Longa.

Excipe.

a

{ *Ea* *ini*, ut *carminē ini*, *forſan*, *forſitan*, *tamē*, *vidē* & *Vidiſti* & Apocopata—sed *nomē*. *Mor*.

In *an* & nominativis in *a* *ſignā*.

Græca quedam *Alexā*, *Ityn*, *Arcasā*.

Item in *on* per *o* parvum, *Ilion*, *Orpheon*.

is

{ *Ar*, breviter crescens *andā* *itis*, *lampā* *adis*.
Item Græca, *Horadī*, *cyclopā*, &c.

* But datives of the 3d from the 1st in Greek are always long as, *Oreſti*.

- Et *veis*, ut *militis-veis*, item *seges*, *tegēs*,
propter, *perpter*, *duis*, *obis*, *præis*, *panis*: Item
 neutra & nominativi et vocativi plurales Græco-
 rum, ut,
Hippomanēs, *Cacuthēs*, *Cyclopēs*, *Naidēs*.
Compēs, *impēs*. Item Græca per *o* parvum, *De-*
ūs, *Phyllidēs*.

Longa

- Vocativum a Græcis in *ai*, *Tbamā*.
 Ablativi, *Musā*.
 Imperativi, *amā*.
 Indeclinabile, *præterea*—

Excipe

ejā, *itā*, *putā* †, *quidā*,
poscā †, & voc. a
 Græcis in *-tes*, *Thy-*
estā,

Longa

- Græca quæ per *a* scribuntur, *Lethe*.
 Decl. & adverbia inde nat. *Diſ*, *pridē*.
 Item *famē*, *ferē*, *fermē*, *obē*.
 Sing. Imperat. Activ. 2dæ conjugationis, *docē*.
 Adverbia ab adjec. 2dæ declin. derivat. *palcbrē*.
 Dat. & Ablativi, *multō*.
 Adv. ab Adjec. deriv. *multō*.
 Item *omniū*.
 Dat. & Ablat. *musis*, sic *fortis*, *gratis*.
 Crescentium longæ in genitivo:
Samusis, *Salamis*. gen. *Samnitis*, *Salaminis*.
 Sing. Præf. quartæ conjugationis: *Audis*.
 Item *quis*, *noſis*, *malis*, *posis*, &c.
 Acutè crescens in Gen. *tellus*, *ūvis*—Item *tripūs*, *Amathūs*.
 Quartæ Decl. in Gen. Sing. Nom. Acc.
 & Voc. Plurali. *manūs*. Item gen. græc. *Sapphus*.
 —Hebræa quædam in *ēl*: ut, *Daniēl*.

Græc. ut *aēr*, et quæ *ēr*is longam habent in genitivo; sed *patēr*, *matēr* et pleraque in *r* corripuntur.

† Adverbialiter sumptum.

† Producent, Catul. & Hor.

‡ Ego producit Ovidius & *grātis* corripit.

Communia.

O — Numeralia in *gint* sæpius longa; pronomen *hōc* extra Ablat.
Covē, *valē*, *vidē*, *ſabōē*, *reſpondē*, *tab*.
Mibi, *tibi*, *ſibi*, *quar* ubi, ut, ibi, sed alibi.
Ambrō, *credō*, *mutō*, *poſtremō*, *ſedulo*, *ſerō*, *verō*, *denuō*, *quandō*,
ergō — Sed *ergō* pro cauſa ut & Græca per *a* ſemper producentur.

De variis Pedum & Versuum generibus.

Pedes usitatis sunt qui sequuntur.

Spondæus - - Cōlūm.
 Pyrrichius - - Pīū.
 Trochæus - - arēt.
 Iambus - - amāns.

Dactylus - - - - - Hīgīs.
 Anapæstus - - - - - Juvēns.
 Hebæus - - - - - Cūstī.
 Tribachys - - - - - Dīvīnās.

Usitata versuum genera, supradictis addenda, sunt Asclepiadæus, Sapphicus, Phalæcius, Iambicus & Alcaicus.

Asclepiadæus.

Versus Asclepiadæus constat ex spondæo, dactylo, cum syllabâ longâ & duobus deinde dactylis : ut,

Mācēnās ātāvīs ēdītē regībūs.

Sapphicus.

Versus Sapphicus constat ex Trochæo, spondæo, dactylo & duobus deinde Trochæis ; post tres versus additur Adonicus : ut,

*In tīgēr vītāe scēlīsqūe pāvīs
 Nōn igit Māurī jādētīs nīc āpū,
 Nīc v. n. nātīs grāvīdē tīgīdīs.*

Phalæcius.

Phalæcius sive Hendecasyllabus.

Versus Phalæcius sive Hendecasyllabus constat ex spondæo, dactylo & tribus tandem Trochæis : ut,

*Hīc ē quān Hīgīs, illū quān rīgīdīs
 Tōō nātīs in orbe Mārtīdīs.*

Iambicus.

Legitimus versus Iambicus & Iōis constat Iambis : ut,

Sūīs ēt īpā Rōmā vītīdīs rīt.

Recipit tamen interdum in locis propriis pro Iambo, Tribachyn, Spondæum, Dactylum, Anapæstum ; atque in partibus Tribachyn & apud comicos spondæum.

Versus Iambicus in duo genera dividitur Dimetram & Trimeter sive Senarium.

Dimeter constat ex quatuor pedibus : ut,

O ! cārī nūm dūcēs nīcāl.

Trimeter ex senis constat pedibus : ut,

Quī nōn vītāt pūcārē, cūm pūcārē, pūcārē.

Alcaicus.

Versus Alcaicus constat ex spondæo, Iambo cum syllabâ longâ, & duobus deinde dactylis ; cui tamen tertius & quartus alius generis versus ferè semper annectitur : ut,

Ehē ! fīgacēs. Pībūm. Pībūm.

Lābūntūr amī ; hīc nīcāl pūcārē.

Rīgīs ēt īnflāntīs vītāe.

Affrīt, īndīmīnqūe pūcārē.

Recipit etiam in primo loco Iambum pro spondæo, sed rarius.

Tropi rhetorici cum affectionibus. From FARNABY.

- 1 Dat propriæ similitudinem translatâ *Metaphora* vocem.
- 2 Atque *Metonymia* impopit nova nominarebus.
- 3 Confundit totum cum parte *Synecdoche* sæpè.
- 4 Contra quàm sentis solet *Ironia* jocari.
- 5 Durior improptiæ est *Catachresis* abusus vocis.
- 6 Extenuans augensve excedit *Hyperbole* verum.
- 7 Voce tropos plures nescit *Metalepsis* in unâ.
- 8 Continquare tropos *Allegoria* adsolet usque.

Figurae rhetorices primariæ.

- 9 Concitat *Ecphepsis* & *Exclamatio* mentem.
- 10 Consulit adhibens quid agat, dicatve *Aporia*.
- 11 Est *Epanorthosis* positi correctio sensus.
- 12 *Apophepsis* sensu imperfecta relinquit.
- 13 Librat in antithetis contraria *Enantiasis*.
- 14 Scitè *Oxymoron* secum pugnantia dicit.
- 15 Anticipat quæ quis valet objecisse *Prolepsis*.
- 16 Plantè aut dissimulans permittit *Epirope* factum.
- 17 Personam inducit *Prosopopæia* loquentem.
- 18 Sermonem a præsentis avertit *Apotrophe* ritè.
- 19 { Exprimit, atque oculis quasi subijcit *Hypophysis*.
- 20 { Res, loca, personas, affectus, tempora, gestus.
- 21 { Illustrat simili jucunda *Parabola* sensum.
- 22 { Voce parùm mutata alludit significatum
- 23 { *Paronymasia* : ut *amentis* non gestus *amentis*.
- 24 Verba *Synonymia* addit rem signantis eandem.
- 25 Res specie varias *Synecdasmus* congerit unâ.
- 26 Est inimica viri *Dysonymus* abusus vivi.
- 27 Insultans hosti illucit *Sarcasmus* amare.
- 28 Querit *Erepsis* poterat quod dicere rectè.
- 29 Consultat cum aliis *Anacrusis* ubique.
- 30 Rem circum loquitur per plura *Periphrasis* unam.
- 31 Inque duas nexu *Hendyadis* rem dividit unam.
- 32 Conjunctura frequens vocum *Polyssyndeton* esto.
- 33 *Dialyton* tollit juncturam, *Afyndeton* æquè.
- 34 Casa transposito submutat *Hypallage* verba.
- 35 *Autonomasia* imponit cognomina sæpè.
- 36 Si plus quàm diciâ signet *Litæ* vocabis.
- 37 A sonitu voces *Onomatopæia* fingit.
- 38 Dat varium sensum voci *Antanaclassis* eidem.
- 39 Diversa membris frontem dat *Anaphora* eandem.
- 40 Digni præire solet postponere *Anastrophe* verba.
- 41 Arguit allatam rem contra *Isourso* pro se.
- 42 Ad summum ex imo gradibus venit *Incrementum*.
- 43 Continuis serie est repetita gradatio *Climax*.
- 44 Non dico, *Apophasis*, taceo, *mita*, est *Parabipsis*.
- 45 Vocibus exsuperat *Pleonasmus*, & *Emphasis* auget.
- 46 Membrum interjecto sermone *Parenthesis* auget.
- 47 Narratæ subit, & rei *Epihexema* probatur.

Exempla.

- 1 Læta segetes—cæptis aspirant—fulmina belli.
- 2 Frigida mori—sævit toto Mars impius orbe.
- 3 Unctæ carina natat—pueri, puer, induit vultus.
- 4 Tertius e cæno cecidit Cato—O bone custos !
- 5 Vir gregis—Ultorem promiss—pulchra minatus.
- 6 Altra ferit—plumæ levior—fugit ocyor Euro.
- 7 Hinc movet Euphrates bellum—
- 8 Claudite jam rivos pueri, sat prata biberunt.

- 9 Heu pietas ! Heu prisca fides ! O tempora !
- 10 Quid faciam ? rogem, ane rogem ? quid deinde rogabo ?
- 11 O clementia ! clementia dixi ? potius patientia mira.
- 12 Quos ego—sed præstat motos componere fluctus.
- 13 Alba lignifera cadunt, vaccinia nigra leguntur.
- 14 Concordia discors—strenua nos exerceat inertia.
- 15 Pone esse victum eum, at non tamen capitis ejus res agitur.
- 16 Quin age, & ipsa manu felices erue sylvas.
- 17 Ipsi te fontes, ipsa hæc arbuta vocabant.
- 18 Quid non sentit amor ? primi sensitis amantes.
- 19 { Videre magnos jam videor duces
- 20 { Non indecoro pulvere foedidos.
- 20 Tu fugis hanc, acres ut pavet agna lupos.

- 21 Romanæ spatium est urbis & orbis idem.

- 22 Abiit, evasit, erupit—superatne & vesticur ausus ?
- 23 Grammaticus, rhetor, geometres, pictor, aliptea.
- 24 Inter strepis anser olores.
- 25 Satia te sanguine, Cyre.
- 26 Creditis avestos hostes ? Sic notus Ulysses ?
- 27 Si tua res esset, quid jam rationis inires ?
- 28 Trojani belli scriptor—Chironis alumnus.
- 29 In prædant partemque—pateris libamus & auro.
- 30 Fatâque, fortunâque virum, morésque, manûsque.
- 31 Ite, ferte citi flammæ, date vela, impellite remos.
- 31 Date classibus Austros.
- 33 Æacides, Irus, Pænus, Cytherea, Poëta.
- 34 Non sordidus auctor naturæ verique.
- 35 Bambalio, clangor, stridor, murmurque, sonôrque.
- 36 Sustulit hic matrem, sustulit ille patrem.
- 37 Sic oculos, sic ille manus, sic ora ferebat.
- 38 Italiam contra—maria omnia circum.
- 39 Immo equidem : neque enim, si occidissem, sepelissem.
- 40 Facinus est vincire civem ; scelus verberare ; parricidium necare.
- 41 { Quod libet, id licet his ; at quod licet id satis audent ;
- 41 { Quodque audent faciunt ; faciunt quodcumque molestum est.
- 43 Hic oculis vidi—Hyrtacides sic ore locutus.
- 44 Credo equidem (nec vana fides) genus esse deorum.
- 45 Tunc molis erat Romanam condere gentem.

The other Figures, or rather Turns of speech more especially worth notice are reducible to Anaphora ; which is only an artful repetition *under different names* of the same word or words in the beginning, middle or end of sentences, either to introduce a new thought, excite the affections, or render the cadence more harmonious—A specimen of which with their respective names here follows.

Ploce	In hac victoriâ Cæsar erat Cæsar.
Epistrophe	Nascimur dolore, degimus vitam dolore, finimus dolore.
Epizeuxis	Ah Corydon, Corydon—me, me—bella, horrida bella.
Epanalepsis	Pauper amet cautè ; timeat maledicere pauper.
Anadiplosis	Vos hæc facietis maxima Gallo, Gallo cujus amor, &c.
Symploce	{ Quàm benè, Caune, tuo poteram nurus esse parenti ? Quàm benè, Caune, meo poteras gener esse parenti ?
Epanodos	{ Crudelis tu quoque mater ; crudelis mater magis an puer improbus ille ? Improbus ille puer, crudelis tu quoque mater.

Of Rhetorical Tropes, from Mr BLACKWALL.

When a man says one thing, and means another like to it, it is a *Metaphor*: when he says one thing, and means another mutually depending, it is a *Metonymy*: when he says one thing and means another almost the same it is a *Synecdoche*: when he says one thing and means another quite contrary, it is an *Irony*.—A *Metaphor* continued and often repeated becomes an *Allegory*: a *Metaphor* carried to a great degree of boldness is an *Hyperbole*; and when at first sound it seems a little harsh and may be imagined to carry some impropriety in it, it is a *Catachresis*.

Examples.

Metaphor. { Duo fulminis belli.
Rider ager—Primo aspirat fortuna labori.
Twentieth venias portus & ara tuis,

Metonymy. { Maturis metuendus Jupiter uvis.
Sævit toto Mars impius orbe.
Sic nos in scēptis reponis?

Synecdoche. { Potes hoc sub casu ducere somnos?
Hospis habet muros.
Uncta carina natat.

Irony. { Tertius è cælo cecidit Cato.
I nunc, ingratis offer te, irrita, periculis.
Salve, bone vir, cussisti probè.

Allegory. Sine Cerere & Baccho friget Venus.

Hyperbole. Fugit ocyor Euro.

Catachresis. Vir gregis ipse caper decerraverat.

The following six points as they are called, by that great master of instruction *Roger Ascham*, being what children should be early made acquainted with, I have therefore transcribed them for their observation.

Proprium Rex sepultus est magnificè.

Translatum { Cum illo principe
Sepulta est & gloria
Et salus reipublicæ.

Synonyma. { Ensis, gladius.
Laudare, prædicare,

Diversa.

Diversa.	{ <i>Diligere, amare.</i> <i>Cedere, evadescere.</i> <i>Inimicus, hostis.</i>
Contraria.	{ <i>Acerbum & luctuosum bellum.</i> <i>Dulcis & laeta pax.</i>
Phrases.	{ <i>Dare verba,</i> <i>Abjicere obedientiam.</i>

As every thing in speaking or writing may be rang'd under *nimium*, *parum*, the learner should be taught in the course of his studies carefully to distinguish

	between	
Sublime & tumidum.	} So {	Humile & depressum.
Grande & immodicum.		Lenè & remissum.
Decorum & ineptum.		Siccum & aridum.
Perfectum & nimium.		Exile & macrum.
		Inaffectatum & neglectum.

And as to the various styles of authors they may be easily known by this division—

In genus.	{ Poëticum.
	{ Historicum.
	{ Philosophicum.
	{ Oratorium.

N. B. The following plain verses will be of singular use for the understanding an author, and therefore should by every learner be constantly and carefully attended to.

Quis, cui, causa, locus, quo tempore, prima, sequela, i. e.

Who speaks or what is spoken—to whom he speaks—upon what occasion or to what end—where he spoke—at what time it was—what preceded in the sentences before—what follows next after.

Quis, quid, ubi, quibus auxiliis, cur, quomodo, quando. Who is the author of the action; what the action is; where it was done; by what means, for what end, how; and when.

FINIS.

*Regule de generibus nominum tum ad significationem,
tum ad terminationem spectantes: Ad exemplar
Voffii, Nouvelle Methode, aliorumque composita.*

R E G U L A I.

*Quæ Mas exprimitur, vel Femina, vox genus id fert:
Vox utrumque notans Sexum communis habetur.*

*Notandum est, multa nomina esse, quæ solâ significatione
communia sunt, non autem constructione: Ut,*

	<i>Masc.</i>		<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>
Advena	Fur	Obses	Proles	Animal
Agricola	Homicida	Opifex	Soboles, &c.	Mancipium, &c.
Alienigena	Index	Pedes		
Affecta	Indigena	Perfa		
Auceps	Hospes	Pincerna		
Auriga	Interpres	Præses		
Camelus	Laniata	Præsul		
Cocles	Lixa	Pugil		
Eques	Latro	Rabula		
Exul	Nepos	Senex, &c.		

*Sed vere communia & quæ, veterum exemplo, adjectiva fami-
nino junguntur, sunt Hæc:*

Conjux atque parens, infans, patruelis, & hæres,
Affinis, vindex, judex, dux, miles & hostis,
Augur & antistes, vates, conviva, sacerdos,
Municipique addas adolescens, civis, & auctor,
Custos, nemo, comes, testis, sus, boscque canisque:
His quidam jungunt præses, index, martyr & obses.
Sic homo, sic princeps, juvenisque, clientisque, satellites.

R E G. II.

*Omne genus nomen sibi vindicat adjectivum:
Sed juxta varios fines genus id variatur.*

R E G. III.

^c *Infra se positis legem dat vox generalis.*

^a *Sæpe etiam fini concedit significatus.*

^c *In Eunuchum suam Ter. subaudi tabulam. Centauro in magnâ Virg. subaudi nave.*

Hæc Syllepsis frequenter obtinet in nominibus urbium :

<i>Ur,</i>	<i>Præneste sub ipsâ.</i>	<i>Virg.</i>
	<i>Gelidâ Præneste.</i>	<i>Juv.</i>
	<i>Pulcherrima Narbo.</i>	<i>Mart.</i>
	<i>Pittheia Træzen.</i>	<i>Ov.^d</i>
	<i>Venusia Sirmio.</i>	<i>Catull.</i>
	<i>Lapidosa Trachyn.</i>	<i>Sen.</i>
	<i>Dorica Ancon.</i>	<i>Juv.</i>
	<i>Regia Pleuron..</i>	<i>Sil.</i>
	<i>Alta Croton.</i>	<i>Sil.</i>

Nomina urbium in us-æuentia sæpius in feminino usurpantur ; Iuniam nihil terminatio refragatur & significatio facit. Quæ verò ni us (untis) exeunt & græcè ex eue in ut contraria potius sunt masc. Ut, Pessinus-untis, Daphnus, A-

mathus, Opas, Hydrus, Phlius Ovidius tamen dicit Gravidamque Amathunta metallis, Ov.

Illos et Sagantos semper fem. Interdum Nomen Proprium ad generalem vocem Oppidum refertur & proinde neutrum ; ut Obules apud Plin. Ind vox Hippo omnium generum esse dicitur.

In fabulis autem historicis ex titulo, quem præ se fert fabula, genus sæpe designatur : Ut

—Nec dum finitus Orestes, Juv.

^d *Operæ, custodiæ, vigiliæ, excubiz, licet viros significant, in muliebri semper usurpantur ; & Scotum, mancipium, prostibulum semper in neutro : Proprie enim actionem denotabant & per metonymiam effecti de hominibus ipsis dicebantur.*

R E G. IV.

Uncia si demas, mas est As & sua turba :

Causa hujus regula a voce generali potenda est, quia partes Altit pro nummi speciebus habentur, adrius in iis respicitur Nummus a uipot lex. Uncia verò mansit femininum, quia dicitur ab una (sub. parte) quasi unice.

As continet 12 uncias.

Decunx-11. quia duæ uncia.

Decunx-10. quasi decem uncia ; vel dextans, quia duæ sextans,

Dodrans-9. quia duæ quadrans.

Ses vel bellus-8. pro Des, tise affi.

Varrone, quia duæ triens ; vel Des ex duæ quia continet duos trientes, ut bellum ex duellum.

Septunx-7. quasi septem uncia.

Semissis-6. quasi semis affi ; semis verò, non quasi semiat, ut Varro, sed duplex dimidium.

Quincunx-5. quasi quinque uncia.

Triens-4. quasi tertia pars affi.

Quadrans-3. quasi quarta pars affi.

Sextans-2. quasi sexta pars affi.

R E G. V.

Vox Ventis Fluvii et Montis ferè propria mas est.

In nominibus ventorum respicitur sed tantum procellam seu turbinem. Ventus. Nec contra facit quod Læ- Quod ad nomina fluviorum & laps femininum sit; non enim propriè montium attinet, regula non est ge- ventum aliquem peculiarem signat, neralis.

Nomina Fluviorum.

Albula, Allia, Arethusa, Matro- cheronti aliquid fieri (i e.) apud In- na, Luppia, Sequana, Vistula fe- feros.

minina sunt. Sic Druentia, Garum- Jader neutrum est; ut Tepidum na, Mosella, et alia Ausonio. Qua- Jader Luc. re in prosâ (inquit Vossius) vix ausim dicere Celebrandus Mosella. Nec aliter hæc in carmine excusantur, quam quia per Syllepsin respicitur generale nomen Amnis.

Acheron & Acherons ontis dubium est secundum Nonium. Nempe quia Maro dixit Acheronte refuso & Plautus Nulla Acherons sed quando in muliebri usurpantur non fluvius intelligitur, sed locus; qui quasi regio habetur. Unde apud Plautum legitur Acheronte vel A-

cheronti aliquid fieri (i e.) apud In- feros.

Nar neutrum apud Ciceronem, cum dicit Lacus Velinus in Nar defluit, masculinum apud Tacitum & Claudianum, quia respicitur vox Amnis.

Styx fem. per regulam termina- tionis.

Xanthus semper masc. cum pro fluvio Lyciæ sumitur; sed in Virgilio loco, ubi fem. jungitur adjectivo, pro Urbe ejus nominis accipiendum censet Vossius.

Nomina Montium.

Sequuntur etiam illa plerumque re- gulam terminationis; nam si Ossa Ovidio masc. est, Lucano tamen fem.; & h Ceta apud Sen. in masculino legitur, Ovidio tamen & Clau- dianus fem. est; sed et utrumque Sta- tius in feminino usurpat.

Othrys quoque, quo Ovidius,

Lucanus & Statius in masculino utun- tur, Græcis femininum est.

Ætna semper fem. est.

Ida quoque apud Virgilium: Quin et reliqua etiam ejus sunt generis, cu- jus sunt similiter terminantia. Peli- on tamen apud Ovid. et in masculino et neutro occurrit.

R E G. VI.

Insula, item Navis, Regio, Urbs muliebria sunt. At Pontus regio mas est, atque insula Sason.

R E G. VII.

*Hæc Arbos, mas Ster, Spinus, Dumus; dubiūmque
Est Rubus: hoc um: Robur, Acer, Subérque Silérque.*

Multa arborum nomina Græcis masculina sunt, quos paucis in nominibus Latini imitati, vel ad terminationem respicientes quædam masculini generis fecerunt. Sic Cupressus Ennio virile est, Platanus Plinio, Lotus Mart. & Catullus dixit Ulmus maritos.

Larix utriusque generis est.

Libani nomen videntur veteres Latini ignorasse. Virgilius appellat Thuream virgam Plin. Thuriferam arborem Pindarus & Eurip. usurpant in feminino: At sapius in masc. invenitur.

Thus non pro arbore legitur, sed ubi Plinius dicit Thuris arbor idem esse inquit Vossius, ac si dixisset Arbor thurifera. Et quamvis aliter esset, cujus generis sit Thus pro arbore ex veteribus doceri nequit. Quare finis causâ a Grammaticis inter neutra reponitur.

Spinus masculinum est Prisciano & Servio apud Virg. Prunorum arbor spinus vocatur (inquit) generis masculini. Despaunterio item virile, quem nos secuti sumus.

Rubus Sen. Colum. Prud. femininum, aliis potius masculinum.

Suber quod Despaunterius dubium facit, tantum neutrum est.

Oleaster masc. Oleaster plurimus. Oleaster sacer Virgilius. Et iste locus in Cicerone, ubi dicitur Oleastro quâdam depravatus creditur.

Quæ in-tum exeunt significant locum arboribus consitum: Ut Salic-tum, quercetum. Quæ verò in-um usitatus lignum notant: Ut Ebenum, cinnamomum, buxum. Interdum ipsam arborem: Ut

Nec densum foliis Buxum, Ovid.

R E G. VIII.

Plurale A neutrum est, I mas, muliebria sunt Æ.

R E G. IX.

Nomina Græca genus stirpis plerumque sequuntur.

R E G. X.

Non variata putes neutra, & pro nomine pōsta.

Pondo in utroque numero indeclabile est. Cum Libram significat t. m. in singulari, tum in plurali nu-

mero sumitur: Ut Pondo unum. Centum pondo. At cum pro Pondere accipitur tantum singulare est,

¶ *Libra, dodrans, uncia vel simile plerumque additur: Ut Corona aurea libra-pondo. Cum dodrante-pondo mellis.*

Dicitur hæc Gummis, hæc sinapis, quæ declinantur & genus terminationis sequuntur.

A Melos videtur descendere mel in oblativo: Ut, Fitque percussio dulcior auro melo:

In carmine de resurrectione, quod Lactantio attribuitur. Sed olim dicebatur Melus; unde acc. melum Pacuvio, teste Nonio, Sic et oblationis Chao occurrit apud Virg. Ov. Lactantium. plur. mele Lucro. Quicquid loco nominis ponitur neutrum est & indeclinabile: Ut, Triste vale — Scire tuum — Velle tuum.

REG. XI.

Nomina in A vel in E prima muliebria; ternæ Neutra. Planeta, Cometa hic: Pascha sed hoc dat. Adria, Mandragora hic, Pandectæ, et Echinometra.

Pascha neutrum & declinatur vel per a-æ vel a-atis: Sed posterior modus usitator.

Adria pro Sinu maris masc. pro Urbe fem. in priori enim loco respicitur fluvius, in posteriori urbs.

Manna Hebræis masc. Græcis & Latinis neutrius; et indeclinabile est, quum significat idem quod in sacris literis: Pro Micis autem thuris concussu elisis (Teste Plin.) declinatur Manna-æ.

Planeta. Cometa masc. quia Græcis virilia sunt in-rum, ideoque

indifferenter utimur Cometa & cometes: Sed plurimum a Græcis derivata mutata terminatione genus quoque mutant: Ut Charta, margarita, metretæ, cochlea, &c. Et forsitan ideo Planeta & cometa genus suæ originis reservant quia plerumque vocem generalem æque respiciunt. Quanquam Tac. addidit substantivum diversi generis ut,

Inter quæ & fides Cometæ effulsit.

Nomina in I neutra sunt per 3am regulam atque indeclinabilia.

REG. XII.

Nomen in O mas: Harpago et hic dat: at hæc Caro, Grando, Cætera & in Do, Go, quæ tertia syllaba surgit; Et verbale in IO. Mas Pugio, mas numerale.

Eccho fem. ex regulâ significatio.

Arrhabo Varroni fem. At Plantus & Cellius, Græcos secuti, in masculino usurpant.

Cupido pro cupiditate in masculino reperitur apud Poetas, præcipue Horatium. Sed in feminino longe est usitatus; nec aliter nisi Oratores.

Margo Juvenali tantum fem.
aliis semper masculinum.

Perduellio Vosso fem. quum
signat actionem rebellionis, quum
personam non item.

Talio Tertulliano masc. sed
Gellius esse femininum ostendit, ejus-
que potior autoritas.

Unedo masc. quod inter nume-
ralia referri possit.

R E G. XIII.

Neutrum M. C. L. T. dubium Sal; Sólque Virile.
Et quot in On per i flexa legas neutralia sunt.

Nomina in -um, quæ hominum
ac mulierum propria sunt, ad regu-
lam generalem spectant.

Nomina etiam in-on interdum vo-
cem generalem respiciunt; immo ver-
barum nomina ita desinentium, vide-
tur Plinius sæpius in feminino usur-
passe.

On tertiæ ad regulam sequen-
tem pertinet.

Sal æstatiûs masculinum, inter-
dum neutrum; sed tantum in singula-
ri, idque pro Condimento vel mari.

Sil, neutrum sive pro Materiâ,
quâ pictores utuntur, sive pro Herbâ
accipitur.

R E G. XIV.

Nomen in N mas est: Sed Sindon hæc dat & Icon;
Hoc men poscit; & hæc tria Gluten & Unguen & Inguen.

Flamen, nomen sacerdotale, mas-
culinum per regulam significatio-
nis.

Hymen similiter masc. vel quia
proprie Deum nuptiarum denotat,
vel quia Græcis est masc.

Icon Græcum est & semper
fem.

Python pro serpente ab Apolline
interfectâ tantum masculinum: Ut
Ceruleus tali prostratus Apolline

Python. Et cum dicit Tibull.
Delos ubi nunc, Phæbe, tua est?
Ubi Delphica Python? Python
non serpentis nomen est, neque in-
telligitur Pythonissa, sed nomen
urbis est. Delphi enim, teste Eu-
statbio, prius Pytho vel Pythona
vocabatur Pythona, a Pythone in-
terempto. Alcyon & Aedon in
Epicæ.

R E G. XV.

Nomen in Ar vel in Ur neutrum est; unum excipe Furfur.
Candidus Anxur Mart.

Jubar olim masculinum erat,
unde Ennis Albus jubar pro luna

Postiores vero Hor. Ov. Statius
neutrum prætulere.

Bacchar

Bacchar semper neutram, sed
dicitur etiam Baccharis in fem.

Guttur olim masculinum, unde
gutturum non semel dixit Plautus.

Murmur quoque Varro in masc.
teste Nonio, cujus est Verus mur-
mur.

Turtur Vultur Salar in Epican.

R E G. XVI.

Er mas: Linter at hæc dat: Spinter, Vérque, Cadaver,
Uber, Iter, fructus, plantarum nomina dant hoc.

Hic, hæc, hoc Tuber pro fructibus, arbore, fungo.

Existimarunt, nonnulli Tuber
pro fructu arboris femininum esse;
quia Martialis est Vernæ Tuberes
—At vernæ non est adjectivum pro
in verno tempore nascentes, sed
substantivum & significat vernacu-
li sive domi nati. Eodem item
modo idem Mart. dixit Verna liber-
vernas equites.

Cucumer antiquis ignotum
pro quo usi sunt cucumis-eris.

Verber obsolevit & in singu-
lari in usu tantum sunt verberis,
verberare; at neutrum esse ostendit
pluralis verbera.

Linter semper in feminino legitur,
præterquam uno hoc Tibulli loco.
Exiguus pullâ per vada linter aquâ.
Quo in loco exiguus prætulit tum me-
tri, tum Euphoniæ gratiâ.

Laver Plinio fem. Laver cocta
sup. herba. Ejusdem quoque est;
tres fîscres. Sed ibi cujus generis sit
incertum est. Papaver, olim masc.
Varr. apud Nonium. Item Plaut.
neutrum verò usitatus.

Hir & Abaddir neutra sunt ex
regulâ indeclinabili. Reliqua, ut;
Vir, Levir masc. per regulam ge-
neralem.

R E G. XVII.

Or mas: Hæc Arbor: Cor, Æquor, Marmor, Adorque
hoc.

Verbalia in-Or prius fuere generis
communis, unde remansit nomen Uxor:
Sic & apud Ulpianum legas Mulier
defensor. Et hinc est quod adhuc re-
porias adjectiva quadam verbalia in
Or communis generis: ut, Decolor
extremo quæ cingitur India Gange.
Virg. Imo Ovidius ipse de Venere ait
Sponsor conjugii stat Dea picta sui.
Quamquam & hic Appositioni locus.

Quadam in Or executia erant

olim neutra, unde apud Plaut. Nec
Calor nec frigus metuo: Quædam
etiam terminatione mutatâ genus re-
tinuere: Ut, pro eo quod olim Jecinor
dicebatur, postea jecor nunc jecur
obtinet.

Comparativa in Or juxta Pris-
cianum erat omnis generis: Ut Bel-
lum Punicum posterior Cass. Hem.
apud eundem; Sic Decor Ausonio pro
decus.

R E G. XVIII.

As primæ hic, ternæ hæc : Hoc vas : As-antis at hic dat.

As-affis cum omnibus quæ par-
tem ejus significant masc. sunt per regu-
lam quartam.

Adamas in utroque genere usur-
gat Plin.

Mas raris masc. per regulam
primam. Similiter Vas, vadis nam,

et si de feminâ dicatur, non tamen
adjectivum femininum admittit.

Artocreas & Erysipelas neut.
quia genus suæ originis retinent. Illud
est apud Persum, hoc apud Celsum.
Etiam Buceras herba neutrum est
Plinid.

R E G. XIX.

F minus Es ; dubiumque dies : Æs æris at hoc dat.
Hic Poples, Limes, Stipes, Fomes, Parietique,
Pes, Palmes, Trames, Termes, cum Gurgite Cespes :
Græcæque seu primæ fuerint, seu nomina ternæ.

Græca scilicet quæ efferruntur per
ut masculina ; ut Lebes, tapes, for-
tes : Quæ verò efferruntur per ea neu-
tra sunt ; ut Hoc Nepenthes is, Hip-
pomanes, Cacoëthes, Trichomanes,
Sesamoid e, Panaces.

Acinaces masc. quia respicitur
ensis.

Aromatites pro lapide pretioso
Plinio fem. est ; sed videtur respex-
isse ad gemmam, ob quam etiam cau-
sam alia lapidum nomina in feminino
usurpavit.

Merges utrum virile sit, an
femininum quaeritur ; virilo facit
ablativus. Priscianus autem a fe-
mininis non excipit. Imo apud Plin-
ium legas Inter duas mergites
spica distringitur : Ubi merges non
est manipulus spicarum, sed ferra-
mentum, quo fruges detinebant.
Alii locum esse corruptum contendunt
& legi debere iterum e defectâ
mergite. Utcunque ergo sit vulga-
rem opinionem secuti nos femininum
relinquimus.

Propes, suppes, masc. ut pes,

et pedes idem quod pediculi turis in
masc. ponas.

Verres & Aries ad regulam
generalem pertinent.

Alii addunt Ames, tudes, trudes ;
sed in istis veterum auctoritas non est,
quare adjectivo neut. abstinendum cen-
set Vossius.

Vepres in nom. non legitur, sed
Vepris ; quare sequenti regulæ reje-
cimus.

Dies inquit Asconius, in f. m.
signat tempus ; ideo diminutivum,
Diecula, dicitur breve tempus &
mora ; sed dies 12 Horarum mascu-
linum : Unde hodie dicimus, quasi
hoc die. Hoc autem discrimini sæ-
pius negligitur : Jam dies in-
sanda aderat Virg. Nomina se
facturum quâ ego vellem die Cic.
eâdem die germinat, quâ injectum
est Plin. In plurali verò potius
masc. quamquam et Ciceronis est. O !
reliquas omnes dies noctesque eas.
quibus, &c. si locus iste sanus sit.

Meridies semper masc.

R E G.

R E G. XX.

*Femineum is: sed nis mas est: junge Orbis & Axis,
Callis, Caulis, Follis, Collis, Mensis & Entis,
Cassis, Fascis, Torris, Sentis, Piscis & Unguis;
sic Fustis, Sanguis, Pollis, Vepris, Cucumisque;
Junge Lapis, Pulvis; sic Vectis, Postis, Aqualis.
His Collis jungas, jungas Antes et Echinëis.*

Antes ab antiq. Nom. antis	in aqualis.
<i>semper masc.</i>	Vomis, idem est quod Vomer;
Mugilis, Anguis, Cenchris,	quod masc. est per Reg. 14.
Delphis, Glis, Vermis vide in vo-	Semissis, Centassis, &c. mascu-
gula de Epicenis.	lina sunt per Reg. 4.
Natalis, Annalis, Bipennis,	Nomina in yz Græca sunt &
Jugalis, Majalis, Molaris & p.	sem. ut hæc Chelys, hæc Chlamys;
milia naturæ sūt adjectiva sunt	et quia pronunciantur ut prædicta in
& respiciunt vocem generalem.	in ad hanc Reg. referri possunt.
Videtur quoque Urceum subintelligi	

R E G. XXI.

Sunt dubia hæc, Finis, Torquis, Clunisque, Scrobisque.

Catalogus nominum in is,

Amnis olim femininum fuit;	genere revocare sunt conati Calvus
Neque ulla mihi obisset amnis	& Casar, ut cognoscimus ex Catalio
Plaut. & Varro: ubi confluxit al-	& Nonio.
tera amnis. Nunc solum masc. uti	Clunis ejus generis nec veteres
reliqua omnia in Nis.	ipsi satis consenserunt. Sospater &
Callis Livio femininum est; Per	Priscianus dubium faciunt. Festus
devias callis. Sic, Nonius addit,	& Verrius Flaccus tantum mascu-
frequenter eundem loqui.	linum esse contendunt; & Servius
Canalis in masc. reperitur, teste	Horatium male usum fuisse in femi-
Nonio. Sed potius est femininum,	nino contendit: Modestus Acron,
teste Servio, in feminino usus est	qui ad illud Horatii, Quod pulchra
Varro.	clunas: Clunes, inquit dixit, ge-
Cassus pro reti in singulari haud	nere feminino; sed juvenalis, hic
temere invenias: Casses in plurali	cluna; quod tenemus. Nonius nunc
passim & semper masc.	masc. nunc fem. esse probat, Horatii
Ciris olim muliebre erat; sic	& Plauti locis.
usus Lucretius & Catullus: coque	Corbis masc. facit Priscianus
E 4	et Hirtius; sed Japinus femininum
	est.

est. Unde Caper, hæc corbes, non hi dicere jubet. Messoriâ se corbe contextit Cic.

Crinis virile Maroni & aliis; olim verò Muliebre, quomodo usus sunt Plautus et Atta.

Finis olim dubium, teste Prisciano & Nonio; in fem. usurpatur a Marone; & Ciceronis est, Quæ finis funestæ familiæ? Imò ita usi sunt Liv. & Gell. quibusdam autem insolens iste modus videtur dicendi.

Funis videtur Lucretio fuisse femininum, propter illud, Aurea de cælo demisit funis in arva. Quidam autem censent Lucret. scripsisse Aureu' de cælo, &c. Quintilianus dicit, certò constare de masculino, quia funiculus dicatur.

Lapis Ennius in fem. posuit, more forsan græco; ut ο πας & λιδος.

Natalis semper masculinum, etsi dies dubium.

Pollis vix occurrit, præterquam in veteribus Glossis. Quare genus incertum est. Caesar & Probus declinant Pollen-inis, in neutro. Charisius dixit hæc Pollis, teste Prisciano, nunc verò articulus apud eum non occurrit. Phocas censet esse masc. quemadmodum etiam Vossius, Despauteus, Verpeus: Et ut prius dixere Sanguen-inis, & per Syncopen Sanguis; ita videtur olim dictum Pollen-inis & inde Pollis: In nominativo vix occurrit. præterquam apud Grammaticos: At Pollinem apud Catonem & Plinium; unde satis constat non semper legi in neutro.

Pulvis masculino longè usitatus, Ennio autem & Propertio Femininum.

Retis olim in masculino legebatur; quod probat Charisius, quia ab eo fit reticulus: Imò et accusativus retem usurpatur a Plauto apud Prisc.

Scrobis quod in recto agnoscit Capella & Columella dubium erat,

ut Scrobs. Phocas dicit, hæc Scrobis, & Probus hic Scrobis, Plautus ait, sexagenos Scrobes, quomodo & Cicero locutus est, ut auctor est Servius; addens, minorem esse auctoritatem Lucani & Græcchi, qui in feminino usi sunt. Ovidius tamen & Plin. in feminino etiam utuntur & Columella in utroque genere.

Scobs vel Scobis juxta Prisc. & Phoc. semper fem. quo genere Plin. & Columella usi sunt. Errat ergo Calepinus masc. faciens.

Semis aliud est a Semissis, Non enim est quasi Semias, ut Varro ait; sed contractum ex quatuor ut Festus monet; quia generatim convenit cuiusque rei dimidio. Semis ergò non pertinet ad reg. generalem, sed ad reg. terminationis; estque vel indeclinabile, adeoque neutrum; ut unum semis, vel casus accipit a semissis & per consequens masculinum est.

Sentis quod in singulari usurpat Columella, semper masculinum est, teste Phoca. Virgilius dixit, Densi sentes, & Columella pariter. Peccant ergò qui in fem. usi sunt.

Torquis vel torques masculinum facit Priscianus; sed dubium esse ostendit Nonius. Virile quidem illo Ciceronis-Ti. Manlius, qui Galli torque detracto nomen invenerat, Eo genere usi Ov. Statius & Plin; sed Propertius dicit, Torquis unca, & Varro, Torques aureæ.

Vepris in Nom. obsolevit. Unde alii credunt olim dictum fuisse in recto vepres, alii veper: sed si esset a vepres, crescere debuit ex terminationis Analogiâ, utique si esset a veper. Quare relinquimus nominibus in is. Occurrit in Accusativo apud Col. qui masc. facit, & Maronis est-Sparsi vepres. Lucretius autem dixit, vepres auctas; sed is loquendi modus a Capro improbat. Charisius item & Diomedes.

modet referant vepres inter masculino Pluralia.

Vomis, idem est ac vomer & proinde masc. per Reg. 16.

R E G. XXII.

Os mas. Hæc cos, dos : Epos hoc : & Os offis & oris.

Nomina in Os, quæ usitatus per Or offeruntur, ejusdem sunt generis ac illa in Or Honos, arbos.

Græca in Os desinentia usitatus feminina sunt. Nam etsi plurimum Os mutant in us & Or, interdum tamen Os retinent ; ut Arctos, Diametros ; quomodo Vitruvius, Columella & Macrobius vocem hanc asserre maluerunt, quam Diameter,

vel Diameter ; quomodo vulgò effertur. Acaros masc. et fem. Plinium facit, ut et amaracus.

Eos fem. sive pro Deâ, sive pro die sumatur.

Epos & similia neutra sunt, ut apud Græcos.

Exos compos, impos, adjectiva sunt, & ad hanc regulam nos spectant.

R E G. XXIII.

Sæpius us quartæ mas est ; mas usque secundæ :

Feminæ potius Græcum est ; ut et ista Latinis,

Vannus, Humus, Colus, atque Domus, cum Porticus, Idus, Carbasus, Alvus, Acus, Ficus, Tribus, adde Manusque. Dant hic & hæc Grossius, Specus & Penus atque Phaselus : Hoc Virus, Pelagus : neutrum modò, mas modò Vulgus.

Latina nomina in us.

Acus pro pisce masc. 2æ Dec. pro instrumento fem. 4æ Dec. pro paleâ plurimùm neut. 3æ Aliquando tamen fem. 4æ Dec.

Alvus usurpat Accius in masc. Item Cinna, Cato et Columella. Alii verò omnes, iique optimi, in muliebri utuntur ; eisque imitandum nobis, etsi Erasmus in masc. non reprehendit.

Carbasus masc. esse negat Cæper. In feminino sanè usitatum est ; sunt autem qui masc. esse contendunt, nec a masc. Phœcis & Probus excipiunt. Quæ apud Val. Max.

legere est, Ca basum, quem optimum habuit. Sed Steptanus Iugbius aliorum secutus exemplarium fidem, optimam quam potius a iudit.

Colus fem. potius, at Catulla, masc.

Crocus in muliebri usus Apuleius ; Reperitur crocum rubentem apud Virg. Crocos tenues Ov. Spirantes Juv. sed num virile sit, an muliebri dejudicari nequis : omnino autem tutius crocum in neutro usurpatur juxta Diomedem & Servium.

Faselus vel **Phaselus**, pro navigii genere *Catullo*, *Colum.* *Cic.* aliisque virile est, teste *Nonio* At *Ovidio* fem. item *Statius* & *Mart.* Sed pro legumine viz extra masculinum invenies.

Ficus valde dubium est, tum quoad genus, tum quoad declinationem. *Varro* vult dici hi & hae fici in plurali; & non ficus, ut *Gradius*: eiqus duo genera eodem sensu, unamque inflexionem ei tribuit. *Sanctus*, sive pro arbore, aut fructu, sive pro morbo accipias, femininum videtur, & utriusque inflexionis. *Scioppius* pro significatione distinguit & masc. vult esse, cum arborem significat, fem. pro fructu, aut morbo. Nam morbus a similitudine fructus nomen invenit. Despauteius vult esse tantum masculinum & 2da inflexionis pro morbo & utriusque generis pro fructu; ita tamen ut in masc. sit 2da in fem. 4ta.

Vossius pro vitio corporis vult in masc. usurpari, pro fructu in feminino; idque tum in 2di tum 4ta Dec. Alii denique volunt pro morbo masc. esse & secunda; & pro arbore, vel fructu fem. & secunda & quarta; ut *Ramus*, *Alvarez* & *Vossius* in parva grammatica. Quam sententiam, ut maxime probabilem, sequendam ducimus testimoniis sequentibus nixi.

Fici quarum radices longissimae, *Plin* Uxorem suam suspendisse de ficu. *Cic* Fici semen naturale intus est in ea fico quam edimus. *Varr.*

Dicemus ficus, quas scimus in arbore nasci,

Dicemus ficos, *Casiliense*, tuos. **Fimus** masc. passim; *Apuleio* tamen fem. est.

Grossus *Casso* masc. at *Plinio* femininum.

Intubus a Grammaticis inter dubia refertur; sed apud *Classicos* nunquam legitur nisi in virili genere.

Pampinus inter dubia reputant *Varro*, *Servius*, *Probus*, *Casper*; *Claudianus* etiam in feminino usurpat: At haud temere aliter invenias quam in masc. apud meliores scriptores & *Augusti* aevi propiores.

Quinquatrus vel **quinquatrus** semper fem. est.

Socrus pro **Socer**, virile ex canone generali. *Naevium* sic loqui *Nonius* docet: Nempe utriusque erat generis, ut *Nepos*.

Sexus olim neutrum erat; ut scribit *Priscianus* & probat istuc *Plauti*, Virile sexus nunquam ullum habui. Ubi alii legunt secus, nam olim dicebatur secus pro sexus: & haec vox reperitur apud *Salustium*, teste *Norio*, & apud *Ausonium*, teste *Scaligero*. Imò, *Liberrorum* capitum virile secus ad decem millia capta apud *Livium* legitur, juxta editionem *Variorum*.

Specus & **Penus**, sunt omnium generum, nos tantum masc. & fem. in regulam notavimus, quia cum neutrum est refertur ad regulam sequentem, qua comprehenduntur nomina tertiae in us **Penus** autem videtur genus cum declinatione variare, sic hic penus-i, haec penus-ûs, hoc penus-oris.

Mu t.

Græca Nomina in Us.

Nomina fruticum & herbarum.

Biblus vel **Byblus**, semper muliebre; sive sumatur propriè pro papyri frutice, sive pro philuris in quibus olim scribebatur.

Cytisus & **Græcis** & **Latinis** virile est; **Colum.** autem femininum facit.

Costus **Græcis** masculinum, **Latinis** semper fem.

Halus fem.

Hyacinthus **Græcis** est com.

sed sæpius muliebre. *Virg.* tamen ait, **Ferrugineos Hyacinthos**, ac similiter **Latinorum** alii.

Hyssopus fem. sed dicitur hoc **Hyssopum**; ut et **Græcis** — *ῥοσῶτον* — ac simile est hæc **nardus**, hoc **nardum**.

Papyrus autem & **Papyrus** dixerit, sed prius **Græcis** dubium, **Lat.** fem.

Nomina Gemmarum.

Beryllus masc. **Berylli** rarò alibi reperti. **Plin.** fem. passim.

Chrysolythus fem. **Plinio.** **Chrysolithon** duodecim pondo a se visam. **Prudentius** autem in masc. usurpat.

Chrysoprasus fem. **Chrysoprasus** porri succum & ipsa refert **Plin.**

Chrystallus **Latinis** semper fem. **Græcis** verò pro glacie est masc.

Opalus masc. **Veri opali** fulgor **Plin.**

Sapphyrus fem. **Cæruleæ Sapphyri.** **Plin.**

Smaragdus in utroque genere utitur **Plin.** **Masculinum** tamen **Vossio** potius videtur.

Topazius potius muliebre; **Color** fumidæ **Topasii.** **Plin.**

Videtur autem ex eo hæc generis diversitas esse, quod **Græci** respiciunt idem, quod pro lapide pretioso sæpius fem. quandoque autem masculinum; **Latini** verò nunc lapis respiciunt, nunc gemma.

Alia græca nomina in Us.

Antidotus fem. hujus regis **Antidotus** celebratissima quæ **Mithridatis** vocatur.

Atomus **Ciceroni** fem. sed **Seneca** & **Lactantius** masculinum faciunt.

Balanus **Græcis** fem. atque ita usus **Forvius.** **Plinio** tamen masculinum, nisi is locus corruptus sit

Barbitus tum **Græcis**, tum

Latinis dubium est. **Hor.** in masc. **Ov.** in fem. usurpat.

Isthmus male in feminino usurpatur. Nam in eo genere nusquam legitur apud antiquos.

Pharus **Græcis** masc. **Latinis** non nisi fem. Sunt & **Græca** alia, quæ feminino quidem genere ponuntur, sed id fit per **Syllepsin**, quia respicitur vox generalis. Sic dicitur hæc **Abyssus**, quod naturâ

suâ adjectivum est & propriè est
fundo carens: *Latinis verò A-*
byssus non est in usu nisi scriptoribus
Ecalesiasticis.

Hæc Atomus. sup. uoia.
Hæc Eremus. sup. Γῆρις
& sic de cæteris.

R E G. XXIV.

Us ternæ neutrum: tamen Hæc us -utis & udis.
Hæc tellus: sed pus -podis (a wûs) esto virile.

Qualia sunt Tripus, Polypus &c. Lagopus verò excipitur.

R E G. XXV.

Fœmininum impurum S: sunt & muliebria Laus, Fraus:
Hic Mons, Pons, Fons, Dens, Rudens, Hydropsque,
Chalybsque;
His etiam adjungas Seps, Helops, cum Gryphe, Merops:
Sed Stirps, Scrobs & Adeps genere usurpantur utroque.

Facta sunt hujusmodi nomina ex
uominibus. in es vel is: ut plebs
ex plebes; que, præter Salthysi-
um ac Tacitum, usus Lucanus —
Nescit plebes jejuna timere. A-
deps ex adipēs; quo usus. Varro:
Sors ex Sortis; mens ex mentis;
lens ex lentis; ars ex artis; &
ita in aliis. Antiqua enim nullus
nominativus sic definebat; sed inter
duas finales consonas media erat
vocalis. Atque hinc cognoscere est,
cur pleraque sic exenuntia sunt
fem. quia nomina unde fiunt sunt
ejus generis.

Dens Apuleio fem. sed non imi-
tandum.

Bidens & Tridens masc. vel
quia utrobique subintelligitur Ligo,
vel quia sequuntur naturam simpli-
cis-Dens. At pro Ove fem. nempe
per syllabam, pro Verre masc.

Chalybs masc. verpe eodem ge-
neris ac Chalybes, per quos aratum
est & domitum primitus ferrum;

ut ait Ammianus.

Forceps dubium est Prisciano;
sed in iis qui nunc extant scriptori-
bus semper est fem.

Seps pro serpente vel insectâ
masc. pro sepimento fem. pro, qua
& Sepes. Virg.

Rudens Plauto fem. At Ca-
tull. Virg. Ov. alique in mascu-
lino usurpant, forsan quia respici-
tur ad funis — Quod tamen alim se-
minum.

Scrobs dubium est; sed sepiâ
masc. juxta Servium.

Stirps pro origine suæ proge-
nie, semper fem. at pro arboris
trunco interdum in masc. reperitur.
Imò olim pro sobole dubium fuit.
Usus in masculino Pacuvius. Quis
stirpem occidit meum? sed non
imitandum.

Serpens vidæ in regulâ Epica-
norum.

Femineum X: hic Fornix, Spadix, Grexque Calixque,
Atque Calyx, Varix, Urpix, dissyllaba & ex ex.
Femineum at Carex, Fornax, Forfex; dubiūque
Tradux atque Silex. potius sed mascula Pumex,
Calx, Cortex, Imbrex: muliebria Onyx, Sandyxque;

Catalogus Nominum in X.

Atriplex herbae genus, a Ma-
cro Pöctastro usurpatur in fem. i-
tem Pallad. at potior auctoritas
Plinii qui neutro utitur.

Atriplex, inquit, & sylvestre &
fativum.

Calx pro parte plantae posteri-
ori, pedisque percussione utriusque
est generis. Ferrato calce fatigat.
Virg. Ferratâ calce croentat. Sil.
sed pro materiâ cuius in structuris
est opus femininum est.

Cimex in quibusdam Edit. a-
pud Plin. fem. est. Martiali & a-
liis masc.

Caudex & Codex, non ma-
gis differunt quam Caurus & Co-
rus, Plaustrum & Plostrum. Vul-
gè tamen Caudicem pro trunco,
Codicem pro libro dicere solemus.

Cortex utriusque generis est.
supremus cortex. Varr. raptus,
Virg. decerptus, direptus, discus-
sus, cavatus, sectus, scissus, lentus,
siccus. Ov. in fem. etiam us. O-
vid. Varro, Phaed. Plin. Val.
Max. aliquæ.

Grex apud Bucretium fem.
Bucrinæ greges. Masc. passim.

Obex sapiens masculinum est;
in fem. tamen usus Ov. Plin. &
Mars. Ecce maris magnâ claudit
nos obice pontus. Quem ad locum
ita Servius notavit; modò usus
habet, ut Hic obex dicamus: unde
quidem magno obice ligunt. Co-

per tamen libris dubii generis pro-
bat dici hic & hæc obex. quod,
ut diximus, hodie de usu recessit.
Hinc Pierius in eum locum dicit;
Usque adeò vates summus loquendi
artifex sub ferulam, si diis placet,
revocatur a Grammaticis; qui vo-
lunt amplius hic & hæc obex dici,
ut veteribus dicere concessum est.

In feminino etiam usus Sidonius,
necnon Claudianus, etsi isto genere
rarius sit.

Silex juxta Vossium in parvâ
sua grammaticâ, est ex numero co-
rum quæ oratoribus potius masculi-
na sunt; sed Nozius, omnium con-
sensu, femininum esse ait; ut agnos-
cit Vossius in Lib. 1mo de annota-
tiâ. Quare Alvaræ inter ea quæ
ex æquo generis utriusque sunt, re-
ponit; quem & nos secuti sumus.

Tomix legimus in Lucilii
fragmentis, etiamque Columellâ,
Vitruius, Plinio; sed in obliquis
& recto plurali. Ut ex hisce au-
thoribus cognosci non possit, num
Thomex scribi debeat (sane Tho-
mex scribit Hermolaus Barbarus)
an Thomix, quod magis accedit ad
græcum Θάμυξ; ut ut sit, femi-
ninum esse ostendit illud Pausaniæ,
ὁ ἀνὴρ ἑὸς οὐιάσι τῷ ὄνι τὴν
Θάμυξιν.

Falsi igitur Lexicographi, qui
rectum fecere Tomice; cum Pli-
nius & Vitruius in sexto casu di-
cant.

ant Tomice, & Lucilius in plu-
rali Tomicea, & Palladius Te-
micibus.

Varix masc. esse ait Phocas;
& Desfontaines & Robertus Gu-
phanns citant ex Horatio Varice
succiso, quod nusquam apud Pontum
hunc legat. Sed Celsus non uno
hoc in masculino usus est. Alii
dubium faciunt, id illud sentire,
Dum varices excindendas præbe-
ret; sed tutius est masc.

Vibix non Vibex dici debere
non absurdè ex eo colligimus, quod
penultima genitivi longa sit.

Hystrix Plinio fem. est, et
Claud. masc.

Lux apud veteres masc. in mas-
culino utitur Plautus, eodem modo
Varro dixit, Luci claro, quis et

Nonius docet sic ipsum Ciceronem
loqui.

Crux etiam Ennio virilis est,
teste Nonio. Sed in eo genere obso-
letum.

Onyx pro lapide pretioso sem-
per fem. At, pro vase utriusque est
generis. Parva onyx; Mark. Mus-
rheus onyx, Prop.

Sandix vel Sandyx quod Lex-
icographi masculinum esse tradunt,
semper ferè muliere est. Nam
Plinii est, Pingentes sandice sub-
lita, & Galeni, adusta cerussa in
Sandycem, quam vocant, transit.

Sardonix, Plinio, Pers. fem.
est. Martiali masc. At in utro-
que genere utitur Juvenalis. Densi
sardoniches—Conducta Sardo-
nyche.

Dicta Epicæna Genus finis plerumque sequuntur :

* Sexum ut distinguas vel Mas vel Femina jungas.

Hic Phœnix, Bombyx, Glis, Turtur, Vultur, Orixque,
Mus, Lepus, & Vermis, Mugil, Delphisque, Salarque,
Alcyon hæc, & Halex; quibus adde Lagopus, Aëdon.
Sunt dubia hæc Limax, Cenchris; sed sæpius ista
Grus, Perdix, Serpens, Lynx, Talpa, & Dama videbis
Feminea; potius mas Anguis, masque Palumbes.

* Hæc distinctio sæpe obtinet in
nomnibus etiam quæ Communia
appelluntur. Vide tamen inferius
observationem doctissimi Lowei.

Epicænorum autem duo sunt
genera: Alia, quæ sunt unius
tantum generis, ut hic Turtur;
alia, quæ utriusque generis sunt,
ut hic vel hæc Limax: sed quo-
niam sub utroque genere utramque
speciem indeterminatè comprehen-
dunt, eo a communibus distinguun-
tur. Quare non est genus a reli-
quis distinctum, sed aliorum generum
certa quædam applicatio. Quare

regula eorum generalis, non est a-
lia, quam regula terminationis. Sed
quia nonnulla a regulâ terminationis
recedunt, ea Catalogo alphabetico
apposuimus.

Accipiter Ov. & Maroni masc.
in fem. tamen usurpat Lucretius, teste
Nonio.

Aëdon Senecæ fem.

Alcyon fem. est, contra regu-
lam terminationis; Ita usus Maro
—Dilectæ tibi Alcyones—ac simi-
liter Aristoteles, & Græcorum a-
lii. Ut audiri non mereatur Ser-
vius,

vint, qui ad superiorem Virgillii locum notat hic & hæc Alcyon dicitur: Sed purpuream, nam licet de femina dicatur Alcyon, & significatione sit commune, non sequitur quod constructione quoque commune sit.

Ales plurimè est fem. quomodo & Martialis usus; inuicias tamen in masc. apud Maronem qui dicit, Fulvus ales.

Anguis sarpens masc. Lucidas anguis. Virg. Sed Val. Maximus utriusque generis facit in eodem capite. Tacito fem. est, et, ut Charisius ostendit, Tibullo, Ov. Var. similiter fem.

Bombyx masc. quidem est, sed pro vermiculo; at pro materili a quæ sunt vestes Bombycinæ semper fem.

Bubo terminatione masc. est. Maro tamen in fem. usus est; sed, ut annotat Servius, respexit ad vocem generalem.

Camelus quod multi dubium statuant, Latinis semper masc. Graecis fem.

Cenchris pro significatione: genus mutat: pro Serpente masc. pro Ave in fem. usurpatur a Plinio. Priori sensu sumptum declinatur hic Cenchris, hujus Cenchris — posteriori hæc Cenchris, Cenchridis.

Coccyx masc.

Dama & Talpa a solo Marone in masculino usurpantur, idque figuratè; atque inde est, quod Charisius inter barbarissimos genere commissos Poetæ illud reponat — Cum canibus timidi veniunt ad pocula damæ. Sandè non dubitat Servius quin timidæ dicturus fuisset, nisi refugisset ὀφιοειδῶν. Idem iudicandum de illo ejusdem — Aut oculis capti fore cubilia talpæ. Nim & hic, si captæ dixisset, fuisset ὀφιοειδῶν; ejusmodi lenocinia imminuunt carminis Heroici modestiam.

Delphis masc. sed Latini potius dicunt Delphin.

Esox vel **Exox**, piscis, masc. habetur.

Glis gliris, masc.

Grus in feminino usurpat Maro, & alii; in masculino non alibi reperias, quem apud Horatium — Membra gruis sparsit multo sale.

Halex — eciñ fem. est. Sed Halæc nunt. per Reg. XI.

Lagopus, **Avis**, fem. ejusdem generis est pro Herba.

Lepus masc. Auriti lepores. V.

Limax — acis, Colum. masc. Plinio verò fem. est.

Lynx rorum est in masculino, & fortasse uni Horatio, cujus est — timidos agitare Lyncas.

Merops, **Avis**, masc.

Mugil — lis, vel **Mugilis** — is, masc.

Mus etiam masc.

Nefrens — dis, vel **Nefrendis** — is, masc. videtur per Syllepin: Sine de Porcellis propriè dicatur, quod Varro innuit; sive Arietibus propriè competat, quod Festus docet. De Infantibus quoque usurpat Livius Andronicus. Sunt qui suspicentur esse commune, vocis significatione adducti; nam dicitur quasi ne hoc est, non-frendens, sed in feminino usquam legitur.

Nycticorax masc. quia componitur a corax.

Oryx vel **Orix**, Plin. Juv. & Martialis masc.

Palumbes usitatus masc. Virgilius usus est in fem. Ruræ, tua cura, palumbæ. Aeris palumbes.

Panthera tantum fem. nec propriè Epicænum est; quippe cujus mas pardus est.

Perdix Graecis com. Lat. potius fem. Stat. masc. facit, & Var. apud Non.

Phoenix Claudianus & Solin. masc.

masc. faciunt, et Mala fem.

Salar *masc.*

Serpens *adjectivum est, & respicitur Anguis, usitatus autem fem.*

Turtur *uris, masc.*

Vermis *masc.*

Volucris *usitatus fem. apud Cicronem reperias in masc. At id genus rarum est, & insolens; nominatur suam adjectivum est, & respicitur generale nomen Avis.*

Volvox *-ocis, cuius generis sit non liquet; juniores inter masculina*

retulerunt.

Vultur *-uris masc. legitur etiam hic vulturis, Plin. & vulturius. Ennius.*

Obs. In nominibus animalium, quae sub una terminatione utrumque sexum complectuntur, genus ex terminatione dignoscitur; ita tamen ut pro specie seu mari solo terminationis genere utendum sit; pro femina autem nomen terminationis masculinum adjectivum utriusque generis admittat: Ut Mus marinus peperit ova. Plin. Idem ex una mureo.

HETEROCLITA.

Deficit, aut variat, Heteroclita vox, vel abundat.

Sing laria Solùm.

Fel, venia, atque pedum, pus, hepar, vulgus, omasum, Nitrum, aer, mundus, pontus, piper atque veternum, Prolubium, viscus, glastum, cum glutine, cestus, Aether, limus, humus, virus, cum lacte, juvenus, Pubes & tabes, famesque, senectus, supellex, Plebs, glareas atque fitis, labes, argilla, luésque, Fænum, album, gypsum, pelagus, cum nectare, lardum, Sic ebur atque crocum, luxus, sabulum atque juvena, Invenies numerum non excedentia primum:

[Sic barathrum, senium, vitrum, lethumque, salumque, Institium, penus atque penum, diluculum & alec, Zingiber, atque opium, jubas, hilum, delictumque, His meri-junge-dies, & mane, balauftium & aurum, Glutinum, item viscum, nihilum, cænumque, lutumque, Nemo, filer, vesper, muscus, sanguisque, hémusque, Verque, geluque, salus, putrorque, sinape, sinapi-is, &c.]

Pluralia Solùm,

Excubias, exequias, nugæ, nonæ, atque calendæ, Reliquias, phalerasque, salinas, vergiliasque Nundinas, item scalas, sic vindiciasque plagasque, Cancelli, fasti, scruta, in-cunabula, stabula, Primores. antes, lendes, gratiasque, fracesque, Manes, majores, fasses, lactesque, minores, L.beri, item lemures, natales atque penates,

Sic

*Sic Baïæ, Gabii, sic Acro-ceraunia, Susa,
Esquilæ, Gades & nomina plura locorum,
Cum multis aliis pluralia semper habentur.*

*[Sic caulæ, exuviæ, gerræque, manubiæ, & idus,
Nuptiæ, & induciæ, valvæ, insidiæque minæque,
In feriæ, cunæ, clitellæ, divitiæque,
Antix, & induviæ, thermæ, tricæ atque, tenebræ,
Quisquilæ, diræ, sic primitiæque scopæque :
Post-quoque principia, nec-non sponsalia, tesqua,
Lamenta, exta simul, præcordia, munia & arma,
Scrutaque, cum fragis, præbenda, magalia, et acta,
Cete, festa deûm, ceu Bacchanalia quondam,
Lautia, cum justis, æstiva, repotia, Tempe,
Mœnia, cum castris, & rostra, & lustra ferarum &c.
Invenies numero tantum ferè cuncta secundo, &c.
So apinæ, gemoniæ, pugillares, bellaria, crepundia, multitia,
parentalia, salgama, talaria, velaria, quinquatria -iæ -uus
&c.]*

Observatio.

*Plurali ferè cuncta carent, quæ singula sensu ;
Ut Propria, frumenta, herbæ, pensa, uda, metalla,
Quali-que-tas abstracta rei, velut albor ab albus,
A que probus probitas, ejusdem et nomina formæ ;
Sic ferè cuncta carent primo, pluralia sensu.*

Alia Defectiva.

*Prætereà tibi sunt hæc Defectiva notanda,
Addita de Græco queis nomina fonte videbis.*

Aptota.

*Nomen in -u vel in -i. Nequam, fas, nil, nihil, instar,
Cepe, nefas, damnas, epos, expes, tot, quot, & omnes
A tribus ad-centum numeros aptota vocabis &c.*

Monoptota.

*Contentum casu monoptoton flectitur uno ;
Ut nauci ; inficias eo ; ad inci que tas redigo ; sic
Ingratiis duo Græco-Latina ergoque dicisque,
Multa per u-, vel -ui dat declinatio quarta &c.
ut permissu, despiciatui,*

Diptota!

Diptota.

*Sunt diptota quibus duplex flexura remansit.
Spontis sponte facit, repetundarum, repetundis,
Suppetiæ dant -as, paulum -o quibus addit supina.
Jugeri & sexto sic jugere, verberis atque
Verbere; sed numero sunt hæc duo sana secundo, &c.*

Triptota.

*Tres quibus inflectis casus triptota vocantur.
Sic tabum, tabi, tabo, simul impetis addas,
Impete quod primo dabit, impetibusque secundo.
Sic mactus quoque mactæ facit, mactique secundo.
Astus habet astu, plurali legimus astus:
Sordis habet sordem sexto quoque sorde; precique
Perque precem & prece tu flectas; opis adsit, opemque,
Atque ope; sed numero sunt hæc tria sana secundo, &c.*

Tétraptota.

*Deficiunt recto & quinto vicis & ditionis:
Integra vox vis est nisi desit forte dativus.
Hæc quoque si viciū tollas, sunt sana secundo.
Jam satis est, ni vis ut præcedentibus addam
Quædam quæ casus quoque defecere secundo.
Sic mar-ia & rur-a, exoptant sic ær-ibus æra,
Sic ror-es, sol-es, sic formant or-ibus ora,
Atque-libus sobo-les &c. Mel, musta & defruta, thura,
Hordea, farra dabunt tres casus sine sub uno, &c.*

Variantia numero.

*Plurali faciunt Æ deliciūque epulūque,
Nundinum habet plurali Æ. I Argos. Balneum at Æ-A.
Tartarus A format; sic supparus, atque supellex,
Mænalus, atque etiam mens Dindymus, Ismarus, atque
Carbasus A sumunt, nec-non Taygetus, Avernus;
Dant I & A jocus, & rastrum, frenum atque capistrum, &c.*

*These and such kind of nouns had formerly two terminations,
and so are properly Redundant.*

Redundantia

Redundantia nominativo.

*Hæc finem geminant baculus baculum, arbor & arbor,
Plebs plebes, locus atque locum, crater&que crater,
Sic delphin delphinus, sic elephas elephantus,
Sic congrus conger, Meleagrus sic Meleager:
Cum multis aliis quæ lectio iusta docebit.*

*Arma, jugum, frenum, cliv&que, anim&que bacillum,
Adjectiva us- & is- formant ut inermus inermis, &c.*

De simplicium Verborum 1mæ Conjugationis Communi
Præterito,

As - - - - - avi.

A S in præsentî perfectum format in avi :
Ut no nas navi, vocito vocitas vocitavi.
Deme lavo lavi¹, juvo juvi², nexoque nexui³; ⁴ Versus hypermetrus.
Et seco quod secui⁴, necto quod necui⁵, mico verbum
Quod micui⁶, plico quod plicui⁷, frico quod fricui⁸ dat ;
Sic domo quod domui⁹, tono quod tonui¹⁰, fono verbum
Quod sonui¹¹, crepo quod crepui¹², veto quod vetui¹³ dat,
Atque cubo cubui¹⁴ : rarè hæc formantur in avi.
Do das ritè dedi, flo flas formare fletî vult.

Secundæ Conjugationis commune præteritum.

es - - - - - ui.

E S in præsentî perfectum format ui dans :
Ut, nigreo nigres nigrui ; jubeo excipe jussi :
Sorbeo sorbui habet sorpsi¹ quoque, mulceo mulsi² ;
Luceo vult luxi, sedeo sedi, video&que

¹ Lavi potius a lavo-is, quod
legitur apud Virg. L. 3. Lavit inde
crurum ; Et Hor. Ora manusque tuâ
lavimus, Feronia, lymphâ.

² Juvavi olim a juvo dicebatur,
ut aliqui volunt. Juvaturum Sall.
adjuvaturus Patron.

³ Nexui a nexo-is.

⁴ Secaturus Colum.

⁵ Necavi sapius, compositum ui
& avi. Enecatus Plin. Enectus
Liv.

⁶ Hæc tibi sit pugna
dimicuisse totis Ov. Sed dimicavi
n&statiis. Emicui sapius. Solemi-
caturus Sen.

⁷ Plico ui &

avi Prisc. Sed neutrum jam legitur.

⁸ Frictus Juo. Defricatus Catul.
Infricatus, perfricatus Plin. refri-
caturus Cic.

⁹ Domaverunt
Flor. Domator Tib.

¹⁰ Inta-
nata Hor. Tonatio Sen.

¹¹ So-
naturum Hor.

¹² Discrepo
ui Hor. avi Cic. quod n&statiis.
Increpo ui, rari& avi. Increpitus
Liv.

¹³ Vetavit Porf. ¹⁴ Cu-
bavi occurrit apud Plinium & Foh.
Incubatio Plin. Accubatio Cic.

¹ Sorpsi tantum in compositis.

² Permulceo-li-fus & -tus.

Foh

*Vult vidi; sed prandeo prandi, strideo stridi³,
Suadeo suasi, rideo risi, habet ardeo & arsi.*

Quatuor his infra geminatur syllaba prima:

*Pendeo namque pependi, mordeo vultque momordi,
Spondeo habere sponendi, tondeo vultque totondi.*

L vel r ante geo si stet, geo vertitur in si:

*Urgeo ut urfi; mulgeo mulsi dat quoque mulxi⁴,
Frigeo frixi, lugeo luxi, habet augeo & auxi.*

*Dat fleo fles flevi, leo les levi⁵, indéque natum
Deleo deleui⁶, pleo ples plevi⁷, neo nevi.*

*A maneo mansi formatur; torqueo torfi,
Hæreo vult hæsi. Veo fit vi: ut, serveo servi⁸;
Niveo, & inde satum poscit conniveo, nivi
Et nixi; cieo civi, vieoque vievi.*

Tertia conjugatio.

T*ertia præteritum formabit ut hic manifestum.*

*Bo fit bi: ut lambo lambi: scribo excipe scripsi,
Et nubo nupsi; antiquum cumbo cubui dat.*

*Co fit ci: ut vinco vici: vult parco peperci,
Et parsi; dico dixi, duco quoque duxi.*

*Do fit di: ut mando mandi: sed scindo scidi¹ dat,
Findo fidi, fundo fudi, tundo tutudique²,*

Pendo pependi, tendo tetendi³, pedo pepedi;

Junge cado cecidi, pro verbero cædo cecidi,

Cedo pro discedere, sive locum dare, cessi:

Vado, rado, lædo, ludo, divido, trudo,

Claudo, plaudo, rodo, ex do semper faciunt si⁴.

Go⁵ fit xi, ut jungo junxi: sed r ante go vult si;

Ut, spargo sparsi, lego legi, & ago facit egi;

Dat tango tetigi, pungo punxi⁶ pupugique;

Dat frango fregi, pepigi⁷ vult pago paciscor,

Pango etiam pegi, sed panxi⁸ maluit usus.

³ A strido, si invenitur.

⁴ Differentiæ causa ut quidam protulerant; nam mulceo-si.

⁵ Leo non legitur, sed levi.

⁶ Deleo & paulo infra conniveo ad primam regulam de compositorum præteritis spectant.

⁷ Pleo inusitat. ⁸ Fervi potius a fervo. Deserveo-bui & vi; at reserveo-vi. Ferbeo etiam videtur olim in usu fuisse, unde in compositis conex-ferbui.

¹ Olim scicidi Plaut.

² Tu-

tudi inusitat.

³ Pendi & tendi. Vestigal quod regi pendisti Liv. Qui nostro tendisti retia leæto Prop. Plena rates carbasa tenderant Sen.

⁴ Vasi vix in usu extra compos.

⁵ Sic distinguo, extinguo, restringuo-xi a stingo vel stinguo.

⁶ Punxi parum usitat. extra compos.

⁷ Pepigi ab antiquo pago, a πάγω Dor. pro, πώγω. ⁸ Pan-go-is-panxi (olim pegi) pactum. Pegi remanet in compingo, impingo, suppingo; cætera panxi.

Ho fit xi : traho *ceu* traxi docet, & veho vxi.

L-o fit ui : colo *ceu* colui : psallo *excipe* cum p,
Et fallo *sinè* p, nam li ⁹ tibi format *utrumque* ;

Dat vello velli vulsi ¹⁰ quoque, fallo fefelli.

Cello ¹¹ pro frango ceculi, pello pepulique.

M-o fit ui : vomo *ceu* vomui : sed emo facit emi ;

Como petit compsi, promo prompsi ; *adjice* demo

Quod format dempsi, sumo sumpsi ¹², premo pressi,

No fit vi : fino *ceu* fivi ¹³ : temno *excipe* tempfi ;

Dat sterno stravi ¹⁴, sperno spreui, lino levi ¹⁵

Interdum lini & livi, cerno *quoque* crevi :

Gigno, pono, cano, genui ¹⁶, posui ¹⁷, cecini dant.

Po fit psi : ut scalpo scalpsi, rumpo *excipe* rupi ;

Et strepo quod format strepui, crepo quod crepui ¹⁸ dat.

Quo fit qui : ut linquo liqui ¹⁹ : coquo demito coxi.

Ro fit vi : sero *ceu* pro planto & semino sevi,

Quod serui melius semper dabit ordino signans.

Vult verro verri & versi ²⁰, uro ulsi, gero gessi,

Quaro quæsi, tero trivi ²¹, curro cucurri.

So fivi ²² faciunt arcesso, capeffo, laceffo ;

Si-fivi incesso tamen exigit, atque faceffo ;

Et viso visi : sed pinso, depso ui ²³ et i dant,

Sco fit vi : ut pasco pavi : vult posco poposei,

Vult didici disco, quexi ²⁴ formare quinisco.

To fit ti : ut verto verti ²⁵ : sed sisto notetur

Pro facio stare activum, nam jure stiti dat ;

Dat mitto misi, peto vult formare petivi.

Sterto stertui habet, meto messui : ab ecto fit exi ;

Ut, flecto flexi ; necto tamen exui & exi.

Exui item pecto, plecto, sed rariùs exi.

9 Psalli vix usitat.

10 Vulsi minus usitat. Divello, evello-lli ;

sed avello, revello-lli & ulsi, &

impello-lli & uli.

11 Cello ceculi inusitat. Nisi in compos. Cello

cellui etiam exolevit, unde antecel-

lo, excello, præcello-llui ; nisi

fortè veniant ab excelleo, ut cen-

set Priscianus. Sed percello per-

culi.

12 Nonnulli quatuor hæc

præterita, ut et tempfi, sine p.

scribere contendunt.

13 Contrastæ interdum-lui, sic de-

fino-ivi & ii. desitus Cic.

14 Consterno-as terrorem incutis ;

consterno-is dejicio.

15 Levi tantum probant Grammatici ; Livi

usurpat Columellus, Lini quoque
utitur Fabius. Ponì videtur pro linii
& linio, unde oblinii Varr.

16 Genui a geno : Quæ vi quæque

genantur Lucet.

17 Olim posi-

vi unde deposivi. Catull.

18 Vide

supra in primâ conjugatione.

19 Sine

n quasi a liquo, quod a λίσσω.

20 Versi vix occurrit.

21 Terui

Plaut. atterui Tibul.

22 Olim

enim fuerunt quartæ, Incesso semper

syncopatum.

23 Interdum pinfi,

depsi Varr.

24 Quexi inusi-

tat. as conquexi Prisc.

25 Di-

vertor & diverto, prævertor &

præverto-ti ; reverter reverti, &

junioribus reversus sum. Vo

Vo fit vi: ut, volvo volvi: vivo excipe vixi.
 X-o fit ui: ut, monstrat texo, quod texui habebit.
 Fit cio ci: ut, facio feci: jacio quoque jeci.
Antiquum lacio lexi, specio quoque spexi.
 Fit dio di: ut, fodio fodi: Gio *cen* fugio gi.
 Fit pio pi: ut, capio cepi, cupio excipe pivi²⁶,
 Et rapio rapui, sapio sapui²⁷ atque sapivi.
 Fit rio ri: ut, pario peperii. Tio *hi* geminans:
 Ut quatio quassi, quod vix reperitur in usu.
 Denique uo fit ui; ut, statuo statui, pluo pluvi²⁸
 Format, *sive* plui, struo sed struxi, fluo fluxi.

Quarta conjugatio.

is - - - - iui.

Quarta dat is iui: ut, monstrat scio scis tibi scivi.
 Excipias venio dans veni, & veneo venii;
 Sarrio vel sario farrivi dat, sarruque;
 Rancio raufi, farcio farfi, farcio farfi,
 Sepio sepsi¹, sentio sensi, fulcio fulfi,
 Haurio item haufi², fancio fanxi³, vincio vinxi;
 Dat falio falii salui⁴, & amicio micui & xi⁵.

De compositorum verborum prateritis.

Præteritum dat idem simplex & compositivum:
 Ut, docui, edocui monstrat: sed syllaba, semper
 Quam simplex geminat, composito non geminatur¹:
 Exceptis a do, disco, flo, posco creatis.
 Præcurro, excurro, decurro, accurro, procurro
 Dupliciter flectas per curri, perque cucurri².
 A plico compositum cum nomine-sub-re plicavi³;
 Cætera ui aut avi: sic a neco. Sapius optat
 Increpo ui; sed discrepo, dimico sapius avi.
 Dant ob-sub-red-oles olui⁴, sed cætera olevi.

Com

26 Cupio & sapio olim quarta.	derat Varr.	2 Præcurro, ex-
Nubere viz Prisco, non miror.		curro, decurro, accurro, procurro
Raulo, sapienti Mart.	27 Sapui	cucurri & curri; cætera viz ge-
imstatius.	28 Pluvi obsolevit.	minant.
1 Sepivi Liv.	2 Haurii	3 Replico avi. Re-
Varr.	3 Sancivi Liv.	plietæ pro replicatæ dat.
4 Nam		4 Oleo
salio-ivi-utum est sale caudio.	5 A-	adrum spiro, ab oleo, facit olui;
mixi ustratide.		se oboleo. Redoleo, peroleo ui;
1 Despopondi Plant.	Deteton-	subolui viz legitur. Oleo aliquando
		significabit cresco, ab alo; unde
		proles.

*Composita a pingo formabunt omnia punxi ;
Vult unum pupugi, interdumque repungo repunxi.
A Do nata didi tibi flexio tertia ⁵ format ;
Sapius abscondo abscondi ⁶ : a sto nata stiti ⁷ dant.*

Mutantia primam vocalem in e.

*Verba hæc simplicia præsentis præteritique,
Si componantur, vocalem primam in e mutant ;
Damno ¹, lacto, sacro ², fallo, arceo ³, tracto ⁴, fatiscor.
Cando vetus, capto, jacto, patior, gradiorque,
Partio ⁵, carpo, patro, scando ⁶, spargo ⁷ ; parióque,
Cujus nata per i, duo comperit, & reperit, dant ;
Cætera sed per ui, velut hæc, aperire, operire.
A pascio pavi tantum composita notentur
Hæc duo, compesco ⁸, dispesco, pescui habere ;
Cætera ut epasco, servabunt simplicis usum.*

Mutantia primam vocalem in i.

*Hæc habeo ¹, lateo, falio, statuo, cado, lædo,
Æstimo, tango, cano ², sic quero, cædo, cecidi,
Sic egeo, teneo, taceo, sapio, rapióque,
Si componantur vocalem primam in i mutant :
Ut rapio rapui, eripio eripui : a cano natum
Præteritum per ui, ceu concino ³ concinui dat.
A placeo sic displiceo ; sed simplicis usum
Hæc duo complaceo cum perplaceo bene servant.*

proles, suboles ; a quâ significa-
tione veniunt exoleo, inoleo, ob-
soleo-evi-etum ; adoleo-evi-ultum.
Oleo significat etiam dilaui unde
aboleo-evi-ultum. ⁵ Nam qua-
tuor composita a do sunt primæ con-
jugationis ; nempe circundo, pessun-
do, satifido, venundo. ⁶ Olim
abscondidit. ⁷ Circumfeti
Virg. Superfeti Sall.
¹ Prædamno Suet. ² De-
sacro Stat. ³ Abarceo Fest.
⁴ Pertracto Cic. Retractio Tac.
⁵ Dispartio & dispartio. ⁶ Su-
persecando Colum. Suprascando Liv.
⁷ Superispargo Cat. ⁸ Com-
pescio ponitur pro coërceo ; in pro-

prio sensu pro simul pascio, scribitur
compasco. Festus etiam impesco
habet, sed Colum. impasco.

Obs. A canto, occento. A farcio,
confertio, differtio, refertio ; sed
infertio & infarcio, item effartio
& effertio. A juro, dejero, peje-
ro ; cætera servant u. Dejuro Plant.
Perjuro Hor. A mando, commen-
do, et emendo ut quibusdam placet.
Hæc verò ab aliâ ductum videtur
originem sumpta a mendâ. Sed amando,
præmando. A paro, impero, re-
cupero ; cætera servant a.

¹ Antehabeo Tac. Posthabeo
Ter. ² Sed oceano Tac, Recano
Plin.

Com-

Composita a verbis calco, salto, a per u mutant :
Id tibi demonstrant, conculco, inculco ⁴, resulto.

Composita a claudio, quatio, lavo rejiciunt a
Id docet a claudio ⁵, occludo, excludo, a quatioque
Percutio, excutio, a lavo, proluo, diluo nata.

Sic causo incuso : Natum a plando o facit ex au :
At unum applando retinet sibi simplicis usum.

Mutantia primam vocalem in i præterquam in præteritis;

Hæc si componas, ago ¹, emo ², sedeo ³, rego, frango ⁴,
Et capio ⁵, jacio ⁶, lacio, specio, premo, pango,
Vocalem primam præsentis in i sibi mutant,

Præteriti ⁷ nunquam : ceu, frango, refringo refrégi;

A capio, incipio incepti : sed pauca notentur ;

Namque suum simplex perago sequitur, fatagóque ⁸ :

Atque ab ago, dego dat degi, cogo coëgi ;

A rego, sic pergo perrexi, vult quoque iurgo

Surrexi ; mediâ præsentis syllabâ adeptâ.

Composita a pango retinent a quatuor ista ;

Depango, oppango, circumpango, atque repango.

Nil variat facio, nisi præposito præeunte :

Id docet olfacio cum calfacio, inficióque.

A lego nata, re, per, præ, sub, trans, ad præeunte,

Præsentis servant vocalem : in i cætera mutant ;

De quibus hæc, intelligo, diligo, negligo, tantum

Præteritum lexi faciunt ; reliqua omnia legi.

De simplicium verborum Supinis :

Nunc ex præterito discas formare supinum.

Bi sibi tum sumit : sic namque bibi bibitum sit.

Ci sit etum : ut vici victum testatur, & ici

Dans ictum, feci factum, jeci quoque jactum.

Di sit sum : ut vidi visum : quædam geminant s ;.

⁴ Sed recalco Colum.

⁵ Nisi

cum sedeo, Super sedeo *18*. Per sedeo

potius a cludo, a luo. Supradictis
 addatur Polluo, nisi forte veniat a
 lue.

Liv. ⁴ Affrango Stat.

⁵ Antecapio Sall.

⁶ Super-

jacio, præjacio, Colum.

⁷ At

Elicio-ut.

¹ Circumago Liv.

² Coëmo

Cic.

³ Circumsedeo vel cir-

⁸ Sategi vix occurrit.

Ut:

Ut pandi passum ¹, fedi fessum, adde scidi quod
Dat scissum, atque fidi fissum, fodi quoque fossium.

Hic etiam advertas, quod syllaba prima supinis,
Quam vult præteritum geminari, non geminatur:
Idque totondi dani tonsum docet, atque cecidi
Quod cæsum, & cecidi quod dat casum, atque tetendi
Quod tensum & tentum, tutudi tunsum ², atque pepedi
Quod format peditum, adde dedi quod jure datum vult.

Gi fit Etum: ut legi lectum; pegi pepigique
Dat pactum, fregi fractum, tetigi quoque tactum,
Egi actum, pupugi punctum, fugi fugitum dat.

Li fit sum: ut, salli flans pro sale condio falsum;
Dat pepuli pulsum, ceculi culsum ³, atque fefelli
Falsum, dat velli vulsum ⁴: tuli habet quoque latum.

Mi ni pi qui, tum formant, velut hic manifestum:
Emi emptum, veni ventum, cecini a cano cantum;
A capio cepi captum, cœpi quoque cœptum.

A rumpo rupi ruptum; liqui quoque lictum.

Ri fit sum: ut, verri versum; peperer excipe partum ⁵;

Si fit sum: ut, visi visum ⁶; tamen si geminato
Misi formabit missum; fulsi excipe fultum,
Hauſi hauſtum ⁷: farſi fartum, farſi quoque fartum ⁸,
Uſi uſtum, geſſi geſtum, torſi duo tortum,
Et torſum ⁹, indulſi indultum indulſumque ¹⁰ requirit.

Pſi fit ptum: ut, ſeripſi ſcriptum; campſi excipe campſum ¹¹.

Ti fit tum: a ſto namque ſteti, a ſiſtoque ſtiti fit
Præterito commune ſtatum; verti excipe verſum.

Vi fit tum: ut, ſtavi ſtatum; pavi excipe paſſum:
Dat lavi lotum, interdum lautum ¹² atque lavatum,
Sed favi fautum, cavi cautum; a ſero ſevi
Formes rite ſatum, livi linique litum dat;
Solvi a ſolvo ſolutum, volvi a volvo volutum;
Vult ſingultivi ſingultum ¹³, veneo venis
Venivi venum ¹⁴, ſepelivi rite ſepultum.

Quod dat ui dat itum: ut, domui domitum; excipe quodvis
Verbum in uo, quia ſemper ui formabit in utum;

¹ Paſſum & paſum. Expanſa
retia Plin. Abſcondi-ſum. Ab-
ſconſum anſuevit. ² Et tuſum.

³ Ceculi ſimplex non invenitur,
at perculi-ſum; procello, culi-ſum,
minds uſcat. ⁴ Potius a vulſi.

⁵ Pro paritum per ſynecdochen.

⁶ Viſum tamen a video viſit.

⁷ Hauſurus Virg. ⁸ Et farc-
tum Sen. ⁹ Torſum obſolevit.

¹⁰ Indulſum Priſc. ¹¹ Nec
præteritum, nec ſupinum legitur.

¹² Lotum & lautum potius a
lavo-h. ¹³ Nec ſupinum, nec

participium legitur. ¹⁴ Venum
potius nomen eſt.

Exui ut exutum: a ruo deme rui ruitum dans ¹⁵.
 Fuli secui sectum, necui nectum ¹⁶, fricuique
 Frictum ¹⁷, miscui item mistum, ac amicum dat amictum;
 Torruui habet tostum, docui doctum, tenuique
 Tentum, consului consultum, alui altum alitumque ¹⁸;
 Sic salui saltum, colui ocului ¹⁹ quoque cultum:
 Pinsui habet pistum ²⁰, rapui raptum, seruique
 A sero vult sertum, sic texui habet quoque textum:
 Hæc sed ui mutant in sum; nam cenſeo censum,
 Cellui ²¹ habet celsum, meto messui habet quoque messum;
 Nexui item nexum, sic pexui habet quoque pexum.
 Dat patui passum ²², carui cassum ²³ caritumque.
 Xi fit tum: ut, vinxi vinctum: quinque abijciunt n;
 Ut, sinxi sictum, minxi mictum, adijce pinxi
 Dans pistum, strinxi strictum, rinxi ²⁴ quoque rictum.
 Xum flexi, plexi, fixi dant; & fluo fluxum.

De compositorum Verborum Supinis.

Compositum ut simplex formatur quodque supinum,
 Quamvis non eadem stet syllaba semper utriusque.
 Composita a tunsu, demptâ n, tusum; a ruitu fit.
 I mediâ demptâ, rutum ¹; & a saltu quoque sultum.
 Sevi nata situm, do ternæ nata ditum dant:
 Dant pariter statum, atque stitum sto plerâque nata ².
 Hæc captum, factum ³, jactum, raptum, a per e mutant;
 Et cantum, partum, sparsum, carptum quoque fartum.
 Verbum edo compositum non estum, s. d facit esum;
 Unum duntaxat comedo formabit utrumque.
 A nosco tantum duo cognitum & agnitum habentur,
 Cætera dant notum: nullo est jam noscitur in usu.

De præteritis verborum in or.

Verba in or admittunt ex anteriore Supino
 Præteritum, verso in per s, & sum consociato,
 Vel fui: ut a lectum, lectus sum vel fui. At horum

15 Rutum olim, unde dirutus.
 16 Potius necatum.
 17 In
 compositis potius fricatum. 18 Ali-
 toin magis usitat. 19 Oculi V.
 Flacc. 20 Pisto, pinstitut, pinsum,
 pistum, pisum. 21 Cellui quasi
 a cello non legitur, & celsus vo-
 cabitur. 22 Passum a pando.

23 Cassum nomen est. 24 Rin-
 gor deponem tantum legitur.
 1 A simplicibus potius tusum &
 rutum. 2 Compos: a sto fa-
 ciunt statum & stitum, staturus in
 participiis usitatus. 3 Si cum
 præpositione componatur ut infes-
 tum.

Nunc

Nunc est deponens, nunc est commune notandum.

*Nam labor lapsus : patior dat passus, & ejus
Nata ; ut compatior ¹ compassus, perpetiorque
Formans perpeffus : fateor dat fassus, & inde
Confiteor dat confessus ; reor atque ratus sum.*

*Dat gressus gradior cum natis, digredior cen
Digressus : mensus sum metior, utor & usus.*

*Pro texo orditus, pro incepto dat ordior orsus,
Nitor nifus vel nixus sum, ulciscor & ultus,
Obliviscor vult oblitus sum, fruor optat
Fructus vel fruitus ², misereri junge misertus.*

*Vult tuor & tueor vix tutus ³, sed tuitus sum ;
A loquor adde locutus, & a sequor adde secutus.*

*Experior fecit expertus ; formare paciscor
Gandet pactus sum, nanciscor nactus, apiscor
Quod vetus est verbum aptus sum, unde adipiscor adeptus.*

*Junge queror questus, proficiscor junge profectus,
Expergiscor sum experrectus ; & hac quoque commi-
niscor commentus, nascor natus, moriorque
Mortuus, atque orior quod præteritum facit ortus.*

*De verbis geminum præteritum habentibus, viz. Activæ
& Passivæ vocis.*

PRæteritum activæ & passivæ vocis habent hæc :

*Cæno cœnavi & cœnatus sum tibi format,
Juro, juravi & juratus, potôque potavi
Et potus, titubo titubavi vel titabatus.*

*Sic fabrico, affecto, communico, fluctuo, specio,
Nutrio, suefco, elucubro, cœpio, censeo, prandeo,
Et placeo ; at formæ passivæ est rarior usus.*

*Nubo nupsi nuptaque sum ¹, mereor meritus sum
Vel merui ² ; adde libet libuit libitum, & licet adde
Quod licuit licitum, tædet quod tædui ³ & dat
Pertæsum, adde pudet faciens puduit puditumque,
Atque piget tibi quod format piguit pigitumque.*

¹ Vox ecclesiasticis scriptoribus
solum usurpata.

² Fruiturus,
perfructus, Cic.

³ Tutus Sall.

¹ Ab antiquo nuber. Nupta,
non nuptus, quia nubere proprium
est mulieris, ut ducere proprium est

viri. Vir ducit, mulier nubit. O-
vidius tamen—Tibi nubere, sympha,
valentis Potis cede Dei. ² Ma-
rui a mereo. ³ Tædui vis
& pertæsum est a per-
tædet.

De Neutro-passivorum præteritis.

Neutro-passivum sic præteritum tibi format,
Gaudeo gavissus sum, fido fissus ¹, & audeo
Ausus sum, fio factus, soleo solitus sum:

De Verbis præterito carentibus.

Præteritum fugiunt, attollo, fatisco, fatiscor,
Glisco, recello, aveo, sum, denseo, flaveo, meio,
Irascor, sisto pro stare, renideo, vergo,
Suffero pro patior, furo, ceveo, liveo, tollo,
Polleo, nexo, fero, ferio, ambigo, mœreo, ringor,
Divertor, labo, prævertor, liquet, atque revertor,
Diffiteor, vescor, medeor, liquor, reminiscor,
Glabreo, comperior ², quibus adjice fido creata,
Et passiva, quibus caruere activa supinis;
Inceptiva in sco ³, meditativa omnia præter
Hæc tria nupturio, cum parturio, esuriôque.

His tamen interdum perfecta aliunde petuntur;
Sustuli enim sibi tollo, tuli fero mutuò sumit,
Sumque fui, sedi fido sata, meio minxi,
Et verti ipsa supra tria nata ex vertor adoptant.
Sic possunt vescor, medeor, liquor, reminiscor
Præteritum a pascor, medicor, liquefio, recordor.

Verba Supinum rarè admittentia.

Hæc rarè aut nunquam retinebunt verba supinum;
Prodigo, lambo, mico, morior, scabo, clango, refello,
Dispesco, posco, disco, compesco, quinisco,
Dego, ango ^{*}, batuo, fremo, respuo, ningo, rudo, ante-
Cello, volo, psallo, satago, algeo ⁴, strideo, strido,
Fulgeo, disto, timet, paveo, conniveo, fervet,
Incesso, sapio, nata a nuo, & a cado, præter
Occido, quod facit occasum, recidôque recasum;

² Considerunt, Liv.

³ Comperior compertus, at mutatur præteritum sæpius a comperio.

⁴ Inceptiva in Sco.] Namque quæ non derivantur ab aliis verbis, sed a numinibus, & non habentia Præteritum unde accipiant præteritum, carent præterito; ut pascas a puer, hivesco a sylva,

&c. At verò ea inceptiva, quæ a verbis prosuunt, sumunt præteritum a suis primitivis, ut tepesco a tepes, fervesco a fervo.

^{*} Sugo & lingo, ut habent vulgata, suctum & lictum tribuit Voss. unde suctus Plin.

⁴ Algeo olim sum a quo alius, Cic. Alsiotus, Plin.

Respuo,

Respuo, sterto, gruo, metuo, urgeo, turgeo, calveo,
Luceo, cæcutio, *simplex* linquo, arceo *simplex*,
Frigeo, depso, cluo, clepo, ineptio, gessio, lugeo,
Et quæcunque in uî formantur neutra secundæ.

Excipias oleo, doleo, placeo, taceoque,
Pareo, item careo, noceo, valeo, calcôque,
Et simplex lateo ; gaudent hæc namque supino.

N. B. Multa sunt verba quibus vulgò Supina dantur, quæ tamen Supinis prorsus carent, aut hæc apud Auctores parùm idoneos reperienda sunt. Consule igitur catalogum sequentem.

I. SUPINE *um.*

Accersitum,	Plaut. Sti. 1. 2.	flagitatum,	Cic. Or. 3.
Accusatum,	Ter. P. 2. 2. 13.	frumentatum,	Cæs. b. 9. 6.
adjutum,	Plaut. Cas. 3. 3. 13.	furatum,	Pl. Trin. 4. 2. 22.
admonitum,	Cic. Or. 3. 17.	Gratulatum,	Liv. d. 5. 5.
Ambulatum,	Plaut. Mil. 2. 2. 96.	Habitatum,	Pl. Cist. 2. 3.
auditum,	Hor. 2. 2. 67.	Indicatum,	Liv. d. 5. 4.
Bellatum,	Nep. Han. 1.	inquisitum,	Liv. d. 5. 2.
Cacatum,	Hor. Sat. 1. 8. 38.	irrisum,	Pl. Amph. 2. 1. 40.
cantatum,	Ter. Eu. 3. 1. 53.	Lavatum,	Pl. Adu. 3. 6. 42.
captatum,	Plaut. Pæn.	laetum,	Pl. Stich. 4. 2.
castigatum,	Pl. Trin. 1. 2. 179.	lignatum,	Liv. d. 3. 5.
cautum,	Liv. Dec. 1. 2.	Mercatum,	Pl. Mer. 1. 1. 82.
comessatum,	Liv. 4. d. 10.	missum,	Hor. Sat. 1. 8. 38.
confabulatum,	Ter. Hec. 1. 2.	militatum,	Ter. Hea. 1. 1. 65.
106.		Natatum,	Cic. Fam. 9. 2.
consultum,	Pl. Bac. 3. 6. 56.	nuptum,	Pl. Aul. 2. 3. 4.
conquitatum,	Pl. Aul. 3. 1. 3.	Obambulatum,	Pl. Tri. 2. 2. 34.
criminatum,	Liv. d. 1. 2.	obsonatum,	Pl. Cas. 1. 8.
Deambulatum,	Ter. Heu. 3. 3.	oppugnatum,	Liv. d. 1. 2.
26.		oratum,	Cic. in l. Pise
defensum,	Nep. Han. 5.	Pabulatum,	Liv. d. 3. 5.
deprecatum,	Cic. de Am.	percontatum,	Ter. Pb. 2. 3. 22.
depressum,	Pl. Cliss. 1. 1. 39.	petitum,	Liv. d. 1. 1.
depromptum,	Pl. Trin. 4. 2.	piscatum,	Pl. Rud. 4. 1. 7.
derisum,	Pl. Aul. 2. 2. 46.	ploratum,	Cic. Fam. 9. 2.
discubitum,	Mer. 1. 1. 90.	postulatum,	Cæs. b. 9. 1.
dormitum,	Cic. Fam. 9. 26.	possessum,	Juss. 28.
Ereptum,	Ter. Eun. 4. 6. 13.	potatum,	Pl. Pseud. 5. 2. 28.
esum,	Pl. Cur. 2. 1. 13.	prædatum,	Liv. d. 1. 1.
extentatum,	Pl. Moss. 3. 1. 66.	præreptum,	Pl. Cas. 1. 1. 14.
exploratum,	Liv. d. 1. 7.	precatum,	Liv. d. 1. 8.
expugnatum,	Juss. 13.	Quæsitatum,	Pl. Merc. 5. 2. 16.
exquisitum,	Pl. Sti. 1. 2. 50.	quæsitum,	Pl. Pan. 3. 1. 58.
exsulatum,	Liv. d. 1. 1.	questum,	Liv. d. 1. 3.
Fagulatatum,	Sil. It. 2.	Recuperatum,	Juss. 13.
		F 3	repe-

repetitum,	<i>Liv. d. 1. 3.</i>	sedatum,	<i>Pl. Cur. 1. 2. 23.</i>
rogatum,	<i>Cas. b. 9. 1.</i>	spectatum,	<i>Val. Max. 11. 1.</i>
salutatum,	<i>Cic. pro S. Rosc.</i>	speculatum,	<i>Liv. d. 1. 4.</i>
sciscitatum,	<i>Cell. 12. 13.</i>	supplicatum,	<i>Liv. d. 1. 3.</i>
servitum,	<i>Vir. Æn. 2. 786.</i>	Tentatum,	<i>Ter. Phor. 2. 2. 41.</i>
sessum,	<i>Cic. de Or. 3.</i>	Vapulatum,	<i>Pl. Aut. 3. 3. 9.</i>
scitatum,	<i>Vir. Æn. 2. 114.</i>	venatum,	<i>Liv. d. 1. 1.</i>

Used with ire and iri.

I R E.

Coctum,	<i>Pl. Aut. 2. 4. 46.</i>	direptum,	<i>Cic. Frat. 8.</i>
Cubitum,	<i>Pl. Cas. 4. 4.</i>	ductum,	<i>Cas. b. 9. 104. 1.</i>
Dejectum,	<i>Hor. Od. 1. 2. 15.</i>	Exceptum,	<i>Cic. Att. 7. 22.</i>
deterfum,	<i>Claud. Eutrop. 2.</i>	excusatum,	<i>Cic. de Amic.</i>
Emptum,	<i>Ter. Pho. 5. 5. 10.</i>	Factum,	<i>Cic. Fam. 6. 6.</i>
Opitulatum,	<i>Pl. Mil. 3. 1.</i>	Jugulatum,	<i>Cic. Att. 1. 16.</i>
Pastum,	<i>Pl. Pers. 2. 5. 17.</i>	Læsum,	<i>Cic. Fam. 5. 1.</i>
perditum,	<i>Liv. d. 4. 9.</i>	Negatum,	<i>Liv. d. 1. 2.</i>
sacrificatum,	<i>Pl. Pam. 1. 2. 107.</i>	nocitum,	<i>Cas. b. 9. 5.</i>
Ultum, — <i>Anson.</i>		Obstructum,	<i>Juss. 38.</i>
		occisum,	<i>Cic. Att. 4. 3.</i>
		Perlatum,	<i>Cic. Fam. 1. 3.</i>
		perturbatum,	<i>Cic. Iro. 2.</i>
		præpositum,	<i>Ter. Eun. 1. 2. 59.</i>
		probatum,	<i>Cic. Att. 13. 25.</i>
		provogatum,	<i>Cic. 2. Att. 6.</i>
		Redditum,	<i>Cic. Att. 7. 1.</i>
		rejeetum,	<i>Cic. Att. 1. 18.</i>
		rescitum,	<i>Ter. Ad. 1. 1. 45.</i>
		Spoliatum,	<i>Cas. b. 9. 7. 65.</i>
		sublatum,	<i>Liv. d. 1. 3.</i>
		Traditum,	<i>Liv. d. 1. 3.</i>
		Vilum,	<i>Cic. in Ver. 4.</i>
		violatum,	<i>Cic. 2. 20.</i>

I R I.

Absolutum,	<i>Cic. Att. 4. 16.</i>		
actum,	<i>Cic. ad Fra. 2.</i>		
a'jugtum,	<i>Cic. f. 15. 15.</i>		
admissum,	<i>Liv. d. 1. 3.</i>		
assignatum,	<i>Cic. F. 10. 18.</i>		
attractum,	<i>Cic. Att. 101.</i>		
Comprobatum,	<i>Cic. Att. 16. 14.</i>		
Damnatum,	<i>Quint. 9. 2.</i>		
datum,	<i>Cas. b. 9. 104. 1.</i>		
debellatum,	<i>Liv. d. 3. 9.</i>		
decretum,	<i>Cic. Att. 15. 9.</i>		
dicatum,	<i>Liv. d. 1. 1.</i>		

II. SUPINE, u.

Aggressu,	<i>Pl. Pers. 4. 4. 10.</i>	migratu,	<i>Liv. d. 1. 10.</i>
additu,	<i>Hirt. Bel. Afr. 5.</i>	miratu,	<i>Sen. Ep. 94.</i>
Cognitu,	<i>Cic. Her. 1.</i>	moderatu,	<i>Liv. d. 1. 1.</i>
col'ectu,	<i>Plin. 12. 19.</i>	Neglectu,	<i>Ter. Hean. 2. 3.</i>
Defensu,	<i>Sall. Hist. 3.</i>	Opinatu,	<i>Plin. 19. 1.</i>
dictu,	<i>Plin. 28. 8.</i>	Perpessu,	<i>Cic. de Fin. 4.</i>
decussu,	<i>Plin. 11. 37.</i>	petitu,	<i>Claud. de Mal. Theod.</i>
Enarratu,	<i>Plin. 2. 93.</i>	portatu,	<i>Plin. 14. 3.</i>
existimatu,	<i>Liv. d. 3. 3.</i>	precatu,	<i>Stat. Tb. 11. 103.</i>
expurgatu,	<i>Ter. Hec. 2. 3.</i>	probatu,	<i>Cic. Tusc. 5.</i>
Factu,	<i>Cic. Fam. 7. 3.</i>	purgatu,	<i>Plin. 27. 12.</i>
fatu, <i>Sen. Aga. 3.</i>	<i>Virg. Æ. 12.</i>	Relatu,	<i>Qu. Met. 15. 298.</i>
Imitatu,	<i>Val. Max. 4. 6.</i>	Scitu,	<i>Ter. Hec. 3. 1. 15.</i>
intellectu,	<i>Cic. Her. 4.</i>	Toleratu,	<i>Cic. de Fin. 4.</i>
iuventu,	<i>Plin. 2. 46.</i>	trastatu,	<i>Cic. Her. 2.</i>
Memoratu,	<i>Liv. 4. 8.</i>		

SYNTAXIS.

Erasmiana explicatio.

Concordantia prima.

1. **V**ERBUM personale concordat cum nominativo numero et persona: ut,

Omnia vincit amor——*Labor improbus omnia vincit.* Virg.

2. Nominativus pronominum raro exprimitur: ut, *veni, vidi, vici*, Cæf. *Ita aiunt; ita fertur; ita prædicant.* Ter. Nisi distinctionis, aut emphasis gratiâ; ut,

Quamvis ille niger, quamvis tu candidus esses. Virg.

Tu dominus, tu vir, tu mihi frater eras. Ov.

- Aliquando verbum infinitum, aliquando oratio, aliquando adverbium cum genitivo, stat loco nominativi: ut,

Non est mentiri meum. Ter.

Ingenuas didicisse fideliter artes emollit mores. Ov.

Partim virorum ceciderunt in bello, i. e. quod ad partem.

1. The vocative (which is always of the second person) agrees also with the verb; unless you choose rather to understand *tu* and *vos*; as, —*Xantho, retro propera, versa'que recurrite lymphæ.* Ov.

2. The nominative, when it respects *man* or *men*, is seldom expressed before such verbs as these, *est, fertur, dicunt, ferunt, aiunt, prædicant, clāmant, tradunt*, &c. where *homo* or *homines* is understood: nor is it usually expressed before these neuters, viz. *pluit, fulminat, ningit, byemat, dissēnat*, &c. where *cælum* or *aer* seems to be understood. *N. B.* Neuter verbs are sometimes used in the third person singular with a nominative: as, *Nunc tertia vivitur ætas,* Ov.

The verb substantive is sometimes left out: as,

Rari quippe boni. Juv. i. e. *sunt.*

Exceptiones.

1. Verba infiniti modi pro nominativo accusativum ante se statuunt, omiſſâ conjunctione *quod* vel *ut*: ut,

Vivere me dices——*Nec me suasse negabo.* Ov.

Vincant, quos vincere mavis. Virg.

2. Verbum inter duos nominativos diversorum numerorum positum cum alterutro concordare potest: ut,

Vestes lana fuit——*Pectus quoque robora fiunt.* Ov.

3. Nomen multitudinis singulare quandoque verbo (vel *adjectivo*) plurali jungitur; idque etiam in diverso genere: ut,

Rustica turba vetant. Id. Pars et certare parati. Virg.

4. Duo vel plura singularia pro plurali habentur: ut,
Troja simul Priamusque cadunt. Ov.
Fugere pudor, verumque fidesque. Id.

1. This infinitive mood is resolvable by *quod* and *ut*; but not indifferently: For in this case, *quod* signifies the reason why; and is generally spoken of a thing done and past: as, *Quod tu redisti incolumis gaudeo.*—Whereas, *ut* implies the end for which, and respects what is future: as, *Paupertas impulit audax ut versus facerem: Hor.* After verbs of asking and commanding: as, *Peto, jubeo*; after those that imply Will or Affection: as, *Volo, curo, laboro, moneo, &c.* and after those that signify an Event: as, *Fit, evenit, accidit, contingit, &c.* Likewise after those that signify Expediency, Fitness, and the contrary, 'Tis usually changed by *ut* and a subjunctive.

This Resolution of the Infinitive likewise, after verbs of doubting, is generally made by *quin*: as, *Non dubito quin pater jusserit.*

Without *non*, it may be expounded by *an*; as, *Dubito an pater jusserit.* After verbs of fearing 'tis sometimes resolved by *ne*: as, *Timeo ne pater rure redierit.* Lastly 'tis resolvable (though very rarely) by *cum*: as, *Gratulor tibi, cum tantum vales apud Dolabellam. Cic.* Perhaps it may not be amiss to subjoin here, that *fore* may be elegantly expressed with *ut*, after such verbs as these, *spero, puto, suspicor, dico, affirmo, &c.* as, *Spero fore, ut contingat id vobis—Spero fore ut venias.* But after these verbs, *Volo, nolo, malo, rogo, jubeo, precor, censeo, suadeo, licet, oportet, necesse est*, and the like; also after these Imperatives, *Sine, fac, facito*, the conjunction *ut* is elegantly omitted: as, *Cave facias. Cic.*

2. A verb thus placed, between two nominatives, for the most part agrees with the principal, or that which is the subject of the discourse: as, *Omnia Caesar erat. Luc. Sanguis erant lacrymæ. Id.*

3. This structure is called *Synesis*, which respects the *sense*, not the words, and is applicable to all the three Concords. In the example above, the verb *vetant* is of the plural number, because *turba*, in *sense*, is plural; and *parati* is of the masculine gender, because 'tis spoken of men. So in that of Horace, *Daret ut catenis fatale monstrum, quæ generosius perire quærens—Fatale monstrum* is spoken of a woman, and therefore the relative *quæ* is of the feminine gender.

4. But this is not always observed either in verbs or adjectives; especially if the *sense* of the two nominatives is pretty near the same: as, *Vita fidesque inculcata fuit. Ov. Quantum cura laborque potest. Mart.* If one of the two singulars is expressed in the ablative with the preposition *cum*, the verb or adjective is sometimes (tho' rarely) put in the plural number: as,

Remo cum fratre Quirinus jura dabunt. Virg.
Ilia cum Laujo de Numitore sati. Ov.

Concordantia secunda.

ADJECTIVUM cum substantivo genere, numero, et casu concordat: ut,
Torva læna lupum sequitur, lupus ipse capellam,
Florentem cytisum sequitur lasciva capella. Virg.

N. B. An adjective respecting two substantives may agree with the latter, as well as the former: as, *Non omnis error stultitia est dicenda.* Cic. Sometimes the substantive is understood: as, *Perfundit gelidâ,* i. e. *aquâ.* *Quod Thebæ cecidère meum est.* i. e. *opus.* An adjective of the neuter gender instead of agreeing with the substantive expressed, is sometimes referred to one understood of the same gender with itself: as, *Triste lupus stabulis.* Virg. *Varium & mutabile semper femina.* Id. Here *animal* or *negotium* seems to be left out.—But this is a most elegant *ellipsis*, and far more expressive than the regular construction.

An adjective is sometimes put in the plural number by the figure *Prolepsis*, when two persons are implied, though but one expressed: as,
Alterum in alterius mactatos sanguine cernam! Virg.

When two adjectives are used together, the one is sometimes considered as a substantive: as, *Tranquilla per alta.* Virg. *Denso pingui.* Id. and so *vice versâ*: as, *Victorisque arma Quirini.* Id. *Hinc populum laud regem.* Id.

Sometimes two adjectives singular will have a substantive plural: as,

Magna minorque fera, Ov.

And sometimes two adjectives are used as one: as,

Purus-putus sycophanta. Plaut.

Absent nobis -- præsent nobis, and the like, are antiquated expressions, and not to be imitated.

Concordantia tertia.

1. RELATIVUM cum antecedente concordat genere, numero, et personâ: ut,

O! Diva, gratum quæ regis Antium. Hor.

Nec unica vox solum sed interdum oratio ponitur pro antecedente: ut,

In tempore veni, quod omnium rerum est primum. Ter.

Relativum inter duo substantiva diversorum generum collocatum nunc cum priore, nunc cum posteriore concordat: ut,

Stella, quæ Phaëthon dicitur. Cic.

Gloria, qui est fructus virtutis. Id.

Aliquando relativum concordat cum primitivo, quod in possessivo subauditur: ut,

Nec mea verba legis, qui sum summotus ad Istrum. Ov.

Quoties nullus nominativus interponitur inter relativum et verbum, relativum erit verbo nominativus: ut,

Hi sunt, qui trepidant, et ad omnia fulgura pallent. Juv.

At si nominativus relativo et verbo interponatur, relativum regitur a verbo, aut ab aliâ dictione, quæ cum verbo in oratione locatur: ut,

Gramen erat circâ, quod proximus humor alebat. Ov.

Arma, quibus latatus, babe tua. Virg.

Cujus nomen amo — Quorum fuit unus Echion. Ov.

Cui similem vidi — Quibus omnia cedere debent. Id.

Quem mors non terret — Quos est mirata juventa. Virg.

Interrogativum et ejus redditivum ejusdem casus et temporis erunt: ut,

Quem librum legis? Virgilium.

Quid agitur in theatro? Ridetur.

2. Fallit hæc regula, cum per possessiva, meus, tuus, suus, &c. respondendum est: ut,

Cujus est hic codex? Meus.

1. This properly speaking is no new concord, for were the antecedent substantive to be repeated with the relative, it would always appear in the same case with it. *N. B.* The antecedent is sometimes elegantly omitted: as,

Sunt, qui non habeant, est, qui non curet habere. Hor. i. e. sunt ii homines.

But if it be expressed again with the relative, 'tis always put in the same case: as,

Populo ut placerent, quas fecisset fabulas. Ter.

i. e. Ut fabulæ, quas fabulas fecisset.

Urbem quam statuo, vestra est. Virg.

i. e. Ea urbs, quam urbem statuo, &c. In that of Terence, *ubi est ille scelus, qui me perdidit?* *Scelus* is used for *scelus* (though somewhat more expressive) to which *qui* refers.

Sometimes the relative agrees with a word naturally implied in the meaning of a sentence, or else included in the sense of the verb: as,

Carne pluit, quem imbrem, &c. Liv.

Alii conjuravere, de quâ (conjurations) &c. Sall.

Lastly the relative and antecedent are sometimes put in the same case, in imitation of the Greeks: as,

Resitue in quam me accepisti locum. Ter.

2. This rule is said likewise to fail, whenever the question is made by *cujus*, *cujus*, *cujum*: as, *Cujum pecus? Laniorum.* Tho' here *pecus* is plainly understood. Or by a word that hath different constructions: as,

Quis furti accusat? Quis stupri? Nullus utroque, or de utroque.

But here *crimine* is understood before *furti* in the question, with which *utroque* in the answer agrees.

Regimen Substantivorum.

QUUM duo substantiva diversarum rerum concurrunt, posterius in genitivo ponitur: ut,

Crescit amor nummi. Juv. *Custos es pauperis horti.* Virg.

1. Hic genitivus sæpissime in adjectivum possessivum vertitur: ut,

Patris domus——v. *Paterna domus.*

Heri filius ——v. *Herilis filius.*

2. Est etiam ubi in dativum eleganter vertitur: ut,

Urbi pater est, urbiq; maritus. Luc.

3. Duo substantiva ejusdem rei in eodem casu per appositionem connectuntur: ut,

Effodiuntur opes irritamenta malorum. Ov.

Adjectivum in neutro genere substantivè positum, aliquando genitivum postulat: ut,

Hic laudis minimum est—Tantum trahit ille timoris. Ov.

Ferimur per opaca viarum. Virg.

Ponitur interdum genitivus tantum, priore substantivo per ellipsin subaudito: ut,

Ventum erat ad Veste, subauditur *templum.* Hor.

Hectoris Andromache, subauditur *uxor.* Virg.

4. Laus et vituperium, vel potius *qualitas* rei, apponitur substantivis in genitivo, vel ablativo: ut,

Homo maximi corporis, terribilique facie. Nep.

Causa & modus rei apponitur etiam substantivis in ablativo: ut,

Naturâ tu illi pater es, consiliis ego. Ter.

Sunt quidam homines non re, sed nomine. Cic.

5. Opus et usus ablativum exigunt: ut,

Non gladiis opus est, opus est mihi crine paterno. Ov.

Nunc viribus usus, Nunc manibus rapidis. Virg.

6. Opus autem adjectivè pro necessariis quandoque poni videtur, varièque construitur: ut,

Dux nobis et auctor opus est. Cic.

Dices nummos mihi opus esse. Id.

Alia, quæ opus sunt, para. Ter.

Quod parato opus est, para. Id.

1. Sometimes the governing word, and the governed change place; as in that of Cæsar: *Sex dies spatii*, for *spatium sex dierum*.

When the latter substantive expresses the *matter*, or what the former is made out of, it must be rendered by an adjective, or an ablative with *e*, *de*, *ex*: as, *Poculum aureum*, vel *ex auro* — *Templum marmoreum*, vel *de marmore*. Also if it be the proper name of a place; it must be turned by an adjective: as, *Plato Atheniensis*, *Civis Atticus*; except when the first signifies the *possessor* of that place: as, *Rex Angliæ*. There are some substantives likewise that admit either of a genitive, or an ablative with *de*: as, *Cartamen gloriæ*, vel *de gloriâ*.

2. But here the verb in some measure affects the dative case.

3. Yet Tully says, in *oppido Antiochiæ*, and Virg. *Fontem superare Timævi*.

4. In this sense the verb *sum* too will have an ablative, or a genitive: as, *Bono sis animo* — *Vive memor quam sis ævi brevis*. Hor. But whether it be best to use the genitive or ablative, the usage of authors only must determine; for it is far from being indifferent.

5. Both *opus* and *usus* are found with an accusative: as,

Quid isti suppositum puerum opus? Plaut.

Ad eam rem usus est hominem astutum. Id.

Opus is also found with a genitive: as, *Casus inest illic*, *hic erit artis opus*. Ov.

6. The word *opus* here doth not seem to import what is strictly necessary, but what ought to be, or is useful, convenient, and requisite to be done.

Regimen Adjectivorum.

Genitivus post Adjectivum.

1. **A**DJECTIVA, quæ desiderium, notitiam, memoriam, (Item *curam*, *timorem*, *innocentiam*) atque iis contraria significant, genitivum exigunt; ut,

Lucri avidus. — *Prudens rerum* — *Memor illius escæ*. Hor.

Prodigus est æris — *Belli rudis* — *Immemor artis*. Id.

Compos, *impos*, *consors*, *exsors*, *potens*, *impotens*, aliâque, quæ quodammodo nominum naturam induunt, genitivum post se recipiunt: ut,

Compos mentis erat — *Consors patriæ que lyæ que*. Ov.

Dî maris et terræ, tempestatumque potentes. Virg.

Participes operum compellat Hyantius. Ov.

2. Adjectiva verbalia in *ax* plerumque genitivum exigunt: ut,

Tempus edax rerum — Ov.

3. Nomina partitiva, aut partitivè posita, interrogativa, et quædam numeralia; item comparativa et superlativa, accepta partitivè, genitivum, a quo et genus ferè mutuantur, exigunt: ut,

Quisquis fuit ille deorum. Ov.

Sequimur te, sancte deorum. Virg.

Uter est insanius horum? Hor.

Reddidit una boum vocem. Virg.

O major juvenum—Magnorum maxima regum. Hor.

4. *Usurpantur autem et cum his præpositionibus, de, ex, inter, ante: ut,*

E quibus unus ait—De tot modo fratribus unus. Ov.

Inter Avernales haud ignotissima nymphas. Id.

Scelere ante alios immanior omnes. Virg.

Ante alios pulcherrimus omnes. Id.

Ordinalia etiam in alio sensu ablativum cum præpositione exigunt; et secundus aliquando dativum: ut,

Primus ab Æneâ—Heros ab Achille secundus. Hor.

Haud ulli veterum virtute secundus. Virg.

Item: proximus a primo—Tu nunceris alter ab illo. Virg.

1. Adjectives of desire with their contraries are, *Avarus, avidus, parcus, modicus, cupidus, patiens, properus, studiosus, æmulus, insatiabilis, fastidiosus, fessus, lassus, &c.* — *Prodigus, largus, immodicus, impatiens, munificus, liberalis, benignus, &c.*

Those of knowledge and ignorance are, *Peritus, doctus, gnarus, præsciens, conscius, præseus, prudens, certus, providus, memor, particeps, &c.* — *Imperitus, ignarus, inscius, insolens, nescius, imprudens, incertus, improvidus, dubius, exspect, devius, rudis, cæcus, immemor, infrequens, &c.* — To which may be added these following, *Reus, manifestus, compertus, popularis, ambiguus, noxius, innoxius, insons, purus, integer, &c.*

Those of care and carelessness are, *Anxius, sollicitus, impiger, curiosus—Segnis, securus, serus, secors, incautus, incuriosus, inglorius, &c.*

Those of fear and intrepidity are, *Timidus, trepidus, pavidus, degener.* — *Interritus, fidens, impavidus, invictus, ferax, præstans, præceps, &c.*

2. Such are, *Tenax, sagax, edax, fugax, pervicax, petax, pug-nax, &c.*

3. Such are, *Alius, aliquis, alter, alteruter, nemo, nullus, uter, nov-ter, quicunque, quidam, quilibet, quisque, quivis, quispiam, quisquam, quisque, solus, ullus, unusquisque, uterque, uterunque, uterlibet, uterque, quis, equis, primus, medius, ultimus, &c.* To which may be added, *ambo, complures, frequentes, multi, pauci.*

N. B. When there are two substantives of different genders, the partitive noun rather agrees with the first than the last: as,

Indus fluminum maximus. Cic.

Partitives also take after them the genitive singular of collective nouns, and do not necessarily agree with them in gender: as,

Præstantissimus nostræ civitatis. Cic.

4. *Præter, super, and præ* are sometimes used: as, *præ ceteris mi-tior.*

Dativus post Adjectivum.

2. **A**DJECTIVA, quibus commodum, incommodum, similitudo, dissimilitudo, voluptas, submissio, aut relatio ad aliquid significatur, dativum postulant: ut,

Ventus erat nautis aptus, non aptus amanti. Ov.

Turba gravis paci, placidaque inimica quieti. Mart.

Sic canibus catuli similes, sic matribus hædi. Virg.

Qui color albus erat, nunc est contrarius albo. Ov.

Gratum opus agricolis—Supplex tibi proximus urbi. Juv.

Huc referuntur nomina ex *con* præpositione composita: ut, *contubernalis, commilito, censerius, cognatus, &c.*

Quædam ex his etiam genitivo junguntur: ut,

Regina tui fidiſſima. Virg.

Quem metuis par hujus erat. Lucan.

2. *Communis, alienus, immunis, et alia non pauca, variis casibus junguntur: ut,*

Hoc tecum commune Deo. Ov.

Commune animantium omnium est,

Ambitionis, v. ambitioni, v. ab ambitione alienus est.

Illorum malorum, v. illis malis. v. ab illis malis immunes sumus.

3. *Natus, commodus, incommodus, utilis, inutilis, vehementis, aptus, &c.* interdum etiam accusativo junguntur cum præpositione *ad*: ut,

Natus ad arma, Ov. *Ad cursum commoda vestis,* Id.

Ad nutus aptus heriles, Hor.

Verbalia in *-bilis*, accepta passivè, et participialia in *-dus* dativum postulant: ut,

Multis ille bonis febilis occidit,

Nulli febilior, quam tibi, Virgili. Hor.

O! mihi post nullos, Julii, memorande sodales, Ov.

1. Great are the number of adjectives belonging to this rule; the chief of which here follow.

Those of advantage or disadvantage are, *Commodus, utilis, secundus, bonus, felix, prosper, salubris, salutaris, beneficus, &c.* — *Incommodus, inutilis, malus, infelix, inbeneficus, noxius, exitialis, perniciosus, calamitosus, letalis, pestifer, damnosus, periculosus, sinister, &c.*

Of likeness and unlikeness—*Similis, affinis, concolor, consors, &c.* *Dissimilis, alienus, contrarius, diversus, discolor, discors, &c.*

Of pleasure and pain—*Dulcis, gratus, acceptus, affabilis, jucundus, letus, delectabilis, &c.*—*Amarus, acerbus, asper, ingratus, injucundus, molestus, gravis, &c.*

Of submission and resistance.—*Submissus, supplex, obnoxius, morigerus, &c.* *Rebellis, immerigerus, contumax, &c.*

Of faithfulness and unfaithfulness.—*Fidelis, fidus*—*Infidelis, infidus, perfidus, suspectus, &c.*

Of fitness and unfitness.—*Aptus, congruus, idoneus, promptus, conveniens, decorus, accommodus, accommodatus, appositus, habilis, opportunus, proclivis, pronus, &c.*—*Ineptus, incongruus, absurdus, &c.*

Of favour and friendship.—Hatred and enmity.—*Amicus, benignus, blandus, benevolus, carus, dilectus, familiaris, socius, propitius, præsens, —Inimicus, adversus, insensus, offensus, odiosus, invidus, infociabilis, &c.*

Of easiness and difficulty.—*Facilis, manifestus, apertus, obvius, pervius, notus, perspicuus, &c.* *Difficilis, durus, invidus, laboriosus, ignotus, obscurus, dubius, &c.*

Of equality and inequality.—*Æqualis, æquus, consentaneus, par, suppar, coævus, &c.*—*Vicinus, finitimus, consinis, conteminius, contiguus, propior, proximus, citimus, intimus, propinquus, cognatus, conjunctus, &c.*

2. <i>Æqualis</i>	<i>meus, ejus, mibi.</i>	<i>Contrarius</i>	<i>virtutum, Cic. ordi, Ov. inter se. Cic. illi, Hor. tui, Cic. inter se. Cic. pravi, Hor.</i>
<i>Affinis</i>	<i>alicujus culpæ, Cic. facinori. Id. ambitionis</i>	<i>Dissimilis</i>	<i>ad agrituram, Var. sermone. Plin. sermonis, Hor. literis, Cic. de te. Id.</i>
<i>Alienus</i>	<i>—oni, ab—one.</i>	<i>Docilis</i>	<i>ad, adversus, contra, juris, Cic. disciplinis, Id. ad.</i>
<i>Amicus</i>	<i>mibi, ei, meus, ejus, in, erga, aliquem.</i>	<i>Doctus</i>	<i>frugum, divisui. Id. ad intelligendum, in excogitando.</i>
<i>Assuetus</i>	<i>bellis, Ov. ad sceptrum, Sen. in jura, Liv. labore.</i>	<i>Efficax</i>	<i>cerebri, Hor. tuis, Virg. domino. Mart. frugum, Liv. domino, Hor. doctrinâ. Val. Max. secreti, Corn. Gall. —tibi, in aliquem.</i>
<i>Attentus</i>	<i>quæsitis, Hor. ad rem. Ter. vini, Hor.</i>	<i>Eruditus</i>	<i>—tibi, in aliquem.</i>
<i>Benignus</i>	<i>omnibus, in aliquem.</i>	<i>Facilis</i>	<i>frugum, Liv. domino, Hor. doctrinâ. Val. Max. secreti, Corn. Gall. —tibi, in aliquem.</i>
<i>Cognatus</i>	<i>ejus, Cic. vester, Plaut. Iulo. Sil. mibi, Hor.</i>	<i>Felix</i>	<i>frugum, Liv. domino, Hor. doctrinâ. Val. Max. secreti, Corn. Gall. —tibi, in aliquem.</i>
<i>Commodus</i>	<i>ad rem, Suet. in omnes. Ter. omnium, omnibus, mibi tecum. Cic.</i>	<i>Fertilis</i>	<i>frugum, Liv. domino, Hor. doctrinâ. Val. Max. secreti, Corn. Gall. —tibi, in aliquem.</i>
<i>Communis</i>	<i>omnium, omnibus, mibi tecum. Cic.</i>	<i>Fidus</i>	<i>frugum, Liv. domino, Hor. doctrinâ. Val. Max. secreti, Corn. Gall. —tibi, in aliquem.</i>
<i>Conscius</i>	<i>veri, Virg. facinori, Cic.</i>	<i>Finisimus</i>	<i>frugum, Liv. domino, Hor. doctrinâ. Val. Max. secreti, Corn. Gall. —tibi, in aliquem.</i>

<i>Immunis</i>	{ peccati, peccato, a peccato.	<i>Pertusus</i>	{ convivii, Plant. ignaviam. Suet.
<i>Impiger</i>	{ militia, Tac: ad laborem, Cic. in scribendo. Id.	<i>Proclivis</i>	{ sceleris, Sal. ad.
<i>Ineptus</i>	{ bello, ad bellum.	<i>Pronus</i>	{ paci. Val. Flac. ad vitia, Fab. in obsequium. Hor.
<i>Inimicus</i>	{ mihi, ei, meus, ejus.	<i>Propensus</i>	{ ad vitia, Cic. in alteram partem. Id.
<i>Insolitus</i>	{ mihi, Cic. rerum, Sall. ad laborem. Cæf.	<i>Propinquus</i>	{ meus, ejus, alicui.
<i>Insuetus</i>	{ laboris, Cæf. operi, Tibull. male audiendi. Nep.	<i>Propior</i>	{ manibus, manes, a manibus.
<i>Integer</i>	{ vitæ, Hor. a labore. Cæf.	<i>Proprius</i>	{ hominis, homini.
<i>Intentus</i>	{ paci, Luc. in me, ad.	<i>Proximus</i>	{ mihi, me, ad me, a me.
<i>Inviectus</i>	{ laboris, Tac. cursu, Ov. a labore. Cic.	<i>Reus</i>	{ audaciæ, Cic. de pecuniâ. Id. litterarum. Cic.
<i>Invidus</i>	{ laudis, Cic. virtutibus. Plin.	<i>Rudis</i>	{ ad mala, Ov. in jure civili. Cic.
<i>Libet</i>	{ religione, Cic. laborum, Hor. a delictis.	<i>Salutaris</i>	{ paucis, ad corpus.
<i>Maturus</i>	{ animi, Virg. viro, Id. ad arma, Sil. ævo. Ov.	<i>Secundus</i>	{ nulli, Virg. a rege, Hirt. ad principatum. Cic.
<i>Necessarius</i>	{ ad vitam, Cic. cognitioni, Fab. dictu. Cic.	<i>Similis</i>	{ domini, Ter. domina.
<i>Nudus</i>	{ gignentium, Sall. decore, Cic. a propinquo.	<i>Socius</i>	{ otii, Cic. oratori, Id. ad salutem, Plaut. in negotiis. Ter.
<i>Offensus</i>	{ in aliquem, Nep. mihi, Cic. damnis. Hor.	<i>Superstes</i>	{ dignitatis, dignitati.
<i>Par</i>	{ buic, bujus.	<i>Temporarius</i>	{ viro, Hor. ad navigandum. Cic.
		<i>Vicinus</i>	{ Trevici, Hor. Parti, Ov. ad pariendum. Cic.

3. To which may
be added

{ Appositus,
Docilis,
Facilis,
Habilis,
Idoneus,
Insolitus,
Opportunus,
Paratus,

{ Piger,
Præceptus,
Proclivis,
Promptus,
Pronus,
Propensus,
Tardus,
Velox,

N. B. Some of these are likewise found with the preposition *in* : as,
Vebemens in utramque partem. Ter.

Natus is used with *in* and *propter* : as,

In otia natus. Ov. *Animal propter convivium natus.* Juv:

Accusativus post Adjectivum.

1. **M**AGNITUDINIS mensura subjicitur adjectivis in accusativo, interdum in ablativo, interdum etiam in genitivo ; ut,

Turris centum pedes alta.

Fons latus pedibus tribus. Colum.

Area lata pedum denum.

Nomen partis affectæ subjicitur adjectivis in accusativo, interdum in ablativo, interdum etiam in genitivo: ut,

Os humerosque deo similis. Virg.

Tum breviter Dido vultum demissa profatur. Id.

Crine ruber, niger ore, brevis pede, lumine læsus. Mart.

Infelix animi, Virg. *Felix, Bollane, cerebri.* Hor.

1. These adjectives are, *Longus, latus, altus, profundus, crassus, densus, &c.* The preposition *ad* is sometimes expressed.

Ablativus post Adjectivum.

1. **A**DJECTIVA, quæ ad copiam, aut inopiam pertinent, vel ablativo, vel genitivo gaudent : ut,

Terra ferax Cereris, multoque feracior uvæ. Ov.

Dives agris, Hor. *Dives pictæ vestis et auri.* Virg.

Nudus agris. Hor. *Nudus arboris Othrys erat.* Ov.

Luminis orba parens, Ov. *Puerique parentibus orbi,* Virg.

Fabula plena joci, plena sit uva mero, Ov.

Adjectiva regunt ablativum, significantem instrumentum, causam, et modum rei, ut,

Insignis pharetrâ. Hor. *Jaculoque insignis Acastus.* Ov.

Vulnere tardus equi, fessusque senilibus annis. Id.

Ora modis attollens pallida miris. Virg.

Egregius formâ. Ov.

Comparativa cum exponantur per quàm ablativum admittunt : ut,

Candidior

Candidior cycnis, boderâ formosior albâ. Ov.

Vilius argentum est auro, virtutibus aurum: Hor.

id est, *quam aurum, quam virtutes.*

Comparativa et superlativa admittunt etiam ablativum, qui mensuram excessûs significat: ut,

Id multo tute ipse fateri majus. Virg.

Quo plus habent, eo plus cupiunt, Just.

Quanto dux milite major,

Tanto minor est tua gloria nostrâ. Ov.

Tanto pessimus omnium pœta,

Quanto tu optimus omnium patronus, Catul.

2. *Dignus, indignus, prœditus, captus, extorris, contentus, fretus*, (item adjectiva, quæ pretium significant) ablativum exigunt: ut,

Dignus laude puer—Nostro haud indignus honore. Cic.

Prœditus ingenio.—Lumine captus erat. Ov.

Finibus extorris. Virg. Contentus vivere parvo. Tib.

Queis ego fretus amo. Prop. Gemmis venale nec auro. Hor.

Horum nonnulla interdum genitivum admittunt: ut,

Carmina digna deæ—Magnorum indignus avorum. Virg.

Extorris regni. Stat.

1. Adjectives of plenty and want are—*Onustus, satur, fecundus, plenus, nimius, locuples, dives, opulentus, gravidus, fertilis, sœtus, mœtus, &c. Inanis, jejunus, orbis, viduus, nudus, egenus, indigus, inops, pauper, vacuus, cassus, liber, immunis, sterilis, expertus, degener, &c.* But tis not quite indifferent whether of these two cases is made use of, for some of those adjectives are oftner found with one than the other, and sometimes with one case only.

2. The prepositions, *a, ab, ex*, are sometimes expressed with this ablative, so *dignus pro laude*, Hor. *Extorris ab solo*. Liv. *Fretus ab urbe*. Propert. and *contentus equorum*. Curt.

De Pronominibus.

MEI, tui, sui, nostri, vestri, genitivi primitivorum, ponuntur, cum persona significatur: ut,

Uror amore mei. Ov. Imago nostri.

Meus, tuus, suus, noster, vester, ponuntur, cum actio vel possessio rei significatur: ut,

Amor meus—Imago nostra: i. e. quam nos possidemus.

Nostrum et vestrum genitivi sequuntur nomina partitiva: ut,

Nemo nostrum—Major vestrum. Maximus natu nostrum.

Hæc

Hæc possessiva *unus, tuus, suus, noster, vester*, hos genitivos post se recipiant; *ipsum, solius, unius, duorum, trium, &c. omnium, plurium, paucorum, cujusque*, & genitivos participiorum, qui ad primitivum subauditum referuntur: ut,

Meâ unius operâ salva est respublica. Cic.

Meum solius peccatum corrigi non potest. Id.

Noster duorum eventus. Liv.

Vestris paucorum respondet laudibus, Cic.

Nostros vidisti stentis ocellos Ov. i. e. mei.

1. *Sui* et *suis* reciproca sunt, hoc est, semper reflectuntur ad id, quod præcessit in eâdem oratione, aut annexâ per copulam: ut,

Non caruit ipse sibi—Ovibus sua lana decori est. Ov.

Amnes in fontes redeunt suos. Id.

Volvitur Ixion, & se sequiturque fugique. Id.

Ipse & iam omnibus personis jungi possunt: ut,

Ipse vidi—Ipsè videris—Ipsè dixit.

Idem ego—Idem tu—Idem ille.

Ille eminentiam sæpè notat, iste verò contemptum: ut,

Alexander ille magnus—Tarquinius iste superbus.

Hic et *ille* cum ad duo anteposita referuntur, *hic* ad posterius, *ille* ad prius usitatissimè referri debet: ut,

Quocunque aspicias, nihil est, nisi pontus et ær,

Nubibus hic tumidus, fluctibus ille minax. Ov.

Interdum vero *hic* ad prius, *ille* ad posterius substantivum refertur: ut,

Sic deus et virgo est; hic spe celer, illa timore. Ov.

1. When there is no danger of ambiguity, the relative *ipse* may be used instead of the reciprocal: as,

Omnes boni, quantum in ipsis fuit, Cæsarem occiderunt, Cic.

N. B. If a nominative or an accusative case go before *inter*, use the reciprocal *sui* after it: as, *Fratres gemini inter se*. If any other case, *ipse* or *sui* may be used. Sometimes *sui* and *ipse* refer to the same substantive.

Regimen Verborum.

Nominativus post Verbum.

1. **V**ERBA substantiva: ut, *sum, forem, fio, existo*: verba vocandi passiva *; Item verba gestus †: utrinque nominativum exigunt: ut,

Non

Non ego sum pastor—Fit nova Cygnus avis. Ov.

Patens vocari Caesaris ultor. Hor.

At ego, quæ divum incedo regina. Virg.

Infinitum quoque utrinque eodẽ casus habet: ut,

Hypocrita cupit videri justus, vel se videri justum.

In causâ facili cuiusvis licet esse diserto. Ov.

Item vobis expedit esse bonas. Ter.

Quo mihi commisso non licet esse piam? Ov.

Sed in duobus his postremis exemplis subaudiuntur accusativi ante verba infinita: ut, *Vos esse bonas, me esse piam.*

1. But these and such like nominatives (whether substantives or adjectives) after the verb, always respect the nominative before it, and therefore are put in the same case with it. This likewise is the reason of the construction in the following rule, where the case after the infinitive mood generally respects the case before it, otherwise they will not always be the same: as,

Tibi me est æquum parere, Menalca, Virg.

Sometimes the first accusative being left out, they are followed by a nominative, especially after *aio, puto, refero*, and the like: as,

Quia retulit Ajax esse Jovis pronepos. Ov.

But this construction is somewhat harsh, and in imitation of the Greeks. Some understand the words, *Se esse Jovis pronepotem.*

* Such are, *Appellor, dicor, nominor, nuncupor, vocor, &c.* To which add, *Conseor, credor, creor, constituor, deprendor, designor, existimor, feror, habeor, invenior, judicor, nascor, numeror, perhibeor, reprior, reputor, salutor, scriber, videor, &c.* And likewise *audio*, when used in this sense: as,

Subtilis veterum iudex et callidus audis. Hor.

N. B. Most passive verbs have this construction.

† Such are, *Cubo, dormio, eo, evado, fugio, incedo, jaceo, maneo, sedeo, somnio, sto, venio, &c.*

Genitivus post Verbum.

SUM genitivum postulat, quoties significat possessionem, officium, aut ad aliquid pertinere: ut,

Pecus est Melibœi.

Pauperis est numerare pecus, Ov.

Tantæ molis erat Romanam condere gentem. Virg.

Excipiuntur hi nominativi, *meum, tuum, suum, nostrum, humanum, belluinum*, et similia: ut,

Non est benefacta malignè Detrectare meum. Ov.

Non nostrum inter vos tantas componere lites. Virg.

Humanum est errare. Sen.

r. Verba

1. Verba æstimandi genitivum postulant: ut,

Numina magni non pendeabantur, Juv.

Pluris opes nunc sunt, quam prisca temporis annis. Hor.

Flocci, nauci, nibili, pili, assis, bujus, teruncii, his verbis, æstimo, pendo, facio, peculiariter adduntur: ut,

Ego illum flocci pendo, nec bujus facio, qui me pili æstimat.

Singularia sunt ista; æqui vel boni consulo.

Æqui bonique facio. id est in bonam accipio partem.

1. Verbs of esteeming are *Æstimo* (which governs sometimes an ablative) *duco, facio, fco, habeo, liceo, pendo, puto, & sum* (when used for *æstimor* :) And the genitives usually put after these verbs are, *Magni, maximi, pluris, plurimi, parvi, minoris, minimi, tanti, tantidem, quanti, quantidem, quantiuis, quanticumque*: besides which genitive of the value, if transitive, they have an accusative of the person or thing valued. *Pro nibilo, habeo, duco, puto*, are elegant expressions.

1. Verba accusandi, damnandi, monendi, absolvendi, et similia, genitivum criminis, vel cui monitæ postulant: ut,

Hunc probri incuso—Et sceleris damnabis eundem? Hor.

Nunc precor ut vivant, admoneantque mei. Ov.

Reos absolute culpæ. Id.

Aliquando ablativum vel cum præpositione, vel sine præpositione: ut,

Purgo te hæc culpâ, vel de hæc culpâ.

Idque perpetuò in his, *uterque, nullus, alter, neuter, alius, ambo*, et in superlativo gradu: ut,

Accusas furti, an stupri? Utrouque, vel de utroque.

De plurimis simul accusaris.

Satago, misereor, et miseresco, genitivum regunt: ut,

Is rerum suarum satagit, Ter.

O virgo miserere mei, miserere meorum. Ov.

Et generis miseresce tui. Stat.

2. *Reminiscor, obliviscor, memini, recordor*, genitivum aut accusativum admittunt: ut,

Satyri reminiscitur alter—Tempus reminiscitur illud. Ov.

Sis licet oblitus pariter gemmæque manisque. Id.

Amisos hinc jam obliviscere Graios. Virg.

Quid me cogis meminisse malorum? Ov.

Hæc olim forsân meminisse juvabit. Virg.

Hujus meriti in me recordor. Cic.

Si rite audita recordor. Virg.

3. *Potior* genitivo aut ablativo jungitur: ut,

Regni

Regni vatiqne potitus. Sil.

Teucris potiuntur corpore et armis. Virg.

N. B. But potiri hostium, not hostibus.

1. Of this class are, *Accuso, ago, arcesso, anquiro, coarguo, arguo, alligo, astringo, defero, incuso, infamo, infimulo, increpo, noto, interrogo, postulo, urgeo, damno, condemno, convinco, comperio, obligo, obstringo, tenet, moneo, admoneo, commoneo, commensacio, absolvo, libero, purgo, &c.*

N. B. Verbs of warning and admonishing have always the preposition *de* before their ablative; the others are sometimes found with *de*, *ex*, *in*: but *crimine, pena, actione, capite, morte*, scarcely admit of a preposition.

2. *Memini & recordor*, instead of the genitive, have sometimes an ablative with the preposition *de*.

3. *Potior* is found also with an accusative.

Dativus post Verbum.

OMNIA verba regunt dativum ejus rei, aut personæ, cui aliquid acquiritur, vel adimitur: ut,

Hæret lateri lethalis arundo. Virg.

Quærat sibi fœdera Turnus. Id.

Quis te mihi casus ademit. Ov.

Personam capiti detrahat illa tuo. Mart.

Huic regulæ appendent varii generis verba.

1. Imprimis, verba significantia commodum, aut incommodum, regunt dativum: ut,

Ingenio faveas, Ingeniose, meo, Ov.

Forma mihi nocuit. Id. Non displicuisse meretur,

Festinat, Cæsar, qui placuisse tibi. Mart.

Invidet ipsa sibi. Ov. Juvat indulgere dolori. Id.

Si non vis puero parcere, parce seni. Id.

2. *Excipe juvo, ludo, offendo, delecto*, quæ regunt accusativum, ut,

Multos castra juvant. Hor. Sed me læsere libelli. Ov.

Nolo cœnantes offendere sordibus. Hor.

Illos delectant citharæ. Ov.

3. Verba comparandi regunt dativum: ut,

Non illi quisquam bello se conferet heras. Catull.

Sic parvis componere magna solebam. Virg.

Et se mihi comparat Ajax? Ov.

Inter.

Interdum regunt accusativum cum præpositione *ad*, et *inter*; sæpius verò ablativum cum præpositione *cum*: ut,

Si ad eum comparatur, nihil est.

Hæc non sunt inter se conferenda.

Et mecum confertur Ulysses? Ov.

4. Verba dandi & reddendi regunt dativum: ut,

Do tibi divitias. Mart. Vitæ me redde priori. Hor.

1. Such are, *proficio, prospicio, faveo, indulgeo, placeo, parco, ignosco, commodo, plaudo, auxilior, opitulor, patrocinor, medeor, medicor, gratulor, grator, adminiculor, ancillor, &c.*—*Incommodo, officio, displiceo, invidео, noceo, insidior, &c.*

2. Except likewise, *adjuvo, adjuto, invado, impugno, oppugno, prævinio*, which govern an accusative.

3. Such are, *Comparo, compono, contendo, confero, certo, æquo, adæquo, &c.*

4. Such are, *Do, dono, largior, dedo, trado, permitto, tribuo, præbeo, ministro, concedo, devoveo, suppedito, exhibeo, &c.* ————— *Reddo, refero, restituo, repono, &c.* These verbs have two cases belonging to them—What is given or restored must be always the accusative, and the other the dative.

N.B. The verb *do* is elegantly joined to the accusative case of the thing with the preposition *in*: as, *Datque animum in lucus.*

Do tibi litteras, means the giving you a letter to carry to another.

Do ad te litteras, means the giving another a letter to carry to you.

We say likewise $\left. \begin{array}{l} \text{refero,} \\ \text{mitto,} \\ \text{scribo,} \end{array} \right\} \text{tibi et ad te.}$

1. *Hæc, nempe dono, impertio, aspergo, inferno, induo, variam habent constructionem: ut,*

Dono tibi hoc munus—v. Dono te hoc munere.

Impertio tibi salutem— Impertio te salute.

Asperfit mihi labem— Asperfit me labe.

Instravit equo penulam— Instravit equum penulâ.

Indue tibi tunicam— Indue te tunicâ.

2. *Itidem consulo, metuo, timeo, formido, caveo, et quædam alia, pro variâ significatione, variam constructionem habent: ut,*

Consule, dic, pecori pariter, pecorisque magistris. Ov. To take care of.

Et piget infido consuluisse viro. Id. To give counsel.

Rectoremque ratis de cunctis consulit astris. Luc. To ask counsel.

Pessimè istuc in te, atque in illum consulis. Ter. To order or contrive.

Metuo, timeo, formido, caveo, tibi. To be in fear for.

Metuo, timeo, formido, caveo te, v. a te. To be in fear of.

Studeo cùm favere significat, regit dativum: ut,

Studuit Catilinæ Cælius. Cic.

Interdico regit dativum personæ, ablativum rei, interdum verò accusativum rei: ut,

Interdico tibi aquâ et igni. Cic.

Interdixit histrionibus scenam. Suet.

1. To which may be added,

Adulor aliquem v. alicui.

Deficio aliquem, alicui.

Desperò salutem, salutem, de salute.

Facio—Quid facias illi, illo, de illo.

Fio—Quid mihi, me, de me fiet? Sic fiet ab illis.

Incesso aliquem, alicui.

Insulto tibi te.

Lateo me, mihi.

Ludo aleam, aleâ.

Medicor aliquem, alicui.

Pluo lapides, lapidibus.

Præstolor aliquem, alicui, &c.

2. So accedo tibi, I assent.—Accedo ad te, I come to thee.

Ausculato tibi, I obey you.—Ausculat te, I hear you.

Æmulor tibi, I envy you.—Æmulor te, I imitate you.

Solvo tibi, I pay you.—Solve te, I loose you. &c.

1. Verba promittendi, ac solvendi, dativum personæ regunt: ut,

Promisit mihi vana Venus. Ov.

Absenti possit solvere vota tibi. Id.

2. Verba imperandi, ac nunciandi, regunt dativum: ut,

Imperat, heu! ventis, tumidæ non imperat iræ. Id.

Et referam pueris tempora prisca senex. Tibull.

Excipe rego, gubernò, quæ accusativum jubeo, tempero, et moderor, quæ nunc dativum, nunc accusativum; regno et dominor, quæ nunc dativum, nunc accusativum cum præpositione postulant: ut,

Luna regit menses—Orbem Deus ipse gubernat.

Jussit consulis—Dextrâque silentia jussit, Lucan.

Temperat ille sibi—Sol temperat omnia luce. Ov.

Hic moderatur equos—Qui non moderabitur iræ. Hor.

Huic urbi regnat—Solitus regnare per urbes.

Victis dominabitur Argis—In victos dominabitur Argos.

3. Verba

3. Verba misandi et irascendi regunt dativum : ut,
Multa mihi terræ, multa minantur aquæ. Ov.
Non patri irascor—Quis enim succenset amanti. Id.
4. Verba fidendi regunt dativum : ut,
O ! formosæ puer, nimium ne crede colori. Virg.
—————Qui sibi fidit,
Dux regit examen. Hor. Fortunæ cætera mando. Ov.
5. Verba obsequendi, et repugnandi, conveniendi, et discrepandi, regunt dativum : ut,
Cede deo—Ignavis precibus fortuna repugnat. Ov.
Non omnibus annis Omnia conveniunt. Gall.
—————Discordat parcus avaro. Hor.
6. At ex his quædam cum aliis casibus junguntur : ut,
Disconvenit inter mæque et te. Id.
Tu dic mecum quo pignore certes. Virg.
Noli pugnare duobus. Catull. i. e. contra duos.

1. Such are, *Promitto, polliceor, spondeo, &c. Pendo, solvo, numero, &c.*

2. Such are, *Impero, præcipio, edico, &c. Nuncio, dico, pando, ostendo, indico, narro, monstro, declaro, explico, aperio, significo, respondeo, &c.*

3. Such are, *Minor, emisor, interminor, mimitor—Irascor, succensco.*

4. Such are, *Fido, confido, fidem habeo, credo, accredo, committis, mando, commendo—diffido. N. B. The simple verb fido is used most commonly with an ablative, and confido both ways. Credo is sometimes found even with a genitive.*

5. Such are, *Obsequor, obedio, parco, obtempero, assentior, blandior, palpor, lenocinor, ancillor, famulor, morigeror, morem gero, velifico, obsecundo, cedo, servio, inservio, respondeo, suadeo, persuadeo, acquiesco, suffragor, &c. Pugno, repugno, resisto, reclamo, responso, renitor, certo, adversor, obfisto, occurro, obstrepo, obsto, obluctor, reluctor, refragor, contendo, differo, discedo, discrepo, dissentio, dissideo, &c.*

6. Various prepositions are here made use of, especially after such verbs as these—*Cohæreo, congruo, consentio, convenio, &c. Certo, contendo, differo, discordo, discrepo, dissentio, dissideo, pugno, &c.* A specimen of which I shall here set down only to excite the curiosity of the learner, who is to be instructed in these, and such like matters, more by observation than rules.

Cohærere cum causâ, inter se, alicui rei. Cic.

Congruere ad aliquem. Liv. inter se. Ter. cum aliquo, alicui. Cic.

Consentire cum, de aliquo, ad aliquid, in eum, ex omni parte, sibi. Cic.

Convenire in vaginam. Plaut. inter se. Juv. de hoc. Quint. cum aliquo, ad aliquem, sibi. Cic.

Certare de re aliquâ. Liv. cum aliquo, inter se. Cic. tibi. Virg.

Contendere inter se, Cic. cum aliquo, contra aliquem, alicui. Hor.

Differre ab aliquo, inter se. Cic. in candore. Plin. buie. Hor.

Discrepare ab aliquo, in, de re aliquâ, inter se. Cic. alicui. Hor.

Dissentire ob, cum aliquo, in, de re aliquâ, inter se. Cic. alicui. Quint.

Dissidere ab, cum aliquo, inter se. Cic. alicui. Hor.

Pugnare in, adversus aliquem, Plin. pro, de re aliquâ, cum aliquo. Cic.

Sum, cum compositis, præter possum, regit dativum : ut, Mors mihi manus erit—Desunt jam verba dolori. Ov.

1. *Sum, cum multis aliis, geminum admittit dativum : ut, Arboribus vitis decori est. Virg.*

Fistula Dametas dono mihi quam dedit olim. Id.

Nec timuit sibi ne vitio quis verteret olim. Hor.

2. *Est pro habeo regit dativum : ut,*

Est mihi namque domi pater, est injusta noverca. Virg.

An nescis longas regibus esse manus ? Ov.

Huic simile est suppetit : ut,

Pauper enim non est, cui rerum suppetit usus. Hor.

3. *Dativum postulant verba composita cum his adverbis, bene, satis, male, et cum his ferme præpositionibus, ad, con, in, super, ob, sub, præ, post, inter et ante : ut,*

Tantum maledixit utrique. Hor.

Ad—Addit vim vitis, Laterique accommodat enses. Virg.

Con—Condixit mihi jam—Collucent sidera mundo. Cic.

In—Incute vim ventis—Finemque impone labori. Virg.

Super—Supervenit hosti—Id.

Ob—Obijce te bello—Offer te, irrise, periculis. Id.

Sub—Subdite calcar equo—Rebus succurrite fessis. Id.

Præ—Præsidio foribus cæli—Quis præsidet arvis. Id.

Post—Posthabui tamen illorum mea seria ludo. Id.

Inter—Interferit oscula verbis. Ov.

Ante—Antefero pacem bello. Cic.

Sed, præcedo, præcurro, prævertor, præsto, et alia non pauca, mutant dativum aliquoties in alium casum : ut,

Tardum Turnus præcesserat agmen. Virg.

Celeremque fugâ prævertitur Enrum. Id.

Vel magnum præstet Achillem. Id.

I verbis virtutem illude superbis. Id.

Est ubi hic dativus tibi, aut sibi, aut etiam mihi, elegantiae causâ tantum additur : ut,

Nec vagus in laxâ pes tibi pelle natet. Ov.

Suo sibi gladio hunc jugulo. Ter.

In medio mihi Cæsar erit. Virg.

1. These verbs are, *Do, duco, verto, venio, mitto, tribuo, relinquo, habeo, puto, proficiscor, &c.* Hither may be referred such expressions as this: *Cui nunc cognomen Iulæ*.—Which is more elegant than *Iulus* or *Juli*.

2. And

2. And contrariwise; as, *Habeo illum ludibrio—Est mihi ludibrio.* And sometimes the verb *Est* is omitted: as, *Nil mihi cum bello.* Ov.

3. Active verbs that have this government are often followed by two casual words, one of which has some English preposition, as, *so, for, before, over, upon,* or the like before it, and is to be the dative, the other the accusative.

Accusativus post Verbum.

1. **V**ERBA transitiva cujuscunque generis, five activi, five deponentis, five communis regunt accusativum: ut,

Cogite oves, pueri—Servabit Tityrus hædos. Virg.

Illæ patrem sequitur, sequiturque sorores. Ov.

Febrie depositus artus.

Sæpe accidit ut accusativus et collocetur, et construatur ante verbum: ut,

Quid non sentit amor?

Quinetiam verba neutra accusativum habent cognatæ significationis, qui non rarò in ablativum vertitur: ut,

Vivere vitam. Quin. v. *Vivere vitâ.* Plaut.

Ire viam. Virg. v. *Ire viâ.* Sen.

Obire mortem. Cic. v. *Obire morte.* Suet.

Sunt quæ figuratè accusativum habent: ut,

Nec vox hominem sonat, o Dea! certè. Virg.

Qui Curios simulant, et Bacchanalia vivunt. Juv.

Pastillos Rufillus olet, Gorgonius hircum. Hor.

2. Verba rogandi, docendi, celandi, duplicem regunt accusativum: ut,

Rogat illa Jovem sine nomine munus. Ov.

Posce Deos veniam—Jam te tua fata docebo. Virg.

Hoc te celavimus unum. Ov.

3. Interdum mutant alterum accusativum in ablativum cum præpositione: ut,

Ipsam obtestemur, veniamque oremus ab ipso. Virg.

Accusativus sequitur verba rogandi et docendi in voce passivâ: ut,

Posceris exta bovis.

Motus doceri gaudet Ionicos matura virgo. Hor.

Quædam verba passivæ vocis, imprimis vestiendi, regunt etiam accusativum more Græcorum subintellecto *κατὰ*: ut,

Nunc Satyrum, nunc agrestem Cyclopa movetur. Hor.

Induitur pallam—Sumptumque recingitur anguem. Ov.

1. Sometimes the verb is understood by an Ellipsis: as,

Dii meliora pii. i. e. *dent.* and

Sometimes the accusative is understood: as,

Nox humida celo præcipitat. i. e. *se.*

2. Such are, *rogo, reposco, posco, posulo, oro, exoro, flagito, lacecco, percontor, peto, doceo, dedoceo, erudio, celo, &c.* To which may be added, *consulo, hortor, & moneo.*

N. B. A double accusative is sometimes found after other verbs by reason of a preposition understood: as,

Si id me accusas. Plaut.

Pater hæc me objurgare. Id. } i. e. *propter.*

And *celo* is sometimes found with a dative and accusative.

3. These prepositions are, *ab, abs, de, e, ex, in, cum.*

Ablativus post Verbum.

1. **Q**UODVIS verbum admittit ablativum significantem instrumentum, causam, aut modum actionis: ut,

Hi jaculis, illi certant defendere saxis. Virg.

Et digitos digitis, et frontem fronte premebam. Ov.

Corda tument rabie—Virg. *Formidine lora remisit.* Ov.

Procubuit mælati more juvenci. Ov.

Jam veniet tacito curva senecta pede. Id.

Ablativo causæ et modi actionis aliquando additur præpositio: ut,

Præ mærore loqui non possum. Cic.

Mollius, et solito matrum de more locuta est. Virg.

Nomen pretii in ablativo ponitur: ut,

Bis quinquagenis domus est tibi millibus empta,

Vendere quam summâ vel brevior cupis. Mart.

Vili, parvo, paululo, minimo, magno, permagno, &c. ponuntur sæpe finè substantivis: ut,

Vili vendis, Amæne, domum. Mart.

Haud illi stabunt Æneïa parvo Hospitia. Virg.

Hoc magno mercentur Atridæ. Id.

Excipiuntur hi genitivi finè substantivis positi; *tanti, quanti, cum compositis, pluris, minoris, majoris:* ut,

Vix Priamus tanti totâque Troja fuit. Ov.

Quanti, dic mihi, possit emi, Mart.

Vendo non pluris, quam ceteri; fortasse etiam minoris. Cic.

Multo majoris alapæ mecum veneunt. Phæd.

Sin

Sin addantur substantiva in ablativo ponuntur : ut,

Quanto metiris pretio ? Juv.

Minore pretio vendidi, quàm emi.

Valeo cum accusativo junctum reperitur, rariùs cum ablativo : ut,

Hæc mea testæ valent argenti mille talenta.

Valet sestertiis vicenis. Plin.

2. Verba abundandi, implendi, onerandi, et his diversa ablativo junguntur : ut,

Semper eget, liquidis semper abundat aquis. Ov.

Falsis pectus terroribus implet. Hor.

Pars epulis onerant mensas. Virg.

Illum vitâ spoliavit Achilles. Id.

Ego hoc te fasce levabo. Id.

Morte carent animæ. Ov.

Quædam verba implendi, et carendi genitivum regunt : ut,

Implentur veteris Bacchi, pinguisque ferinæ. Virg.

Dum custodis eges. Hor. Nostræ non indiget artis. Cic.

Participat me consilii (i. e. participem facit.) Plaut.

1. The prepositions sometimes used in this way of speaking are, with the Instrument or rather adjunct { *Ab—ac, defendit ab armis. Ov.*
The Cause— { *De, ex, præ, per, ob, propter.*
The Manner or Means— { *De, per, cum.*

N. B. After verbs of price we must use these adverbs, instead of their nouns, *carè, bene, malè, cariùs, meliùs, pejàs, vilis, optimè, pessimè, vilissimè.*

2. Verbs of abounding and wanting are, *exubero, redundo, fluo, affluo, scateo, maneo, &c. Indigeo, vaco, deficio, desituro, &c. Of filling and emptying, Compleo, expleo, repleo, satio, saturo, farcio, cumulo, augeo, obruo, locupletor—Exhaurio, viduo, spolio, paupero, depauperor, &c. Of loading and unloading—Onero, premo, opprimo, &c. Exonero, levo, orbo, emungo, privo, fraude, &c. To which may be added verbs of loosing and binding, viz. Libero, solvo, exsolvo, expedio, alligo, asfringo, impedio, implico, irretio, illaqueo, &c. As also verbs of arraying with their contraries, vestio, induo, amicio, insterno, orno, tego, sepio, circundo, exuo, nudo, &c.*

N. B. These verbs (excepting those of abounding and wanting) have generally an accusative before their ablative.

1. *Fungor, fruor, utor, vescor, et alia quædam, ablativo junguntur : ut,*

Fungitur officio—Fruitur meliore marito. Ov.

Uttere sorte tuâ—melioribus utere satis. Virg.

Quicumque terræ munere vescimur. Hor.

Item, prosequor vel officio te laude, honore, pœnâ, &c.

Meretur, cum adverbis *benè, malè, melius, pejùs, optimè, pessimè*, ablativo jungitur cum præpositione *de* : ut,

Bene de republicâ mereri glâriosum est.

Si bene quid de te merui. Virg.

2. Quædam accipiendi, auferendi, et distandi verba ablativo, cum præpositionibus *a, ab, abs, de, e, ex*, junguntur : ut,

Magistris artes accepit ab isdem. Ov.

Ille rapit calidum de vulnere ferrum.

Totidèmq; gradus distamus ab illo. Ov.

Post verba autem auferendi et distandi hic ablativus non raro in dativum vertitur : ut,

Tum caput ipsi aufert domino. Virg.

Insido scurræ distabit amicus. Hor.

Verbis, quæ vim comparationis obtinent, additur ablativus significans mensuram excessûs : ut,

Multo præstat cavere, quam admittere.

Hunc multis gradibus superat.

3. Quibuscumque verbis additur ablativus absolute sumtus : ut,

Ille hæc, depositâ tandem formidine, fatur. Virg.

Aspexi lachrymas, me lachrymans, tuas. Ov.

Rege incolumi mens omnibus una est. Virg.

Me duce carpe viam, me duce tutus eris. Ov.

Nomen partis affectæ ponitur in ablativo, et poetice in accusativo : ut,

Animoque et corpore torpet. Hor.

Stare loco nescit, micat auribus, et tremit artus. Virg.

Cingor quæstria tempora lauro. Conf. ad Liv.

Interdum etiam in genitivo : ut,

Discrucior animi. Plaut.

Eidem verbo diversi casus diversæ rationis adjungi possunt : ut,

Dedit mihi vestem pignori, te præsentem, propriâ manu.

1. Such are, *Defungor, perfungor, perfrutor, abutor, glorior, lætor, nitor, dignor, impertior, creor, gaudeo, exulto, supersedo, victito, vivo, munero, beo, communico, fio, confio, muto, commuto, permuto, impertio*. N. B. *Fungor, fruor, utor, vescor*, are found also with an accusative.

Dignor, impertio or *impertior* govern besides an ablative of the thing, an accusative of the person.

Muto, permuto, commuto, govern an accusative of the thing changed, and an ablative of that for which it is changed: but Horace says—*Uvam furtivâ mutat strigili—Nec velle permutem Sabinâ divitiâs.*

2. Such

2. Such are—*Accipio, recipio, audio, intelligo, disco—Aufero, eripio, excipio, excorpo, demo, adimo, eximo, subduco, surripio, detraho, subtraho, tollo, excutio, extorqueo, arceo, defendo, absum, dispo, &c.*

3. Sometimes a participle alone is put in the ablative absolute: as,
Audito regem venisse.

Excepto quod non simul esse cetera latus. Hor.

Verba Passiva.

1. **P**ASSIVIS additur ablativus agentis, antecedente *a* vel *ab*, et interdum dativus: ut,

Qui locus a forti Diomede est conditus olim. Hor.

Increpor a cunctis—Murus pulsatur ab hoste, Ov.

Cava buccina sumitur illi. Id.

Ceteri casus manent in passivis, qui fuerunt activorum: ut,

Accusaris a me furti.

Verba Infinita.

VERBIS quibusdam et adjectivis familiariter adduntur verba infinita: ut,

Vendere cum possis captivum, occidere noli. Hor.

Fusus confundere fœdis. Virg.

Erat tum dignus amari. Id.

Indocilis pauperiem pati. Hor.

2. Ponuntur interdum per ellipsin absolutè verba infinita, præsertim in iracundiâ et narrationibus: ut,

Méne incepto dissilire victam? Virg.

Tum celerare fugam in sylvas, et fidere nocti. Id.

Infinitum etiam pro nomine sumitur: ut,

Quod faciam superest, præter amare, nihil. Ov.

1. *Conjuge deseror* is found in Ovid, and *barbaris traheretur* in Tacitus, but this is not to be imitated. The dative case is more used in poetry than prose. And sometimes you meet with an accusative case of the agent or doer with the preposition *per*. The efficient cause is likewise used with *a* or *ab* even after a verb active or neuter: as, *Percussit ab asse.* Cic. *Caput a sole dolet.* Plin. *Periit ab Hannibale.* Id.

2. In such examples as these, there are words understood to make the construction regular, as, *Decet, par est, oportet, æquum est—Caperunt—Solebat, &c.*

N. B. The infinitive is sometimes elegantly used after the verb *est*, when it signifies the same, as *est* or *licet* : as,

Quod versu dicere non est. Hor.

In medio classis aratas cernere erat. Virg.

De gerundiis, supinis, participiis et verbalibus.

Gerundia.

GERUNDIA in *di* pendent a quibusdam tum substantivis, tum adjectivis genitivum regentibus : ut,
Orandi finem facias—*Sum certus eundi.* Virg.

Pugnandi cupidus—*Sunt artes mille nocendi.* Ov.

Poëticè infinitivus modus pro gerundiis in *di* ponitur : ut,
Tempus abire tibi—*Soli cantare periti.* Virg.

Interdum non inveniunt additur gerundiis in *di* etiam genitivus pluralis : ut,

Reliquorum fiderum causa collocandi. Suet.

Gerundia in *do* pendent ab his præpositionibus, *a*, *ab*, *abs*, *d*, *e*, *ex*, *cum*, *in*, *pro* : ut,

Ignavi a discendo citò deterrentur. Cic.

Ex defendendo, quam ex accusando uberior gloria comparatur. Id.

Scribendi ratio conjuncta cum loquendo est. Quint.

1. Ponuntur et absque præpositione, more ablativi, et interdum dativi : ut,

Alitur vitium, vivitque tegendo. Virg.

Mox opta natando crura dat. Ov.

Gerundia in *dum* pendent ab his præpositionibus, *inter*, *ante*, *ad*, *ob*, *propter*, *circa* : ut,

————— *Inter agendum*

Occursare capro, cornu ferit ille, caveto. Virg.

Ante domandum ingentes tollent animos. Id.

Locus ad agendum amplissimus. Cic.

2. Cum significatur necessitas ponuntur citra præpositionem, addito vel intellecto verbo *est* : ut,

Parcendum teneris. Virg. *Si vis me flere, dolendum est*

Primum ipse tibi. Hor.

Vertuntur etiam gerundia in nomina adjectiva : ut,

Tantus amor florum, et generandi gloria mellis. Virg.

Semper in agendâ festinat et obruitur re. Hor.

1. This dative follows adjectives of *fitness* and *usefulness*; though the adjective is not always expressed: as, *Non est solvendo*, id est, *aptus*.
2. And then the English nominative must be put in the dative case.

Supina.

SUPINUM in *um* activè ferè significat, et sequitur verba motûs: ut,

Lusum it Mœœnas, dormitum ego, Virgiliûsque. Hor.

Spektatum veniunt, veniunt spektentur ut ipsæ. Ov.

Supinum in *a* passivè ferè significat, et sequitur nomina adjectiva: ut,

Nil dictu fœdum, visuque hæc limina tangat,

Intra quæ puer est. Juv. *Scitaris digna relatu.* Ov.

Participia.

1. **PARTICIPIA** (cum gerundiis, supinis, ceterisque verbalibus) verborum suorum ferè regimen obtinent: ut,

Crescit indulgens sibi dirus hydrops. Hor.

Utendum est ætate, cito pede præterit ætas. Ov.

Non Graiis servitum matribus ibo. Virg.

Iustitia est obtemperatio legibus. Cic.

Vitabundus castra hostium. Liv.

Participiis passivæ vocis additur interdum dativus, præsertim si exeunt in *us*: ut,

Magnus civis obit, et formidatus Othoni. Juv.

Ille mihi feriendus aper. Ov.

Participia cum sunt nomina genitivum postulant: ut,

Patiens fit taurus aratri. Ov.

Non illo melior quisquam, nec amantior æqui. Id.

Exosus, perosus, pertæsus, activè significant, et exigunt accusativum: ut,

Exosus bellum juvenis. Virg.

Genus omne perosus semineum. Id.

Pertæsus vitam. Just.

2. *Natus, prognatus, satus, cretus, creatus, ortus, editus*, ablativum exigunt vel cum præpositione, vel sine præpositione: ut,

Defiliit in terras patriâ Jove natus ab arce. Ov.

Ovo prognatus eodem—Sate sanguine divum. Virg.

Ab origine cretus eâdem—Vulcani stirpe creatus. Virg.

Magnis e centurionibus orti. Hor.

Edita de magno flumine nympha fui. Ov.

1. This rule is to be understood only of gerunds signifying actively, and supines in *um*; the others being seldom found with any case after them. A periphrasis of the verb governs also the same case with the verb, as, *Pdne effis auctores mihi?* i. e. *suadetis?* And so when one verb takes the sense of another, it sometimes takes its case: as,

Idque pio sedet Æneâ. Virg. i. e. *Placet.*

2. To which may be added *genitus, generatus, procreatus, oriundus*.

De Impersonalibus.

IMPERSONALIA præcedentem nominativum non habent: ut,

Quippe ita Neptuno visum est—Juvat ire sub umbras. Virg.

Interest, refert, genitivum regunt: ut,

Interest omnium rectè agere. Cic.

Parvi refert. Id.

1. Exceptis ablativis femininis, *meâ, tuâ, suâ, nostrâ, vestrâ, cuiâ:* ut,

Tuâ refert nihil. Ter. *Meâ magni interest.* Cic.

Et: Interest ad laudem meam.

Hæc impersonalia accusativum postulant, *juvat, decet, cum compositis, et deletat:* ut,

Me juvat in primâ coluisse Heliconâ juveniâ. Ov.

Decet hæc dare dona novercam. Id.

Me pedibus deletat claudere verba. Hor.

2. His verò *attinet, pertinet, spectat*, propriè additur præpositio *ad*; quibus adjungas etiam verba *motûs:* ut,

Nihil ad me attinet. Ter.

Pertinet ad faciem rabidos comescere mores. Ov.

Spectat ad omnes bene vivere.

Sic itur ad astra. Virg.

His impersonalibus subjicitur accusativus cum genitivo, *ædet, pœnitet, miseret, miserescit, pudet, piget:* ut,

Tædet me vitæ. Cic. *Agamemnona pœnitet iræ.* Ov.

Nec te miseret natæ quæ tuique. Virg.

Fratris me quidem pudet, pigetque. Ter.

Nonnulla impersonalia redeunt aliquando in personalia : ut,

Pingue solum lassat, sed juvat ipse labor.

Parvum parva decent. Hor.

Cæpit, incipit, desinit, debet, solet, et potest, impersonalibus juncta, impersonalium formam induunt : ut,

Ubi primum cæperat non convenire quæstio oriebatur. Quint.

Tædere solet avaros impendii. Id.

Perveniri ad summa nisi ex principiis non potest. Id.

Verbum impersonale passivæ vocis eundem cum personalibus passivis casum obtinet : ut,

Constante ab hostibus pugnabatur. Cæf.

Qui quidem casus (præsertim in verbis quæ *gestum* expriment) sæpe subauditur : ut,

Itur ad Atriden. Juv.

Stratogue super discumbitur ostro. Virg.

Verbum impersonale passivæ vocis pro singulis personis activæ vocis eleganter accipi potest : ut,

Statur : id est, sto, stas, stat, stamus, statis, stant.

Plenè dicas, *statur a me, statur a te, statur ab illo, &c.*

3. In dativum feruntur reliqua ferè impersonalia : ut,

Nec mihi scire licet—Inter se convenit urfis. Juv.

Non vacat exiguis rebus adesse Fovi. Ov.

Puero parcatur lulo. Virg.

1. These are thought to be rather the accusative plural. See Ellipt. Syntax. Cicero has *multum interest te venire*—and again, *Cujus non interfuit uter occideretur*. Plautus uses *juvat* and *deceat* with a dative.

2. So after verbs that signify or imply motion ; of which latter sort are, *Allicio, pellicio, voco, provoco, conduco, hortor, incito, invito, instigo, &c.*

3. Such are, *Accidit, contingit, convenit, dolet, evenit, expedit, libet, licet, liquet, lubet, nocet, patet, placet, displicet, præstat, restat, satisfi, stat, constat, satisfi, sufficit, superest, vacat, &c.*

N. B. *Fallit, fugit, præterit, latet*, are sometimes used impersonally with an accusative.

De Tempore et Loco.

Tempus.

QUÆ significant partem temporis in ablativo ponuntur: ut,

Noctæ latent menses. Ov.

Nunc dicenda bono sunt bona verba die. Id.

Quæ autem durationem temporis, et continuationem significant, in accusativo, interdum et in ablativo ponuntur: ut,

Noctes atque dies patet atri janua ditis. Virg.

Hic jam ter centum totos regnabitur annos. Id.

Auditor toto sæpe poeta die. Mart.

Obs. Dicimus etiam, *In paucis diebus.* De die. De nocte. *Promitto in diem.* Commode in vel ad mensem. *Annos ad quinquaginta natus.* Per tres annos studui. *Intra annos quatuordecim.* Puer id ætatis. *Non plus triduum, aut triduo.* Tertio, vel ad tertium calendas, vel calendarum.

Spatium Loci.

SPATIUM loci in accusativo ponitur, interdum et in ablativo: ut,

Mille quidem passus distat ab urbe locus.

Nec longis inter se passibus absunt. Virg.

Item: *abest bidui*; ubi intelligitur spatium.

Nomina Locorum.

1. **N**OMINA appellativa, et nomina regionum præpositionem haud omittunt: ut,

Lucus in urbe fuit—Ad templum Palladis ibant. Virg.

Ex Asia transis in Europam. Cic.

Nomen oppidi, in quo sit actio, in genitivo ponitur, modò primæ vel secundæ declinationis, et singularis numeri sit; alioquin in ablativo: ut,

Quid Romæ faciam. Juv. *Thebis nutritus an Argis.* Hor.

Is Mileti habitat. Ter. *Delpbis oracula cessant.* Ov.

Romæ Tibur amo ventosus, Tibure Romam. Hor.

2. Sic utimur *ruri* vel *rure* in ablativo: ut,

Rure paterno est tibi far modicum. Pers.

Humi, domi, militiæ, belli, propriorum instar, in genitivo ponuntur: ut,

Fusus humi. Virg. *Virtus belli spectata, domique.* Hor.

Unà semper militiæ, et domi fuimus. Ter.

Motus ad locum in accusativo, a loco in ablativo ponitur: ut,

Tendimus hinc restâ Beneventum. Hor.

Egressum magnâ me accepit Aricia Româ. Id.

Ad hunc modum utimur *domus* et *rus*: ut,

Ite domum. Virg. *Rure rediit.* Ter.

1. But Virgil has—*Non Lybiæ, non ante Tyro.* Pro in *Lybiâ et Tyri.*

2. Hither may be referred such expressions as these,
Terrâ marique—Castris furvus, &c.

De Adverbis.

EN et ecce nominativo frequentius junguntur, accusativo rarius; nisi ridiculè ponuntur, tunc enim accusativus est potior: ut,

En Priamus. Virg. *Ecce tibi status noster.* Cic.

En quatuor aras. *Ecce duas tibi Daphni.* Virg.

En habitum. Juv. *Ecce autem alterum.* Ter.

1. Quædam adverbia loci, quantitatis et temporis, genitivum admittunt: ut,

Consilii satis est in me mibi. Ov.

—————*Ubiunque locorum*

Vivitis, o cives, terrorum et fraudis abunde est.

Pridie ejus diei. Cic.

2. *Instar* et *ergo* genitivum admittunt: ut,

Instar montis—Illius ergo venimus. Virg.

Quædam dativum admittunt nominum unde deducta sunt: ut,

Venit obviam illi: nam obvius illi dicitur.

Sunt quæ accusativum admittunt, vi præpositionis intellectæ: ut,

Propius

Propius muros accessit. Nep.

Proximè Hispaniam Mauri sunt. Sall. } i. e. Ad.

3. *Cedo accusativum postulat:* ut,

———*Cedo quemvis arbitrum.* Ter.

Adverbia diversitatis, *aliter, secus*; et illa duo, *ante, post*, ablativo non rarò junguntur: ut,

Multo aliter—paulo secus.

Multo ante—paulo post.

Longo post tempore venit. Virg.

Adverbia comparativi, & superlativi gradus sequuntur formam adjectivorum ejusdem generis: ut,

Longius affucto lumina nostra vident. Ov.

Optimè omnium dixit.

4. *Plus nominativo, accusativo, et ablativo jungitur:* ut,

Paulo plus trecenta vehicula sunt amissa. Liv.

Abierat acies paulo plus quingentos passus.

Dies triginta, aut plus eo, in nave fui. Ter.

1. Hither are to be referred such expressions as these,

Interca loci—ubinam gentium—quo terrarum.

Eò amentia—minimè gentium—quoad ejus, &c.

2. *Infar* is very properly a noun and governed of *ad* understood—*Ergo* seems borrowed from the Greek, and imports the same as *gratia*.

3. *Cedo* is properly a verb defective. See p. 48 Introduc.

4. The preposition *quam* is often expressed—*Amplius* and *minus* have the same construction.

N. B. Adjectives are sometimes used adverbially and contrariwise: as,

Et fugit horrendum fridens clapsa sagitta. Virg.

Plurimus orbe legor. Ov. i. e. plurimum.

De Conjunctionibus.

CONJUNCTIONES copulativæ, et disjunctivæ, cum his quatuor, *quam, nisi, præterquam, an*, similes casus, et modos conjungunt: ut,

Di maris et cæli. Ov. *Probitas laudatur et alget.* Juv.

Non formosus erat, sed erat facundus Ulysses. Ov.

Est melius dare dimidium, quam perdere totum. Mart.

Nisi quædam regula aliud poscat: ut,

Emi librum centum et pluris.

Vixi Romæ et Venetiis.

Aliquoties autem similes modos, sed diversa tempora: ut,

Paruit et vivit. Ov.

Ille

*Ille vel intaëta segetis per summa volaret
Gramina, nec teneras cursu læsisset aristas. Virg.*

N. B. A preposition is sometimes put for a conjunction: as,
Omnis incommodi patientes, præter calvis. Col. i. e. præterquam.

De Præpositionibus.

PRÆPOSITIO in compositione eundem nonnunquam casum regit, quem et extra compositionem regebat: ut,
*Detrudunt nares scopulo. Virg. Adit oppida pastor. Id.
Excute corde metum. Ov. Summo delaber Olympo. Id.
Hærent infixi pectore vultus. Virg.
Virtute semper prævalet sapientia. Phæd.*

Præpositio sæpe subauditur, sæpe etiam post verbum eleganter repetitur: ut,

*Spem vultu simulat, premit altum corde dolorem. Virg. in.
Fallit nos vitium specie virtutis. Juv. sub.
Devenere locos lætos. Virg. ad.
Nunquam accedo ad te, quin abs te abeam doctior. Ter.
De digito anulum detrabo—Excessit ex ephebis. Id.
Strictos incurris in enses. Mart.*

In pro erga, contra, ad, supra, accusativum exigit: ut,
*Accipit in Teucros animum, mentemque benignam. Virg.
In commoda publica peccem. Hor.
In regnum queritur hæres. Ov.
Reges in ipsos imperium est Jovis. Hor.*

Præpositiones, cum casum amittunt, migrant in adverbia: ut,
Ponè subito conjux—Coràm quem queritis adsum. Virg.

These prepositions govern an accusative;

*Ad, penes, adversus, cis, citra, circiter, extra,
Erga, apud, ante, secus, trans, supra, versus, et intra,
Ultra, post, præter, propter, prope, ponè, secundùm,
Per, circum, circa, contra, juxta, inter, ob, infra;
His etiam, si vis, adjungas clanculum, et usque.*

These an ablative.

*Abs, ab, et a, sic, absque, palàm, de, ex, e, sine, coram,
Cum, pro, præ, tenus, et plurali cum genitivo;
Casum utrumque regunt hæ, subter, sub, super, in, clam.*

N. B. *In* and *sub*, signifying motion to a place, govern an accusative; but if motion or rest is a place, generally an ablative. See p. 82.

Tenus, versus and *penes* are usually set after the case they govern, and so

is usque sometimes ; but the accusative they are said to govern depends upon *ad* understood. *Procul* may be considered as a preposition when set with a case : as, *procul muros* or *muros* i. e. *ad, a*. Liv.

De Interjectionibus.

O et *prô* nominativo, accusativo, et vocativo junguntur : ut,

O festus dies ! O faciem pulchram ! O formose puer. Virg.

Prô dolor ! prô deûm fidem ! prô sancte Jupiter ! Cic.

Heu nominativo, dativo, accusativo, et vocativo jungitur : ut,

Heu pietas, heu prisca fides. Virg.

Heu misero mihi. Plaut.

Heu stirpem invisam. Virg.

Heu miserande puer. Id.

Hem dativo, accusativo, et vocativo : ut,

Hem tibi—hem astutias—Hem mea lux, Cic.

Ab et *vab* accusativo et vocativo : ut,

Ab me miserum—Ab virgo infelix. Virg.

Hei et *ve* dativo : ut,

Hei mihi—Ve victis. Flor.

Hens et *obe* vocativo : ut,

Hens Syre—Obe libelle ! Mart.



The Rules for the Genders of Nouns construed.

R U L E I.

Vox a word *quâ* by which *Mas* a Male *exprimitur* is expressed, *vel* or *Femina* a Female *fert* bears *id genus* that Gender. *Vox* a word *notans* denoting *utrumque Sexum* both Sexes *habetur* is accounted *communis* common.

Est it is *notandum* to be observed, *esse* that there are *multa nomina* many nouns, *quæ* which *sunt* are *communia* common, *significatione solâ* by signification only, *autem* but, *non constructione* not by construction. *Sed* but *verè communia* those that are truly common, *et* and *quæ* which *junguntur* are joined *adjectivo feminino* to an adjective feminine, *sunt hæc* are these that follow:

Conjux a husband or wife, *atque* and *parens* a father or mother, *infans* an infant, *patrueus* a cousin-german by the father's side, *et* and *hæres* an heir, *affinis* one allied by marriage, *vindex* an avenger, *dux* a leader, *miles* a soldier, *et* and *hostis* a declared enemy, *augur* a diviner by observation from birds *et* and *antistes* a chief priest or priestess, *vates* a prophet or prophetess, *conviva* a guest, *sacerdos* a priest or priestess, *que* and *addas* you may add *municipi* to one free of the city Rome, *adolescens* a young person, *civis* a citizen, *et* and *auctor* an author, *custos* a keeper, *nemo* no body, *comes* a companion, *testis* a witness, *sus* a swine, *que* and *bos* an ox, bull, or cow, *que* and *canis* a dog or bitch, *quidam* some *jungunt* join *his* to these, *præs* a surety in a cause of money, *index* an informer, *martyr* a martyr, *et* and *obses* an hostage. *Sic* so *homo* a man or woman, *sic* so *princeps* a prince or princess, *que* and *juvenis* a young person, *que* and *cliens* a client, *satelles* an attendant.

R U L E II.

Nomen adjectivum a noun adjective *sibi vindicat* challenges to itself *omne genus* every gender: *Sed* but *id genus* that gender *variatur* is varied *juxta* according to *varios fines* the different endings.

R U L E III.

Vox generalis a general word *dat legem* gives law *infra se positis* to all others ranked under it. *Sæpe etiam* oft times
likewise

likewise *significatus* the signification *concedit* yields *fini* to the termination.

R U L E IV.

Si if *demus* you except *uncia* an ounce, *As* a pound weight *est* is *mas* masculine, *et sua turba* and all that belong to it.

R U L E V.

Propria vox the proper name *venti* of a wind, *flu-vii* of a river, *et* and *montis* of a mountain *est* is *ferè* commonly *mas* masculine.

R U L E VI.

Insula let an island, *item* likewise *navis* a ship, *regio* a country, *urbs* a city, *sunt* be *muliebria* feminines. *At* but *Pontus regio* a country, *atque* and *Sason insula* an island *est* is *mas* masculine.

R U L E VII.

Arbos the name of a tree *hæc* is feminine—*Ster* trees that end in *ster*, *spinus* a sloe-tree, *dumus* a bush *mas* are masculine, *que* and *rubus* a bramble *est* is *dubium* doubtful. *Um* those in *um* *hoc* are neuters; *robur* an oak, *acer* a maple, *que* and *suber* a cork-tree, *que* and *filer* an osier.

R U L E VIII.

A the termination *a plurale* of the plural number *est* is *neutrum* neuter; *I mas* is masculine, *Æ* words in *æ sunt* are *muliebria* feminines.

R U L E IX.

Nomina græca greekish nouns *plerumque* commonly *sequuntur* follow *genus* the gender *stirpis* of their original.

R U L E X.

Putes you may suppose *non declinata* words undeclined *neutra* to be neuters, *et* and *pro* that are put *pro* for *nominine* a noun.

R U L E



R U L E X I.

Nomina nouns in a *vel* in e ending in a or in e *prima* of the first declension, *muliebria* are feminines; *terna* of the third *neutra* are neuters. *Planeta* a planet, *cometa* a comet, *dat* giveth *bic*: *sed* but *pascha* the passover *hoc*. *Adria* the Adriatic gulph, *mandragora* mandrake *bic*; *pandecta* the digest, *et* and *echinometra* a small shell-fish.

R U L E X II.

Nomen a noun in o ending in o *mas* is masculine: *Et* and *harpago* an hook *dat* giveth *bic*: *at* but *caro* flesh, *grando* hail *hæc*, *et* and *cætera* all others in do, go, ending in do or go, *quæis tertia syllaba surgit* that are of three syllables, *et* and *verbale* in io a verbal in io. *Pugio* a dagger *mas* is masculine; *numerales* a numeral in io *mas* is masculine.

R U L E X III.

M. C. L. T. a word ending in M. C. L. T. *neutrum* is neuter: *Sal* salt *dubium* is doubtful; *que* and *sol* the sun *virile* is masculine. *Et* and *quot* as many nouns as *legas* you read in on, *flexa per i* declined with i in the genitive *sunto* let them be *neutra* neuters.

R U L E X IV.

Nomen in n a noun ending in n *est* is *mas* masculine: *Sed* but *sendon* fine linen *et* and *icon* an image *dat* giveth *hæc*; *men* a word ending in men *poscit* requires *hoc*; *et* and *hæc tria* these three, *gluten* glue, *et* and *unguen* ointment, *et* and *inguen* the groin.

R U L E X V.

Nomen in ar vel in ur a noun ending in ar or ur *est* is *neutrum* neuter; *excipe* except *furfur* bran *unum* only.

R U L E X VI.

Er words ending in er *mas* are masculine: *at* but *linter* a little boat *dat* giveth *hæc*: *spinter* a buckle, *que* and *ver* the spring.

spring-time, *cadaver* a carcase, *uber* a teat, *iter* a journey, *fructus* fruits ending in *er*, *nomina plantarum* and the names of plants dant give *hoc*. *Tuber pro* for *fructibus* fruit *hic*, *pro* for *arbore* a tree *hæc*, *pro* for *fungo* a mushroom *hoc*.

R U L E XVII.

Or words ending in *or mas* are masculine: *arbor* a tree *hæc*: *cor* the heart, *æquor* the sea, *marmor* marble, *que* and *ador* fine wheat *hoc*.

R U L E XVIII.

As words ending in *as primæ* of the first declension *hic*; *ternæ* of the third *hæc*. *Vas* a vessel *hoc*; *at* but *as* making *antis* in the genitive case, *dat* giveth *hic*.

R U L E XIX.

Es the termination *es femineum* is feminine; *que* and *dies* a day *dubium* is doubtful: *At* but *es-aris* brals *dat* giveth *hoc*. *Poples* the ham, *limes* a boundary, *stipes* a stake, *fomes* fuel, *que* and *paries* a wall, *pes* a foot, *palmes* a branch, *trames* a cross-path, *termes* a bough, *cum* with *gurgite* a gulph, *cespes* a turf, *hic*: *Græcæque nomina* and greek nouns in *es*, *scu* whether *fuert* they be *primæ* of the first declension, *scu* or *ternæ* of the third.

R U L E XX.

Is the termination *is femineum* is feminine: *sed* but *nis est* is *mas* masculine; *junge* add *orbis* any round thing, *et* and *axis* an axle-tree, *callis* a path, *caulis* a stalk, *folis* bel-lows, *collis* an hill, *mensis* a month, *et* and *ensis* a sword, *cassis* a toil, *fascis* a faggot, *torris* a fire brand, *sentis* a thorn, *piscis* a fish, *et* and *unguis* a man's nail; *sic* so *fustis* a club, *sanguis* blood, *pollis* fine flour, *vepris* a brier, *que* and *cucumis* a cucumber; *junge* add *lapis* a stone, *pulvis* dust; *sic* so *vestis* a leaver, *postis* a door-post, *aqualis* an ewer. *Jungas* you may join *his* to these *cossis* a worm bred in wood, *jungas* you may join *antes* the fore-ranks of vines, *et* and *echineis* a sea-lamprey.

R U L E

R U L E XXI.

Hæc these nouns *sunt* are *dubia* doubtful, *finis* an end, *torquis* a collar, *que* and *clunis* a buttock, *que* and *scrobis* a ditch.

R-U L E XXII.

Os the termination *os mas* is masculine. *Cos* a whetstone, *dos* a portion, *hæc* are feminine: *Epos* an heroic poem, *et* and *os ossis* a bone, *et* and *os oris* a mouth, *hoc* are neuters.

R U L E XXIII.

Us the termination *us quartæ* of the fourth declension *est* is *sæpius* oftner *mas* masculine; *usque* always *mas* masculine *secundæ* of the second: *Græcum* a greek noun in *us est* is *potius* rather *femineum* feminine: *ut et ista* as those also *Latinis* among the Latins, *vannus* a fan, *humus* the ground, *colus* a distaff, *atque* and *domus* an house, *cum* with *porticus* a porch, *idus* the ides of a month, *carbasus* a sail of a ship, *alvus* a paunch, *acus* a needle, *figus* a fig, *tribus* a tribe, *que* and *adde* add *manus* an hand. *Grossus* a green fig, *specus* a den, *et* and *penus* all manner of provisions for a family, *atque* and *phaselus* a pinnace *dant hic et hæc* give *hic* and *hæc*. *Virus* poison, *pelagus* the sea *hoc* are neuters: *Vulgus* the mob *modo* sometimes *neutrum* is neuter, *modo* sometimes *mas* masculine.

R U L E XXIV.

Us the termination *us ternæ* of the third declension *neutrum* is neuter: *tamen* but *us* making *utis et* and *udis* in the genitive *hæc* is feminine. *Tellus* the earth *hæc* is feminine; *sed* but *pus*-let the termination *pus* making *podis* in the genitive, a from *ωῆς* the greek word a foot, *esto* be *virile* masculine.

R U L E XXV.

S the termination *s impurum* impure *femineum* is feminine: *Sunt et muliebria* these are also feminine, *laus* praise, *fraus* deceits.

deceit. *Mons* a mountain, *pons* a bridge, *fontis* a fountain, *dens* a tooth, *rudens* a cable, *que* and *hydrops* the dropsy, *que* and *chalybs* steel *hic* are masculine. *Adjungas* you may join *etiam* also *his* to these *seps* a venomous serpent, *belops* a kind of fish, *cum* with *gryphe* a griffon, *merops* a wood-pecker. *Sed* but *stirps* when it signifies the body of a tree, *scrobs* a ditch, *et* and *Adeps* fat *usurpantur* are used in *utroque genere* in the masculine and feminine gender.

R U L E XXVI.

X the termination *x* *femineum* is feminine. *Fornix* an arch, *spadix* a palm-branch, *que* and *grex* a flock, *que* and *calix* a cup, *atque* and *calyx* the cup or knop of a flower, *varix* a crooked vein, *urpax* a kind of harrow, *hic* are masculine, *disyllaba* et *ax*, *ex*, as are likewise words of two syllables in *ax* and *ex*. *At* but *carex* sedge, *fornax* a furnace, *forfex* a pair of sheers, *femineum* are of the feminine gender, *que* and *tradux* a grass, *atque* and *silex* a flint, *dubium* are of the doubtful gender; *sed* but *pumex* a pumice stone, *calx* the heel, *cortex* the rind or bark, *imbrex* a gutter-tile *potius* masculine are rather masculines; *onyx* a precious stone, *que* and *sandyx* a kind of purple colour *muliebria* are feminines.

R U L E XXVII.

Dicta Epicæna those called *Epicenes* *plerumque* for the most part *sequuntur* follow *genus* the gender *finis* of the termination: *Ut* that *distinguas* you may distinguish *sexum* the sex, *jungas* join *vel* either *mas*, *vel* or *femina*. *Phoenix* a phenix, *bombyx* a silk-worm, *glis* a dormouse, *turtur* a turtle, *vultur* a vultur, *que* and *orix* a sort of wild goat, *mus* a mouse, *lepus* a hare, *et* and *vermis* a worm, *mugil* a mullet, *que* and *delphis* a dolphin, *que* and *salar* a young salmon, *hic* is masculine. *Alcyon* a king's fisher, *et* and *halex* an herring *hec* is feminine; *quibus* to which *adde* add *Logopus* the white partridge, *aëdon* a nightingale. *Hæc* these *sunt* are *dubia* doubtful, *limax* a snail, *cenchris* a speckled snake: *sed* but *sæpius* *videbis* you will oftner see *ista* those that follow *feminea* feminines, *grus* a crane, *perdix* a partridge, *serpens* a serpent, *linx* an ounce, *talpa* a mole, *et* and *dama* a deer. *Anguis* a snake *potius* rather *mas* is masculine, *que* and *palumbes* a ring-dove *mas* is masculine.

HETEROCLITES.

Vox Heteroclita an heteroclite, *deficit* falls short, *aut* or *variat* alters its way of declining, *vel* or *abundat* exceeds.

Singulars only.

Fell gall, *venia*, pardon, *atque* and *pedum* a sheephook, *pus* corruption, *hepar* the liver, *vulgus* the mob, *omasum* tripe, *nitrum* nitre, *air* the air, *mundus* female ornaments, *pontus* the sea, *piper* pepper, *atque* and *veternum* the lethargy, *prolubium* a desire, *viscus* birdlime, *glastum* woad, *cum* with *glutine* glue, *ceffus* a marriage-girdle, *ether* the sky, *limus* mud, *humus* the ground, *virus* poison, *cum* with *lacte* milk, *juventus* youth, *pubes* ripeness of age, *et* and *tabes* a consumption, *que* and *fames* hunger, *senectæ* old-age, *supellex* household stuff, *plebs* the common people, *glarea* gravel, *atque* and, *sitis* thirst, *labes* a blemish, *argilla* potter's clay, *que* and *lues* a pestilence, *fænum* hay, *album* a register, *gypsum* plaster, *pelagus* the main-sea, *cum* with *nectare* nectar, *lardum* bacon, *sic* so *ebur* ivory, *atque* and *crocum* saffron, *luxus* extravagancy, *sabulum* fine gravel, *atque* and *juventa* youth, *invenies* these you will find, *non excedentia* never going beyond, *primum numerum* the singular number :

[*Sic* so, *barathrum* a deep pit, *senium* old age, *vitrum* glass, *que* and *lethum* death, *que* and *salum* the sea, *justitium* vacation, *penus* all victuals, *atque* and *penum* the same, *diluculum* break-of-day, *et* and *alec* pickle, *zingiber* ginger, *atque* and *opium* the juice of poppy, *jubar* a sun-beam, *bilum* the little black-eye of a bean, *que* and *delicium* a delight, *junge* add *his* to these, *meridies* midday, *et* and *mane* the morning, *balauustum* the flower of a pomegranate, *et* and *aurum* gold, *glutinum* glue, *item* also, *viscum* birdlime, *nihilum* nothing, *que* and *cænum* mire, *que* and *lutum* clay, *nemo* no body, *siler* a kind of willow, *vesper* the evening, *muscus* moss, *que* and *sanguis* blood, *que* and *finus* dung, *que* and *ver* the spring, *que* and *gelu* frost, *salus* safety, *que* and *putror* rottenness, *sinape*, *sinapi*, *sinapis* mustard.

Plurals only.

Excubiæ watch by day or night, *exequiæ* funeral rites, *nugæ* trifles, *nones* the nones of a month, *atque* and *calendæ* the calends, *reliquiæ* reliicks, *que* and *phalera* horse-trappings, *salina* salt-pits, *que* and *vergiliæ* the seven-stars, *Nundinæ* market-

market-day, *item* likewise *scalæ* stairs, *que* and *sic* so *vindiciæ* a rejoinder, *que* and *plagæ* toils, *cancelli* lattices, *fasti* annals, *scruta* lumber, *incunabula* cradle-clothes, *cunabula* the same, *flabra* blasts, *primores* chiefmen, *antes* the foreranks of vines, *lendes* nits, *que* and *grates* thanks, *que* and *fraces* the lees of oil, *manes* ghosts, *maiores* ancestors, *fascæ* the Roman fascæ, *que* and *laſtes* the small guts, *minores* posterity, *liberi* children, *item* likewise *lemures* spectres, *natales* parentage, *atque* and *penates* householdgods, *sic* so *Baiæ* a city of Campania, *Gabii* a city in Italy, *sic* so *Acroceraunia* high hills on the borders of Epirus, *Ceraunia* the same, *Susa* the metropolis of Susiana, *Esquilæ* one of the seven hills of Rome, *Gades* the island Cadiz near Spain, & and *plura nomina* more names *locorum* of places, *cum multis aliis* with many others, *semper* always *habentur* are accounted *pluralia* plurals.

[*Sic* so, *caulæ* a sheepfold, *exuvie* any thing stript off from a body, *que* and *geræ* gabions, *manubiæ* money for which the spoils of war are sold, & and *idus* the ides of a month, *nuptiæ* a marriage, & and *induciæ* a truce, *valvæ* folding doors, *que* and *insidiæ* an ambush, *que* and *minæ* threats, *inferiæ* sacrifices perform'd to the dead, *feriæ* holidays, *cunæ* a cradle, *clitellæ* a pack-saddle, *que* and *divitiæ* riches, *antiæ* a forelock, & and *induvie* clothes, *thermæ* a hot bath, *tricæ* toys, *atque* and *tenebræ* darkness, *quisquilie* the sweepings or refuse of any thing, *diræ* curses, *que* and *sic* so *primitiæ* the first fruits of the year, *que* and *scopæ* a broom: *quoque* also *postprincipia* the course of a thing begun, or a place behind the van-guard of an army, *nec-non* and also, *sponsalia* espousals, *tesqua* rough and desert places, *lamenta* lamentations, *simul* also *exta* entrails, *præcordia* the parts about the heart, *munia* an office or charge, & and *arma* arms, *que* and *scruta* lumber, *cum* with *fragis* strawberries, *præbenda* provisions furnished by purveyors, *magalia* Numidian cottages, *et* and *acta* acts, *cete* whales, *festæ* the feasts *deum* of the gods, *ceu* as, *quondam* formerly *Bacchanalia* feasts dedicated to Bacchus, *lautia* presents made to foreign ambassadors, *cum* with *iustiis* solemnities, *æstiva* summer-quarters, *reposita* a feast next day after a wedding, *Tempe* pleasant valleys in Thessaly, *mœnia* city walls, *cum* with *castris* a camp, & and *rostra* a pulpit, & and *lustra* the dens *ferarum* of wild-beasts, *invenies* these you will find, *ferè* almost, *cuncta* all, *tantum* only, *numero secundo* in the plural number.

Observation.

Cuncta all nouns *ferè* almost *carent* want *plurali* the plural number, *quæ* which *singula* are singulars, *sensu* in sense: *ut* as *propria* proper names, *frumenta* common names of grain, *herbæ* herbs, *pensa* things sold by weight, *uda* liquids, *metalla* metals, *quæ* and *abstracta qualitas* the abstract quality *rei* of a thing, *velut* as *albor* whiteness *ab* from *albus* white, *quæ* and *probitas* honesty *a* from *probus* honest, *et* and *nomina* names *eiusdem formæ* of the same sort; *sic* so *ferè cuncta* almost all, *carent* want, *primo* the singular number, *pluralia* that are plurals *sensu* in sense.

Præterea moreover *hæc Defectiva* the following Defectives *sunt* are *notanda* to be markt *tibi* by you; *quæis* to which *videbis* you will see *nomina* names *addita* given *de Græco fonte* from a Greek original.

Aptotes. ●

Nomen a noun in *-u-* vel or in *-i-* *nequam* good for nought, *fas* divine law, *nil* nothing, *nihil* nothing, *inftar* likenels, *cepe* an onion, *nefas* impiety, *dammus* condemned, *epos* an epic-poem, *exspes* hopeless, *tot* so many, *quot* how many, *Et* and *omnes numeros* all numerals *a tribus* from three *ad centum* to an hundred *vocabis* you shall call these *aptota* aptotes.

Monoptotes.

Monoptoton a monoptote, *flœtitur* is declined, *contentum* satisfied, *uno casu* with one case; *ut* as *nauti* a nut-shell, *eo inficias* I deny, *quæ* and *redigo ad incitas*, I put to a non-plus; *sic* so *ingratis* in spite of ones teeth, *duo Græco-latina* two latin words from the greek, *quæ* both, *ergo* for the sake of, *quæ* and *dicis* a form. *Declinatio quarta* the fourth declension, *dat* furnishes, *multa* many nouns, *per u* ending in *u*, *vel* or *ui*.

Diptotes.

Sunt those are called, *diptota* diptotes, *quibus* to which *duplex flexura* two cases *remansit* have remained. *Spontis* of choice *facit* makes *sponte*, *repetundarum* illegal exactions by governors of provinces *repetundis*, *suppetiæ* aid *dent* makes *suppetias*, *paulum* a little *paulo*, *quibus* to which *adde* add *supina* supines, *Et* and *jugeriis* an acre *dat* makes *jugere sexto* in the ablative case, *atque* and *verberis* a stripe *verbere*,

sed but *hæc duo* these two *sunt* are *sana* entire *numero secundo* in the plural number.

Triptotes.

Vocantur they are called *triptota triptotes quibus* in which *inflectis* you decline *tres casus* three cases: *sic* so *tabum, tabi, tabo* gore, *addas* you may add *simul* also *impetis* an attack, *quod* which *dabit* will give *impete primo* in the singular number, *que* and *impetibus secundo* in the plural. *Sic* so *quoque* also *mactus* prosperous *facit* maketh *macte* in the singular, *que* and *macti secundo* in the plural. *Astus* craft *babet* hath *astu* in the singular, *legimus* we have read *astus plurali* in the plural: *sordis* nastiness *babet* hath *sordem, quoque* also *sorde sexto* in the ablative; *que* and *tu* you *flektas* may decline *precis* prayer, *perque* both by *precem* & and *prece*; *opis* let assistance *que* and *opem, atque* and *ope adsit* come in; *sed* but *hæc tria* these three *sunt* are *sana* entire *numero secundo* in the plural number.

Tetraptotes.

Vicis a turn & and *ditionis* rule *deficiunt* are defective *recto* in the nominative & and *quinto* the vocative case: *vox* the word *vis* force *est* is *integra* entire, *nisi* unless *fortè* perhaps *dativus* the dative case *desit* be wanting: *hæc quoque* these likewise, *si* if *tollas* you except *vicium, sunt* are *sana* entire *secundo* in the plural number.

Jam now *satis est* it is sufficient, *ni* unless, *vis ut addam* you will have me add *quædam* some words *præcedentibus* to the foregoing ones, *quæis casus defecere* whose cases have fail'd them *quoque* also *secundo* in the plural number. *Sic* so *maria* the sea, *et* and *rura* the country, *sic* so *æra* brass *exoptant* desire *æribus*; *sic* so *rores* dew, *soles* the sun, *sic* so *ora* a mouth *formant* form *oribus, atque* and *soboles* an off-spring *libus*. *Mel* honey, *musta* new wine, *defruta* new wine whereof half is boiled away, *thura* frankincense, *bordea* barley, *farra* breadcorn *dabunt* will give *tres casus* three cases *sine sub uno* under one ending.

Variants in number.

Que both *delictum* a delight, *que* and *epulum* a banquet *faciunt* make *Æ plurali* in the plural number, *nundinum* market-day *babet* hath *plurali* in the plural *Æ*. *Argos* a town in Greece *I*; at but *balneum* a bath *Æ* & and *A*. *Tartarus* the deepest

deepest place in hell, *format forms tartara*, sic so *supparus* a linen garment or topfail, *atque* and *supellex* householdstuff, *Maenalus* a hill in Arcadia, *atque* and *etiam* also *mons Dindymus* the mountain Dindymus in Phrygia, *Ismarus* a mountain in Thrace, *atque* and *carbassus* a sail *sumunt* take A, *sec-nas* and also *Taygetus* a hill in Lacedemonia, *Avernus* the lake Avernus: *jocus* sport & and *rastrum* a rake, *frenum* the bit of a bridle, *atque* and *capistrum* a halter, *dant* make I & and A.

Redundants in the nominative.

Hæc these *geminant* double *finem* their ending, *baculus baculum* a staff, & and *arbor arbos* a tree, *plebs plebes* the common-people, *atque* and *locus locum* a place, *que* and *crater cratera* a wine bowl, sic so *delphin delphinus* a dolphin, sic so *elephas elephantus* an elephant, sic so *congrus conger* a conger, sic so *Meleagrus Meleager* a man's name; *cum multis aliis* with many others *quæ* which *lectio justa* due reading *docet* will teach. *Arma* arms, *jugum* a yoke, *frenum* the bit of a bridle *que* and *clivus* the side of an hill, *que* and *animus* a mind, *bacillum* a staff, *formant form* *adjectiva-us- &- is-* *adjectives* in *us-and is-* ut as *inermus, inermis* unarm'd.

As in præsentî construed.

AS in præsentî as in the present tense *format forms perfectum* the præter-perfect tense in *avi*: Ut as *no nas* to swim, *navi*, *vocito vocitas* to call often *vocitavi*. Deme except *lavo* to wash, *lavi*, *juvo* to help, *juvi*, *que-and nexo* to knit, *nexui*, et and *seco* to cut, *quod* which makes *secui*, *neco* to kill, *quod* which makes *necui*, *verbum* the verb *mico* to glitter, *quod* which makes *micui*, *plico* to fold, *quod* which makes *plicui*, *frico* to rub, *quod* which dat makes *fricui*; sic so *domo* to tame, *quod* which makes *domui*, *tono* to thunder, *quod* which makes *tonui*, *verbum* the verb *sono* to sound, *quod* which makes *sonui*, *crepo* to crack, *quod* which makes *crepui*, *veto* to forbid, *quod* which dat makes *vetui*, *atque* and *cubo* to lie along, *cubui*. *Hæc* these verbs *rare* formantur are seldom formed in *avi*. Do *das* to give *vult* will *formare* form *rite* by custom *dedit*, *sto* *stas* to stand, *steti*.

ES in praesenti *es in the present tense format forms perfectum the preter-perfect tense dans ui making ui*: Ut *as nigreo nigres to grow black nigrai; excipe except jubeo to bid jussi: sorbeo to sup up habet bath sorbui, quoque also sorpsi, mulceo to stroke gently mulsi; luceo to shine vult will have luxi, sedeo to sit sedi, que and video to see vult will have vidi; sed but prandeo to dine prandi, strideo to screek stridi, suadeo to advise suasi, rideo to laugh risi; et and ardeo to be on fire habet bath arsi. Syl- laba prima the first syllable his quatuor of these four infra follow- ing geminatur is doubled: namque for pendeo to hang down vult will have pependi, que and mordeo to bite momordi, spondeo to betroth vult will habere have sponendi, que and tondeo to clip or shear totondi. Si if l vel r l or r stet stands ante before geo, geo vertitur is changed in si into si: ut as ur- geo to urge urfi; mulgeo to milk dat makes mulsi, quoque also mulxi, frigeo to be cold frixi, lugeo to mourn luxi, et anaugeo to increase habet bath auxi. Fleo fles to weep dat makes flevi, leo les to anoint levi, que and indè natum its compound, deleo to wipe out delevi, pleo ples to fill plevi, neo to spin nevi. Manfi formatur is formed a from maneo to tarry; torqueo to twist vult will have torfi, hæreo to stick hæfi. Veo fit is made vi: ut as, ferveo to be hot fervi; niveo, to wink or beckon, et and indè satum its compound conniveo to wink poscit requires nivi et and nixi; cicio to stir up civi, que and vicio to bind vievi.*

Tertia the third conjugation formabit will form præteritum the preter-perfect tense ut as manifestum is shown hie here.

Bo fit is made bi: ut as lambo to lick lambi: excipe except scribo to write scripsi, et and nubo to be married nupsi; anti- quum the old verb cumbo to lie down dat maketh cubui.

Co fit is made ci: ut as vinco to overcome vici: pareo to spare vult will have peperci et and parfi; dico to say dixi, quo- que also duco to lead duxi.

Do fit is made di: ut as mando to eat mandi: sed but scindo to cut dat makes scidi, findo to cleave fidi, fundo to pour fudi; que and tundo to pound tufidi, pendo to weigh pependi, tendo to bend tetendi, pedo to break wind backward pepedi; junge join cado to fall, cecidi, cedo pro for verbero to beat cecidi, cedo pro for discedere to depart live or locum dare to give place, cessi: rado to go, rado to shave, lædo to hurt ludo to play, divido to divide,

di-vide, trudo to thrust, claudio to shut, plaudor to clap hands, rodo to gnaw, semper faciunt always make fi, ex do from do.

Go fit is made xi: ut as jungo to join junxi: sed but ante before go vult will have fi; ut as spargo to sprinkle sparsi: lego to read legi, et and ago to act facit makes egi: tango to touch dat makes tetigi, pungo to prick punxi que and pupugi; frango to break dat makes fregi, pago for paciscor to covenant vult will have pepigi; etiam also pango to sustain pegi, sed but usus custom maluit had rather form panxi.

Ho fit is made xi: ceu as traho to draw traxi docet shows, et and veho to carry vexi.

L-o fit is made ui: ceu as colo to till colui: excipe except psallo to play upon an instrument cum p with p, et and fallo to season with salt sine p without p, nam for utrumque both tibi format makes li; vello to pluck dat makes velli, quoque also vulsi, fallo to deceive sefelli; cello pro for frango to break ceculi, que and pello to drive away pepuli.

M-o fit is made ui: ceu as vomo to vomit vomui: sed but emo to buy facit maketh emi; como to deck the hair petit requireth compsi, promo to draw out prompsi; adjice add demo to take away, quod which format formeth dempsi, fumo to take sumpsi, premo to press pressi.

No fit is made vi: ceu as sino to suffer sivi: excipe except temno to condemn tempsi; sterno to strew dat makes stravi, sperno to despise spreui, lino to smear over levi, interdum sometimes lini et and livi, quoque also cerno to discern crevi: gigno to beget, pono to put, cano to sing, dant make genui, posui, cecini.

Po fit is made psi: ut as scalpo to scratch scalpsi: excipe except rumpo to break rupi, et and strepo to make a rustling noise, quod which format formeth strepsi, crepo to crack, quod which dat makes crepsi.

Quo fit is made qui: ut as linquo to leave liqui; demito except coquo to cook or dress meat coxi.

Ro fit is made vi: ceu as sero pro for planto to plant, et and semino to sow sevi, quod which signans signifying ordino to set in order dabit will make semper always melius rather serui; verro to brush vult will have verri et and versi; uro to burn ussi, gero to bear gessi, quaro to seek quarevi, tero to beat or bruise trivi, curro to run cucurri.

Arcesso to send for, capesso to take in hand, lacesso to provoke faciunt make so sivi, tamen however incesso to attack atque and facesso to dispatch exigit requires si and sivi; et and viso to go to see visi: sed but pinso to pound or grind, depso to knead, dant make ui et and i.

Sco fit is made vi: ut as pascō to feed cattle pavi: posco to require vult will have poposci, disco to learn vult will formare form didici, quinisco to nod the head quexi.

To fit is made ti: ut as verito to turn verti: sed but activum fisto let this verb active fisto pro for facio stare to make to stand notetur be marked, nam for dat it makes jure by right stiti; mitto to send dat giveth misi, peto to aske vult will formare form petivi, sterto to snore habet hath stertui, meto to mow messui: exi fit is made ab from ecto; ut as flecto to bend flexi; tamen however, necto to fasten together exui et and exi; item likewise pecto to comb, plecto to punish, exui; sed but rarius seldom exi.

Vo fit is made vi: ut as volvo to roll volvi: excipe except vivo to live vixi.

X-o fit is made ui: ut as texo to weave, quod which habebit will have texui, monstrat sheweth.

Cio fit is made ci: ut as facio to do feci; quoque also jacio to cast jeci; antiquum the old verb lacio to allure lexi, quoque also specio to see spexi.

Dio fit is made di: ut as fodio to dig fodi.

Gio is made gi: ut as fugio to flee fugi.

Pio fit is made pi: ut as capio to take cepi; excipe except cupio to desire cupivi, et and rapio to snatch rapui, sapio to savour or taste sapui atque and sapivi.

Rio fit is made ri: ut as pario to bring forth young peperii.

Tio makes fli, geminans doubling s: ut as quatio to shake quassi, quod which vix reperitur is scarce found in usu in use.

Denique finally no fit is made ui; ut as statuo to erect statui, pluo to rain format formeth pluvi, five or plui, sed but struo to build struxi, fluo to flow fluxi.

QUarta the fourth conjugation dat makes is of the present tensi in the perfect: ut as scio scis to know scivi monstra tibi shews you. Excipias except venio to come dans making veni, et and veneo to be sold venii, sarrio vel or sarrio to harrow dat makes sarriui, que and sarui, rancio to be hoarse rausi, sarcio to stuff sarfi, sarcio to patch sarfi, sepio to hedge sepsi, sentio to perceive sensi, fulcio to prop fulsi, item also haurio to draw hausi, sancio to establish sanxi, vincio to bind vinxi; salio to leap dat giveth salui and salui, et and amicio to clotbe micui et and -xi.

Simplex a *simple verb* et and compositivum its compound dat makes idem præteritum the same preter-perfect tense : ut as docui I have taught, edocui I have taught perfectly monstrat beweth. Sed but syllaba the syllable quam which simplex the simple verb semper always geminat doubles, non geminatur is not doubled compôsto in the compound. Creatis the compounds a of do to give, disco to learn, sto to stand, posco to require, exceptis being excepted. Flectas you may decline præcurro to run before, excurro to run out, decurro to run down, accurro to run to, pro-curro to run forth, dupliciter both ways, per by curri, que and per by cucurri.

Compositum the compound a of plico to fold cum with nomine a noun—sub or re-plicavi. Cætera the rest ui aut or avi : sic so a neco in the compounds of neco : Increpo to chide sæpius oftner optat chooses ui ; sed but discrepo to differ, dimico to fight, sæpius oftner avi.

Ob-sub-red-oles to cast a scent dant make olui ; sed but cætera the rest olevi. Omnia composita all the compounds a of pungo to prick formabunt will form punxi ; unum one repungo to prick again vult will have pupugi, interdumque and sometimes repunxi,

Flectio tertia the third conjugation format tibi forms to you nata the compounds a of do to give didi ; abscondo to hide sæpius oftner abscondi ; nata the compounds a of sto to stand dant give stiti.

Verba hæc simplicia these simple verbs, si if componantur they are compounded, mutant change vocalem primam the first vowel præsentis of the present tense, que and præteriti the preter-perfect tense in e into i ; damno to condemn, lacto to weedle, facro to dedicate, fallo to deceive, arceo to drive away, tracto to handle, fatiscor to be weary, cando to burn, vetus an old word, capto to lie in wait, jacto to throw, patior to suffer, que and gradior to step, partio to divide, carpo to crop, patro to atchieve or finish, scando to climb, spargo to sprinkle ; que and pario to bring forth young, cujus duo nata whose two compounds comperit to know for certain et and reperit to find dant make the perfect tense per i in i ; sed but cætera the rest per ui in ui ; velut as hæc these aperire to open, operire to cover. Hæc duo compôsta let these two compounds a of pasco pavi to feed cattle, compesco to pasture together, dispesco to drive from

passure, notentur be observed habere to make tantum only perscui; cetera the rest, ut as epasco to eat up, servabunt will keep usum the use simplicis of the simple verb.

HÆc these verbs, habeo to have, lateo to lie hid, salio to leap, statuo to erect, cado to fall, lædo to hurt, æstimo to value, tango to touch, cano to sing, sic so quæro to seek, cædo cecidi to beat, sic so egeo to want, teneo to hold fast, taceo to hold ones peace, sapio to savour, que and rapio to snatch, si if componantur they are compounded, mutant change vocalem primam the first vowel in i into i: ut as rapio to snatch rapui, eripio to take away by force eripui: natum a compound a of cano to sing dat makes præteritum the preter-perfect tense per ui in ui, ceu as concino to sing in consort concinui. Sic so displiceo to displease a of placeo to please; sed but hæc duo these two complaceo to please cum with perplaceo to please very much bene servant always keep usum the use simplicis of the simple verb.

Composita the compounds a of calco to tread, salto to leap or dance, mutant change a per u a into u: Conculco to tread upon, inculco to tread in, resulto to rebound, demonstrant serue id that tibi to you.

Composita the compounds a of claudio to shut, quatio to shake lavo to wash, rejiciunt a cast away a: a from claudio to shut, occludo to shut against, excludo to shut out, docet teaches id this; que and a from quatio to shake, percutio to strike, excutio to strike out: a from lavo to wash, nata the compounds proluo to drench, diluo to wash out. Sic so causo to pretend, in cuso to blame: natum the compound a of plaudo to clap hands ex au from au facit o makes o: ast but applaudo to approve unum alone retinet sibi keeps usum the use simplicis of the simple verb.

SI if componas you compound hæc these verbs ago to act, emo to buy, sedeo to sit, rego to rule, frango to break, et and capio to take, jacio to cast, lacio to allure, specio to behold, premo to press, pango to fasten, sibi mutant they change vocalem primam the first vowel præsentis of the present tense in i into i, nunquam never præteriti that of the preter-perfect tense; ceu as frango to break, refringo to break open refrégi; incipio to begin incepi, a of capio to take; sed but pauca let a few notentur

tentur be marked ; namque for perago to finish sequitur follows suum simplex its simple, que and satago to be busy ; atque and dego to live, ab from ago to act, dat makes degi, cogito bring together coegi ; sic so a from rego to rule, pergo to go forward vult will have perrexī, quoque and surgo to arise surrexi ; mediā syllabā the middle syllable præsentis of the present tense ademptā being taken away. Ista quatuor composita these four compounds a of pango to fix or fasten retinent a keep a, depango to fix in the ground, oppango to fasten against, circumpango to fasten about atque and repango to fasten again. Facio to do variat changeth nil nothing, nisi unless præposito præeunte when a preposition goes before ; olfacio to smell out docet teaches id that, cum with calfacio to make hot ; que and inficio to infect. Nata the compounds a of lego to read, re, per, præ, sub, trans, ad, præeunte going before servant keep vowel the vowel præsentis of the present tense. Cætera the rest mutant change it in i into i ; de quibus of which hæc these tantum only, intelligo to understand, diligo to love, negligo to neglect, faciunt make præteritum their præter-perfect tense lexi ; reliqua omnia all the rest legi.

Nunc now discas learn formare to form supinum the supine ex præterito from the præter-perfect tense.

Bi sumit takes sibi to itself tum : namque for sic so bibi to drink fit is made bibitum.

Ci fit is made Etum : ut as vici to overcome victum testatur shows, et and ici to smite dans making ictum, feci to do factum, quoque also jeci to cast jactum.

Di fit is made sum : ut as vidi to see visum : quædam some geminant s double s ; ut as pandi to open passum, sedi to sit sessum, adde add scidi to cut, quod which dat makes scissum, atque and fidi to cleave fissum, quoque also fodi to dig fossum. Hic here etiam also advertas you may mark, quod that syllaba prima the first syllable, quam which præteritum the præter-perfect tense vult geminari will have doubled, non geminatur is not doubled supinis in the supines ; idque and this totondi to clip or shear dans making tonsum docet shows, atque and cecidi to beat quod which maketh casum, et and cecidi so fall, quod which dat maketh casum, atque and tetendi to bend, quod which maketh tensum et and tentum, tutudi to beat or pound tussum, atque and pepedi to break wind backwards, quod which format forms peditum ; adde add dedi to give, quod which jure by right vult will have datum.

Gi fit is made ctum : ut as legi to read lectum ; pegi to fasten que and pepigi to covenant dat makes pactum, fregi to break fractum, quoque also tetigi to touch tactum, egi to aet actum, pupugi to prick punctum ; fugi to flee dat makes fugitum.

Li fit is made sum : ut as falli stans standing pro for sale condio to season with salt, falsum ; pepuli to drive away dat makes pulsus, ceculi to break culsum, atque and sefellu to deceive falsum, velli to pluck dat makes vulsum, quoque also tuli to bear habet has latum.

M-i, n-i, p-i, qu-i, formant form tum, velut as manifestum is manifest hic bere : Emi to buy emtum, veni to come ventum, cecini a from cano to sing cantum, cepi a from capio to take captum, quoque also coepi to begin coeptum, rupi a from rumpo to break ruptum ; quoque also liqui to leave lictum.

Ri fit is made sum : ut as verri to brush versum ; excipe except peperu to bring forth young partum.

Si fit is made sum : ut as visi to go to see visum ; tamen but misi to send formabit will form missum, si geminato being doubled ; excipe except fulsi to prop sultum, hausi to draw haustum, sarsi to patch sartum, quoque also sarsi to stuff sartum, ussi to burn ustum, gessi to bear gestum, torsi to wreath requirit bath duo two supines tortum et and torsum, indulsi to indulge indultum que and indulsus.

Psi fit is made ptum : ut as scripsi to write scriptum ; excipe except campsi to exchange campsum.

Ti fit is made tum : namque for steti a from sto to stand, que and stiti a from sisto to make to stand, ambo both ritè by right dant make statum : tamen but excipe except verti to turn versum.

Vi fit is made tum : ut as flavi to blow flatum ; excipe except pavi to feed cattle pastum ; lavi to wash dat makes lotum, interdum sometimes lautum atque and lavatum, potavi to drink facit makes potum, interdum sometimes et also potatum ; sed but favi to favour faustum, cavi to beware cautum ; a from sero sevi to sow ritè formes you may rightly form satum, livi que and lini to besmear dat makes litum ; solvi a from solvo to loose solutum, volvi a from volvo to roll volutum ; singultivi to sob vult will have singultum, veneo venis venivi to be sold venum, sepelivi to bury ritè by right sepultum.

Quod a verb that dat makes ui dat makes itum : ut as domui to tame domitum ; excipe except quodvis verbum every verb in uo, quia because semper formabit it will always form ui in utum into utum ; ut as exui to put off exutum : deme except rui a from ruo to rush dans making ruitum. Secui to cut vult

vult *will have* sectum, necui *to slay* nectum, que *and* fricui *to rub* frictum, item *also* miscui *to mingle* mistum, et *and* amicum *to clothe* dat *makes* amictum; torrui *to roast* habet *bath* tostum, docui *to teach* doctum, que *and* tenui *to hold* tentum, consului *to consult* consultum, alui *to feed* altum que *and* alitum; sic *so* salui *to leap* saltum, colui *to till* quoque *also* ocului *to hide*, cultum: pinsui *to pound or grind* habet *bath* pistum, rapui *to snatch* raptum, que *and* serui *a from* sero *to set in order* vult *will have* sertum, sic *so* quoque *also* texui *to weave* habet *bath* textum: sed *but* hæc *these* mutant *change* ui *in* sum *into* sum; nam *for* censeo *to judge* censum, cellui *to break* habet *bath* celsum, meto *messui to reap* habet *bath* quoque *also* messum; item *also* nexui *to knit* nexum, sic *so* quoque *also* pexui *to comb* habet *bath* pexum. Patui *to lie open* dat *makes* passum, carui *to want* cassum que *and* caritum.

Xi *it is made* etum: ut *as* vinxi *to bind* vinctum: quinque *five* abjiciunt *cast away* n; ut *as* sinxi *to form or fashion* sictum, minxi *to make water* mictum, adjice *add* pinxi *to paint* dans *giving* pictum, strinxi *to bind fast* strictum, quoque *also* rinxi *to grin* rictum. Flexi *to bend*, plexi *to twist*; fixi *to fasten*, dant *make* xum; et *and* fluo *to flow* fluxum.

QUodque compositum supinum *every compound supine* formatur *is formed* ut *as* simplex *the simple* supine; quamvis *although* eadem *syllaba the same syllable* non *stet* *does not continue* semper *always* utrique *to them both*. Composita *the compounds* a *of* tustum *to pound*, n *demptâ by taking away* n, *make* tustum; a *of* ruitum *to rush*, i *mediâ the middle letter* i, *demptâ being taken away*, fit *is made* rutum; et *and* quoque *also* a *of* saltum *to leap* sultum. Nata *sevi the compounds of* sevi *dant give* situm; nata *do the compounds of* do *ternæ of the third conjugation* dant *give* ditum: pleraque *nata* sto *most of the compounds of* sto *dant give* statum, pariter *atque and also* situm.

Hæc *these* captum *to take*, factum *to do*, jactum *to cast*, raptum *to snatch*, mutant *change* a *per e into e*; et *and* cantum *to sing*, partum *to bring forth young*, sparsum *to sprinkle*, carptum *to crop*, quoque *also* fartum *to stuff*.

Verbum *the verb* edo *to eat* compositum *being compounded* non *facit maketh* not estum, sed *but* esum; unum *one* duntaxat *only* comedo *to eat up* formabit *will form* utrumque *both*.

A *from* nosco *to know* duo *these two tantum only*, cognitum *to know* et *and* agnitum *to know again* habentur *are found*; cætera *the rest* dant *make* notum: noscitum *jam now* est *is* nullo *in usu* not *in use*.

VERBA

Verba verbs in or admittunt take præteritum their præter-perfect tense ex anteriore supino from the former supine, in verso being turned per s into s, et and sum vel or fui conso-
ciato being added; ut as a of lectum to read lectus sum vel or
fui I have been read. At but horum of these nunc sometimes
est there is deponens a deponent, nunc sometimes est there is
commune a common notandum to be noted. Nam for labor
to slide dat makes lapsus: patior to suffer passus, et and ejus
nata its compounds; ut as compator to suffer together compas-
sus, que and perpetior to endure, formans forming perpassus;
fateor to own dat makes fassus, et and inde from thence confi-
teor to confess dat makes confessus; atque and reor to suppose
ratus sum.

Gradior to step, eum natis with its compounds, dat makes
gressus; eeu as digredior to step aside digressus: metior to
measure mensus sum, et and utor to use usus.

Ordior, pro for texo to weave, dat makes orditus, pro for
incepto to begin orsus, nitor to strive nisus, vel or nixus sum,
et and ulciscor to revenge ultus, obliviscor to forget vult will
have oblitus sum, fruor to enjoy optat choiceth fructus vel or
fruitus, junge add misereri to have pity misertus.

Tuor, to see, et and tueor to defend vix vult will scarcely
have tatus, sed but tuitus sum; adde add locutus a of loquor
to speak, et and adde add secutus a of sequor to follow.

Exporior to try facit maketh expertus; paciscor to make a
bargain gaudet will formare form pactus sum, nanciscor to
get nactus, apiscor to obtain, quod which est is vetus verbum
an old verb, aptus sum, unde from whence adipiscor to get
adeptus.

Junge add queror to complain questus, junge add proficiscor
to go profectus, expergiscor to awake expectatus sum; et and
quoque also hæc these comminiscor to devise commentus, nas-
cor to be born natus, que and morior to die mortuus, atque
and orior to arise, quod which facit maketh præteritum its
præter-perfect tense ortus.

Hæc these verbs habent have præteritum a præter-perfect
tense activæ of the active, et and passivæ vocis of the pas-
sive voice: cenno to sup format tibi formeth you cenavi et and
cenatus sum, juro to swear juravi et and juratus, que and po-
to to drink potavi et and potus, titabo to stumble titubavi vel
or titubatus.

Sic *fo* fabrico to frame, affecto to hanker after, communico to impart, fluctuo to waiver, specto to behold, nutrio to nourish, fuesco to accustom, elucubro to write by candle-light, coepio to begin, censeo to assess, prandeo to dine, et and placeo to please; at but usus the use passivæ formæ of the passive form est is rarior not so common.

Nubo to be married nupsi que and nupta sum, mereor to deserve meritum sum vel or-merui; adde add libet it pleaseth libuit, libitum, et and adde add licet it is lawful, quod which makes licuit licitum; tædet it wearieth, quod which dat makes tæduit et and pertæsum; adde add pudet it shamesh, faciens making pudit que and puditum, atque and piget it grieveth, quod which tibi format forms you piguit que and pigitum.

Neutro-passivum a neuter-passive format tibi forms you præteritum its præter-perfect tense sic thus, gaudeo to be glad, gavissus sum, fido to trust fisis, et and audeo to dare, ausus sum, fio to be made factus, soleo to be wont solitus sum.

Fugiant these verbs want præteritum the præter-perfect tense, attollo to lift up, fatisco to chink, fatiscor to be weary, glisco to spread, recello to thrust or fall back, aveo to covet, sum to be, denseo to thicken, flaveo to be yellow, meio to make water, irascor to be angry, sisto pro for stare to stand, renideo to shine, vergo to bend, lussero pro for patior to suffer, furo to rave, ceveo to wag the tail, liveo to be black and blue, tollo to lift up, polleo to be powerful, nexo to fasten together, fero to bear, ferio to smite, ambigo to doubt, mœreo to be sad, ringor to grin or fret, divortor to lodge, labo to totter, prævertor to outstrip, liquet it is clear, atque and revertor to return, diffiteor to deny, veicor to eat, medeor to heal, liquor to be melted, reminiscor to remember, glabreo to be bald, comperior to know for certain, quibus to which adjice add creata fido the compounds of fido, et and passiva passives, quibus activa whose actives caruere supinis have no supines; inceptiva inceptives in sco, meditativa omnia all meditatives, præter besides hæc tria these three, nupturio to long to be married, cum with parturio to be in labour, que and esurio to be hungry.

Tamen yet perfecta the præter-perfects interdum sometimes petuntur are borrowed his for these aliunde from other verbs: nam for tollo to lift up sumit sibi mutuò borrows for itself sustuli, fero to bear tuli, que and sum I am fui, fata fido the compounds

of *fido* to perch or alight *fedi*, *meio* to make water *minxi*, et and *ista tria nata* those three compounds ex *vertor* of *vertor* *supra* above adoptant take *verti*. Sic so *vescor* to eat, *medeor* to heal, *liquor* to be melted, *reminiscor* to remember, *poscunt* require *præteritum a præter-perfect tense* a from *pascor* to be fed, *medicor* to heal, *liquefio* to be melted, *recordor* to remember.

HÆc verba these verbs raro seldom aut or nunquam never retinebunt will have *supinum* their *supine*; *prodigo* to squander away, *lambo* to lick, *mico* to glitter, *morior* to die, *scabo* to claw, *clango* to shout, *refello* to confute, *discesco* to drive from pasture, *posco* to require, *disco* to learn, *compesco* to restrain, *quiniſco* to nod the head, *dego* to live, *ango* to throttle, *batuo* to beat, *fremo* to roar, *respuo* to refuse, *ningo* to snow, *rudo* to bray, *antecello* to excel, *volo* to be willing, *psallo* to play on an instrument, *ſatago* to be busy, *algeo* to be chill, *ſtrideo* to ſcreek, *ſtrido* the ſame, *fulgeo* to ſhine, *diſto* to be at a diſtance, *timet* to fear, *paveo* to dread, *conniveo* to wink, *fervet* to be hot, *inceſſo* to attack, *ſapio* to taſte, *nata* the compounds a of *nuo* to nod, et and a of *cado* to fall, *præter* except *occido* to fall down, *quod* which *facit* maketh *occaſum*, *que* and *recido* to fall back *recaſum*; *reſpuo* to reſuſe, *ſterto* to ſnore, *gruo* to cry like a crane, *metuo* to fear, *urgeo* to urge, *turgeo* to ſwell, *calveo* to be bald, *luceo* to ſhine, *cæcution* to be almoſt blind, *ſimplex* the ſimple verb *linguo* to leave, *ſimplex* the ſimple verb *arceo* to drive away, *frigeo* to be cold, *deſſo* to knead, *cluo* to ſhine or be famous, *clepo* to ſteal or conceal, *ineptio* to triſte, *geſtio* to leap for joy, *lugeo* to mourn, et and *quæcunque* *neutra* whatever *neuters ſecundæ* of the ſecond conjugation *formantur* are formed in *ui*; *excipias* you may except *oleo* to ſmell, *doleo* to be in pain, *placeo* to pleaſe, *que* and *taceo* to hold one's peace, *pareo* to obey, *item alſo* *careo* to be without, *noceo* to hurt, *valeo* to be in health, *que* and *caleo* to be hot, et and *ſimplex* the ſimple verb *lateo* to lie hid, *namque* for hæc theſe *gaudent ſupino* have their *ſupine*.

Syntaxis conftrued.

VERBUM personale a verb personal concordat agrees cum nominativo with its nominative case numero in number et and personâ person: ut as,

Amor love vincit conquers omnia all things.

Labor improbus indefatigable pains vincit conquers omnia all things.

Nominativus the nominative case pronominum of pronouns rarò seldom exprimitur is expressed: ut as, Veni I came, vidi I saw, vici I conquered. Ita aiunt so they say; ita fertur so 'tis reported; ita prædicant, so they give it out.

Nisi unless gratiâ for the sake distinctionis of distinction aut or emphasis energy: ut as, Quamvis altho' ille he niger was black, quamvis altho' tu you esles were candidus fair.

Tu you eras was mihi dominus my lord, tu you vir my husband; tu you frater my brother.

Aliquando sometimes verbum infinitum a verb of the infinitive mood, aliquando sometimes oratio a sentence, aliquando sometimes adverbium an adverb cum with genitivo a genitive case, stat standeth loco instead nominativi of a nominative case: ut as, mentiri lying non est is not meum my way. Didicisse to have learnt ingenuas artes the liberal sciences fideliter thoroughly emollit softens much mores mens manners. Partim viro- rum part of the men ceciderunt were slain in bello in the war.

Verba verbs infiniti modi of the infinitive mood statuunt set ante se before them accusativum an accusative pro instead of nominativo a nominative, conjunctione the conjunction, quod, vel or ut omiffa being left out: ut as, Dices you shall say me that I vivere am alive. Nec nor negabo will I deny me that I suavisse advised it. Vincant let those conquer, quos whom mavis you had rather vincere should conquer.

Verbum a verb positum placed inter between duos nominativos two nominative cases diverforum numerorum of different numbers potest may concordare agree cum alterutro with either of them: ut as, vestes the clothes fuit were lana wool. Pectus her breast quoque also fiunt becomes robora oak.

Nomen a noun multitudinis of multitude singulare of the singular number quandoque sometimes jungitur is joined verbo to a verb, vel or adjectivo plurali to an adjective plural, idque and that etiam even in diverso genere in a different gender: ut as, Rustica turba the clownish multitude vetant forbid it. Pars part et too parati prepared certare to try their skill.

Duo

Duo two vel or plura singularia more singulars habentur are reckoned pro for plurali a plural: ut *as*, Troja Troy que and Priamus Priam cadunt fall simul together. Pudor modesty, que and verum truth, que and fides faith fugere fled away.

Adjectivum an adjective concordat agrees cum substantivo with its substantive genere in gender, numero number, et and casu case: ut *as*, torva leena the grim lionsess sequitur pursues lupum the wolf, lupus ipse the wolf himself capellam the goat, lasciva capella the wanton goat sequitur pursues florentem cytisum the flowery cythus.

Relativum a relative concordat agrees cum with antecedente its antecedent genere in gender, numero number et and personâ person: ut *as*, O diva O goddess, quæ who regis rules over gratum Antium the delightful (city) Antium.

Nec nor unica vox is a single word solum only ponitur put pro for antecedente the antecedent, sed but interdum sometimes oratio a sentence: ut *as*, veni I came in tempore in season, quod which est is rerum omnium primum the main business of all.

Relativum a relative collocatum placed inter between duo substantiva two substantives diversorum generum of different genders concordat agrees nunc sometimes cum priore with the former, nunc sometimes cum posteriore with the latter: ut *as*, stella the star, quæ which dicitur is called Phaëthon. Gloria glory, qui which est is fructus the fruit virtutis of virtue.

Aliquando sometimes relativum a relative concordat agrees cum primitivo with the primitive, quod which subauditur is understood in possessivo in the possessive: ut *as*, nec nor legis readest thou mea verba my words, qui who sum am summotus removed ad Istrum to the river Danube.—Quoties as often as nullus nominativus no nominative case interponitur is put inter between relativum a relative et and verbum verb, relativum the relative erit shall be nominativus the nominative case verbo to the verb: ut *as*, hi sunt these are the persons, qui who trepidant tremble, et and pallent turn pale ad omnia fulgura at every flash of lightning.—At but si if nominativus a nominative case interponatur is put between relativo a relative et and verbo verb, relativum the relative regitur is governed a verbo by the verb, aut or ab aliâ dictione by some other word, quæ which locatur is placed in oratione in the sentence cum verbo with the verb: ut *as*, Erat there was gramen grass circa about it, quod which proximus humor the neighbouring water alebat fed. Habe have tua arma thy arms, quibus in which

which letatus you rejoiced. Cujus nomen whose name amo I love. Quorum unus one of whom fuit was Echion. Cui similem whose like vidi I have seen. Quibus to whom omnia all things debent ought cedere to yield. Quem whom mors death non terret does not affright. Quos whom juvenca the heifer mirata est wondered at. Interrogativum an interrogative et and ejus redditivum the word which answers it erunt shall be ejusdem casus of the same case et and temporis tense: ut as, Quem librum what book legis dost thou read? Virgilium Virgil. Quid agitur what is doing in theatro in the playhouse? Ridetur they are laughing.

Hæc regula this rule fallit fails cum when respondendum est the answer is to be made per by possessiva the possessives, meus mine, tuus thine, suus his, &c. ut as, cujus codex whose book est is hic this? meus mine.

Quum when duo substantiva two substantives diversarum rerum betokening divers things concurrunt meet together, posterius the latter ponitur is put in genitivo in the genitive case: ut, as, amor the love nummi of money crescit increases. Es thou art custos a keeper pauperis horti of a poor garden.

Hic genitivus this genitive case sæpiissime vertitur is very often turned in adjectivum possessivum into an adjective possessive: ut as, patris domus the house of my father, paterna domus my father's house. Heri filius the son of my master, herilis filius my master's son.

Est ubi sometimes etiam also vertitur it is turned eleganter elegantly in dativum into a dative: ut as, est he is pater a father urbi to the city, que and maritus an husband urbi to the city.

Duo substantiva two substantives ejusdem rei respecting the same thing connectuntur are joined together in eodem casu in the same case per by appositionem apposition: ut as, opes riches irritamenta malorum the incentives to mischief effodiuntur are dug out of the earth.

Adjectivum an adjective in neutro genere of the neuter gender positum put substantivè substantively postulat requires aliquando sometimes genitivum a genitive case: ut as, hic here est there is minimum laudis very little praise. Tantum timoris so much fear ille trahit does he draw along with him. Ferimur we are carried per opaca viarum through dusky places.

Interdum sometimes genitivus a genitive case ponitur tantum is set alone, priore substantivo the former substantive subaudito being understood per ellipsin by the figure ellipsis: ut as, Ventum erat we were come ad Vestæ to Vesta's: templum the word temple subauditur is understood. Hectoris Andromache
Hector's.

Hector's Andromache: uxor the word-wife subauditur is understood.

Laus the praise et and *vituperium* the dispraise, vel or potius rather *qualitas* the quality rei of a thing apponitur is put substantivis to substantives in genitivo in the genitive case, vel or ablativo ablative: ut as, homo a man maximi corporis of a huge body que and terribili facie a terrible countenance.

Causa the cause et and *modus* manner rei of a thing apponitur is put etiam also substantivis to substantives in ablativo in the ablative case: ut as, tu you es are pater illi his father naturâ by nature, ego consiliis I by my advice. Sunt there are quidam some persons homines who are men non re not in reality, sed but nomine name.

Opus need et and *usus* need exigunt require ablativum an ablative case: ut as, non opus est there is no need of gladiis swords, opus est mihi I have need of crine paterno my father's hair. Nunc now usus there is need of viribus strength, nunc now manibus rapidis of nimble hands.

Autem but opus videtur seems quandoque sometimes poni to be put adjective adjectively pro for necessarius necessary, que and variè construitur has different constructions: ut as, dux a leader et and auctor adviser est is opus necessary nobis for us. Dices you will say nummos that money opus esse is necessary mihi for me. Para provide alia other things, quæ which sunt are opus needful. Para get ready, quod that which opus est is necessary parato to be provided.

Adjectiva adjectives, quæ which significant signify desiderium desire, notitiam knowledge, memoriam memory, item also curam care, timorem fear, innocentiam innocence atque and contraria the contraries iis to these exigunt require genitivum a genitive case: ut as, avidus greedy lucri of gain. Prudens rerum having a knowledge of the world. Memor mindful illius escæ of that food. Est he is prodigus lavish of his money. Rudis unskilled belli in war. Immemor unmindful artis of his art.

Compos one that hath obtained his purpose, *impos* void of, *consors* a partaker of, *exsors* without share of, *potens* that hath the command of, *impotens* that hath not the command of, que and alia others, quæ which induunt put on quodammodo in some measure naturam the nature nominum of nouns, recipiunt take post se after them genitivum a genitive case: ut as, erat she was compos mentis in her senses. Consors a partaker que both patriæ of my country, que and lyræ harp. Di O ye Gods potentes who preside over maris the sea et and terræ the land, que and tempestatum storms. Hyantius compellat addresses participes the partners operum of his labours.

Adjectiva

Adjectiva verbalia *verbal adjectives* in *as* plerumque *usually* exigunt *require* genitivum *a genitive case*: ut *as*, *tempus* *time* *edax* *is a devourer* *rerum* *of all things*.

Nomina partitiva *nouns partitive*, aut *or* posita *put* *partitive* *partitively*, interrogativa *interrogatives*, et *and* quædam numeralia *some nouns of number*; item *likewise* comparativa *comparatives* et *and* superlativa *superlatives*, accepta *being taken*, partitive *partitively*, exigunt *require* genitivum *a genitive case*, à quo *from which* et *also* mutuuntur *they borrow* fere *commonly* genus *their gender*: ut *as*, *quisque* *whosoever* *deorum* *of the gods* *fuit* *he was*. *Sancle* *deorum* *sacred deity*, *sequimur* *we follow* *te* *you*. *Uter* *whether* *horum* *of these two* *est* *is* *insanior* *the madder?* *Una* *one* *boum* *of the cows* *reddidit* *returned* *vocem* *the sound*. *O major* *O the elder* *juvenum* *of the two young gentlemen*. *Maxime* *O the greatest* *magnum* *of mighty monarchs*.

Autem *but* *usurpantur* *they are used* et *also* *cum* *with* *his* *præpositionibus* *these prepositions*, *de*, *e*, *ex*, *inter*, *ante*: ut *as*, *e* *quibus* *of whom* *unus* *one* *ait* *says*, *unus* *the only one* *de* *of tot* *fratribus* *so many brothers* *modo* *lately*. *Haud* *ignotissima* *not the least known*, *inter* *amongst* *Avernales* *nymphas* *the Avernian nymphs*. *Immanior* *scelere* *outrageously* *vicious* *ante* *beyond* *alios omnes* *all others*. *Pulcherrimus* *the most beautiful* *ante* *above* *alios omnes* *all others*.

Ordinalia *ordinals* etiam *also* exigunt *require* ablativum *an ablative case* *cum* *præpositione* *with a preposition* in alio *sensu* *in another sense*; et *and* *secundus* *inferior* *to aliquando* *sometimes* *dativum* *a dative*: ut *as*, *primus* *the first* *ab* *Æneâ* *from Æneas*. *Heros* *a hero* *secundus* *next* *ab* *Achille* *after Achilles*. *Secundus* *inferior* *haud ulli* *to none* *veterum* *of the ancients* *virtute* *in valour*. Item *in like manner*: *proximus* *next* *a primo* *after the first*. *Tu* *you* *nunc* *now* *eris* *shall be* *alter* *the next* *ab illo* *after him*.

Adjectiva *adjectives*, quibus *whereby* *commodum* *advantage*, *incommodum* *disadvantage* *similitudo* *likeness*, *dissimilitudo* *unlikeness*, *voluptas* *pleasure*, *submissio* *submission*, aut *or* *relatio* *relation* *ad aliquid* *to any thing* *significatur* *is signified*, *postulant* *require* *dativum* *a dative case*: ut *as*, *ventus* *the wind* *erat* *was* *aptus* *proper* *nautis* *for the seamen*, *non aptus* *not proper* *amanti* *for a lover*. *Turba* *a multitude* *gravis* *troublesome* *paci* *to peace*, *que* *and* *inimica* *averse* *placida* *quieti* *to gentle ease*. Sic *so* *catuli* *whelps* *similes* *are like* *canibus* *dogs*, sic *so* *hædi* *kids* *matribus* *their dams*. *Color* *the*

the colour, qui which erat was albus white, est is nunc now contrarius contrary albo to white. Opus an undertaking gratum pleasing agricolis to farmers. Supplex submissive tibi to you. Proximus very near urbi to the city. Huc hither referuntur are referred nomina nouns composita compounded ex præpositione of the preposition con : ut es, contubernalis a comrade, commilito a fellow-soldier, conservus a fellow servant, cognatus a kinsman by birth, &c.

Quædam some ex his of these adjectives junguntur are joined etiam also genitivo to a genitive case: ut as, Regina the queen fidissima most faithful tui to you. Quem he whom metuis you fear, erat was par like hujus this man.

Communis common, alienus strange, immunis free, et and alia non pauca many others, junguntur are joined variis casibus to divers cases: ut as, Hoc this commune is common Deo tecum to God and you. Est it is commune common, animantium omnium to all living creatures. Est he is alienus an enemy to ambitionis vel or ambitioni vel or ab ambitione ambition. Sumus we are immunes free from illorum malorum, vel or illis malis, vel or ab illis malis those evils.

Natus born, commodus convenient, incommodus inconvenient, utilis useful, inutilis useless, vehemens earnest, aptus fit, junguntur are joined interdum sometimes etiam also accusativo to an accusative case cum præpositione with the preposition ad: ut as, natus born ad arma for arms. Vestis a garment comoda proper ad cursum for a race. Aptus ready ad nutus heriles to understand his master's nod.

Verbalia verbals in bilis accepta taken passivè passively, et and participialia participials in dativum postulant require a dative case: ut as, Ille he occidit died flebilis to be lamented multis bonis by many good men, flebilior more to be lamented nulli by none quam than tibi you, Virgili O Virgil. O Julius, memorande worthy to be mentioned mihi by me post: after nullos sodales none of my acquaintance.

Mensura the measure magnitudinis of quantity subjicitur is put after adjectivis adjectives in accusativo in the accusative case, interdum sometimes in ablativo in the ablative, interdum sometimes etiam also in genitivo in the genitive: ut as, Turris a tower alta centum pedes an hundred feet high. Fons a fountain latus pedibus tribus three feet wide. Area a floor lata pedum denum ten feet broad.

Nomen a noun partis affectæ of the part affected subjicitur is put after adjectivis adjectives in accusativo in the accusative case, interdum sometimes in ablativo in the ablative, interdum

teridum sometimes etiam also in genitivo in the genitive: ut as, similis like deo a God or as to his countenance, humerisque and make. Tum then Dido vultum demissa with a downcast look breviter briefly profatur replies. Crine ruber red-haired, niger ore black-mouthed, brevis pede club-footed, lumine lusus blear-eyed. Infelix animi distressed in mind. Bollane O Bollanus felix cerebri happy for being so cholerick.

Adjectiva adjectives, quæ which pertinent relate ad copiam to plenty, aut or inopiam want, vel ablativo, vel genitivo gaudent govern either an ablative or a genitive: ut as terra a land ferax fruitful Cetera in corn, que and multo feracior much more fruitful uvis in grapes. Dives rich agris in lands. Dives rich pictâ vestis in embroidered garments et and auri gold. Nudus stript agris of his lands. Othrys mount Othrys erat was nudus arboris without a tree. Parens a mother orba deprived luminis of sight. Que and pueri orbi deprived parentibus of their fathers. Fabula a story plena full joci of merriment. Uva sit may the grape be plena full mero of wine.

Adjectiva adjectives regunt govern ablativum an ablative case significantem signifying instrumentum the instrument, causam caus, et and modum manner rei of a thing: ut as, Insignis remarkable pharetrâ for his quiver. Que and Acastus insignis remarkable jaculo for his javelin. Tardus slow vulnere by the wound equi of his horse, que and sessus enfeebled senilibus annis with aged years. Attollens lifting up ora his visage pallida pale miris modis in a wondrous manner. Egregius excellent formâ in beauty.

Comparativa comparatives cum when exponantur they may be explained per by quàm than admittunt receive ablativum an ablative case: ut as, Candidior whiter cycnis than swans formosior more beautiful hederâ albâ than the white ivy. Argentum silver est is vilis of less value auro than gold, aurum gold virtutibus than virtue: id est that is, quàm than aurum gold, quàm than virtutes virtues.

Comparativa comparatives et and superlativa superlatives admittunt take etiam also ablativum an ablative case, quæ which significat signifies mensuram the measure excessus of exceeding: ut as, tute ipse you yourself fatebere shall own id that multo majus to be of much greater value. Quo plus habent the more they have, eo plus cupiunt the more they desire. Quanto by how much dux a general major is greater milite than a common soldier, tanto by so much tua gloria thy glory est is minor less nostrâ than ours. Tanto by so much pessimus

mus poeta *he is the worst poet omnium of all, quanto by how much tu you are optimus patronus the best advocate omnium of all.*

Dignus *worthy*, indignus *unworthy*, præditus *endued*, captus *disabled*, extorris, *banished*, contentus *content*, fretus *relying upon*, (item also *adjectiva adjectives*, quæ *which* significant *signify* pretium *price*) exigunt *require* ablativum *an ablative case*: ut *as*, Puer *a boy* dignus *worthy* laude *of praise*. Haud indignus *not unworthy* nostro honore *of our honour*. Præditus *indued* ingenio *with wit*. Erat *he was* captus lumine *blind*. Extorris *banished* finibus *from his country*. Contentus *content* vivere *to live* parvo *on a little*. Queis fretus *relying on whom* ego *I* amo *love*. Venale *to be purchased* gemmis *with jewels*, nec *nor* auro *gold*.

Nonnulla *some* horum *of these* admittunt *admit* interdum *sometimes* genitivum *a genitive*: ut *as*, Carmina *verses* digna *worthy* deæ *of a goddess*. Indignus *unworthy* magnorum *of the* avorum *of my great ancestors*. Extorris *banished* regni *the* kingdom.

Mei *of me*, tui *of thee*, sui *of himself*, nostri *of us*, vestri *of you*, genitivi *the genitive cases* primitivorum *of the primitives*, ponuntur *are used* cum *when* persona *a person* significatur *is signified*: ut *as*, Uror *I am inflamed* amore *with the love* mei *of myself*. Imago nostri *the picture of our person*.

Meus *mine*, tuus *thine*, suus *his own*, noster *ours*, vester *yours*, ponuntur *are used*, cum *when* actio *action*, vel *or* possessio, *the possession* rei *of a thing* significatur *is signified*: ut *as*, Amor meus *my love*. Imago nostra *our picture*: id est *that is*, quam *which* nos *we* possidemus *possess*. Genitivi *the genitive cases* nostrum *of us*, et *and* vestrum *of you* sequuntur *follow* nomina *partitiva* partitive *nouns*: ut *as*, Nemo *none* nostrum *of us*. Major *the elder* vestrum *of you*. Maximus *natu* *the eldest* nostrum *of us*.

Hæc *possessiva* *these possessives*, meus *mine*, tuus *thine*, suus *his own*, noster *ours*, vester *yours*, recipient *take* post se *after them* hos *genitivos* *these genitive cases*; ipsius *of himself*, solius *of him alone*, unius *of one*, duorum *of two*, trium *of three*, &c. omnium *of all*, plurium *of more*, paucorum *of few*, cujusque *of every one*; et *and* genitivos *the genitive cases* participiorum *of participles*, qui *which* referuntur *are referred* ad *primitivum* *to the primitive* subauditum *understood*; ut *as*, respublica *the state* salva *est* *was preserv'd* meâ *unius* operâ *by my single service*. Meum *solius* peccatum *my offence* alone non potest *cannot* corrigi *be amended*. Noster *duorum* eventus *the event of us two*. Respondet *he answers* vestris *paucorum*

vel *either* cum præpositione *with a preposition* vel *or* sine corum laudibus *the praises of you few*. Vidisti *you saw* nostros flentis ocellos *my weeping eyes*.—Sui *of himself* et *and* suus *his own* sunt *are* reciproca *reciprocals*, hoc est *that is*, reflectuntur *they have relation* semper *always* ad id *to that*, quod *which* præcessit *went before* in eadem oratione *in the same clause*, aut *or* annexâ *in one connected* per copulam *by a copulative*: ut as, Ipse *he* non cavet *does not take heed* sibi *for himself*. Sua lana *their wool* est *is* decori *an ornament* ovibus *to sheep*. Amnes *the rivers* rediêre *ran back* in fontes suos *to their fountains*. Ixion volvitur *is rolled round* et *and* sequiturque *both follows* que *and* fugit *flies from* se *himself*.

Ipse *et and* idem *possunt may* jungi *be joined* omnibus personis *to all the three persons*: ut as, Ipse *I my self* vidi *saw*, ipse *videris* look you to it, ipse *he himself* dixit *said* it. Ego *idem* *I the same person*. Tu *idem* *thou the same person*. Ille *idem* *be the same person*.

Ille sæpe *often* notat *denotes* eminentiam *eminence*, verò *but* iste contemptum *contempt*: ut as, Alexander ille magnus *Alexander the great*, Tarquinius iste superbus *Tarquin the proud*.

Cum *when* hic *et and* ille *referuntur are referred* ad duo anteposita *to two things or persons going before*, hic debet *ought* usitatissimè *most usually* referri *to be referred* ad posterius *to the latter*, ille ad prius *to the former*: ut as, Quocunque *what way soever* aspicias *you look*, est *there is* nihil *nothing*, nisi *but* pontus *sea* et *and* aër *air*; hic *the latter* tumidus *swelling* nubibus *with clouds*, ille *the former* minax *threatning* fluctibus *with waves*.

Verò *but* interdum *sometimes* hic *refertur is referred* ad prius substantivum *to the former substantive*, ille ad posterius *to the latter*: ut as, sic *so* est *is* deus *the God*, et *and* virgo *the young lady*; hic *he* celer *swift* spe *with hope*, illa *she* timore *with fear*.

Verba substantiva *verbs substantive*; ut as, sum *I am*, forem *I might be*, fio *I am made*, existo *I am*: verba passiva *verbs passive* vocandi *of calling*; Item *likewise* verba gestus *verbs of gesture*; exigunt *require* nominativum *a nominative case* utrinque *on both sides*: ut as, Ego *I* non sum pastor *am no shepherd*. Cygnus *fit* *becomes* nova avis *a new bird*. Patiens *deigning* vocari *to be called* ultor *the avenger* Cæsaris *of Cæsar*. Ast *but* ego *I*, quæ *who* incedo *regina* walk *as the queen* divum *of the Gods*.

Infinitum *a verb of the infinitive mood* quoque *also* habet *has* eosdem casus *the same cases* utrinque *on both sides*: ut as, Hypocrita *an hypocrite* cupit *desires* videri *to seem* justus *righteous*,
vel

vel or se that he videri may seem justum righteous. Licet cuivis any one may esse be diserto eloquent in causa facili in an easy cause. Item also; Expedit vobis it is for your advantage esse to be bonas honest. Quo commisso by what fault of mine mihi non licet may I not be allowed esse to be piam faithful?

Sum postulat requires genitivum a genitive case, quoties as often as significat it signifies possessionem possession, officium duty, aut or pertinere respect ad aliquid to any thing: ut as, Pecus the cattle est is Melibæi Melibæus's. Est it is the business pauperis of a poor man numerare to count pecus his flock. Erat it was tantæ molis a work of so great difficulty condere to found Romanam gentem the Roman state.

Hi nominativi these nominative cases excipiantur are excepted, meum my, tuum thy, suum his, nostrum our, vestrum your, humanum humane, belluinum brutal, et and similia the like: ut as, Non est it is not meum my property malignè spitefully, detrectare to lessen benefacta good actions. Non nostrum 'tis not for me componere to adjust tantas lites this weighty contest inter vos between you. Est it is humanum an humane frailty errare to mistake.

Verba verbi æstimandi of esteeming or valuing genitivo gaudent govern a genitive case: ut as, numina the deities non magni pendebantur were not much set by. Opes wealth pluris sunt is more valued nunc now, quàm than præci præci temporis annis in antient times.

Flocci of a lock of wool, nauci of a nut shell, nihili of nothing, pili of an hair assis of a penny, hujus of this, teruncii of a farthing, adduntur are added peculiariter peculiarly his verbis to these verbs, æstimo, pendo, facio, I esteem or value: ut as, Ego illum flocci pendo I don't value him of a straw, nec hujus facio nor do I regard him of this qui who pili æstimat esteems me not of an hair. Ista these sunt are singularia peculiar expressions: Æqui vel or boni consulo—Æqui bonique facio—id est that is, accipio in bonam partem I take in good part. Verba verbi accusandi of accusing, damnandi, of condemning monendi of warning, absolvendi of acquitting, et and similia the like, postulant require genitivum a genitive case criminis of the charge, vel or rei monitæ the thing warned of: ut as, Inceso I accuse hunc this man probri of dishonesty. Et and damnabis will you condemn eundem the same person sceleris of impiety? Nunc now precor I pray ut that vivant they may live, que and admoneant remind him mei of me. Absolvite acquit reos the accused culpæ of blame.

Aliquando sometimes ablativum they require an ablative
vel

præpositione without a preposition: ut as, Pargo I clear te you hâc culpâ, vel de hâc culpâ of this fault.

Idque and that they do perpetuò always in his in these words, uterque both, nullus none, alter the other, neuter neither of the two, alius another, ambo both, et and in superlativo gradu in words of the superlative degree: ut as, accusas do you accuse furti of theft, an or stupri dishonesty? Utroque vel or de utroque of both: accusaris you are accused de plurimis of very many things simul at once.

Satago, to be busy about, misereor et and miseresco to pity, regunt govern genitivum a genitive case: ut as, Is he satagit has his hands full rerum suarum of his own business. O virgo O lady miserere pity mei myself, miserere pity meorum my relations. Et and miseresce pity generis tui your own family.

Reminiscor to remember, obliviscor to forget, memini to remember, recordor to call to mind admittunt admit genitivum a genitive case, aut or accusativum an accusative: ut as, Alter another reminiscitur remembers Satyri the Satyr. Reminiscitur he remembers tempus illud that time. Licet altho' sis oblitus you may have forgot pariter alike que both gemmæ my seal, que and manus my hand writing. Jam now hinc from this time obliviscere forget amissos Graios the lost Greeks. Quid why cogis me do you force me meminisse to remember malorum my misfortunes? Forſan perhaps juvabit it will be a pleasure olim hereafter meminisse to remember hæc these hardships. Recordor I remember hujus meriti this favour in me towards me. Si if recordor I remember ritè well audita the things I heard.

Potior to gain or enjoy jungitur is joined genitivo to a genitive case, aut or ablativo an ablative: ut as, potitus he obtained regni the kingdom, que and voti his wish. Teucric the Trojans potiuntur gain corpore his body, et and armis arms.

Omnia verba all verbs regunt govern dativum a dative case ejus rei of that thing, aut or personæ person, cui to or for which aliquid any thing acquiritur is gotten, vel or adimitur is taken away: ut as Lethalis arundo the deadly shaft hæret sticks lateri to her side. Turnus let Turnus quærat seek fœdera alliances sibi for himself. Quis casus what mischance ademit has taken away te thee mihi from me? Illa she detrahet will take off personam the mask tuo capiti from thy head.

Verba verbs varii generis of various sorts appendent belong hujc regulæ to this rule.

Imprimis in the first place verba verbs significantia signify. ing commodum advantage, aut or incommodum disadvantage

regunt

regunt govern dative a dative case: ut as, Ingeniose O witty sir, faveas be favourable ingenio meo to my wit. Forma my beauty nocuit mihi did me harm. Cæsar, O Cæsar, non meretur he does not deserve displicuisse to have displeased tibi you, qui who festinat is in haste placuisse to please you. Ipsa she invidet envies sibi herself. Juvat it is a pleasure indulgere to indulge dolori grief. Si if non vis you will not parcere spare puero the boy, parce spare seni the old-man.

Excipe except juvo to help, lædo to hurt, offendo to offend, delecto to delight, quæ which regunt govern accusativum an accusative case: ut as, Castra the camp juvant delights multos many, sed but libelli my books læsere me have hurt me. Nolo I will not offendere offend cœnantes my guests sordibus by my slovenliness. Citharæ the harp delectant delights illos them.

Verba verbs comparandi of comparing regunt govern dative a dative case: ut as, Non quisquam heros not any hero conferet will compare se himself illi to him bello in war. Sic thus solebam was I wont componere to compare magna great things parvis with small. Et and Ajax does Ajax comparat compare se himself mihi with me?

Interdum sometimes regunt they govern accusativum an accusative cum præpositione ad with the preposition ad, et and inter, verò but sæpius oftner ablativum an ablative cum præpositione cum with the preposition cum: ut as, Si if comparatur he is compared ad illum to him nihil est he is nothing. Hæc these things non sunt are not conferenda to be compared inter se with one another. Et and Ulysses confertur is Ulysses compared mecum with me?

Verba verbs dandi of giving, et and reddendi of restoring regunt govern dative a dative case: ut as, Do I give divitias riches tibi to you. Redde me restore me vitæ priori to my former way of life.

Hæc these verbs, nempe to wit dono to present, impertio to bestow, aspergo to sprinkle, insterno to spread or cover, induo to put on habent have variam constructionem different constructions: ut as, Dono I present hoc munus this gift tibi to you. Dono I present te you hoc munere with this gift: Salutem tibi impertio I wish you health. Salute te impertio I wish you health. Aspersit he cast labem a blemish mihi upon me. Aspersit me he asperst me labe with a blemish. Instravit he spread penulam his cloak equo upon his horse. Instravit he covered equum his horse penulâ with his cloak. Indue put tunicam your coat tibi upon you. Indue clothe te yourself tunicâ with your coat.

- Itidem

Idem in like manner consulo, metuo, timeo, formido, caveo, et *and quædam alia some others habent have* variam constructionem *a different construction* pro according to variâ significatione *their different signification*: ut as, Dic *say*, consule *take care of* pecori *the flock* pariter *in the same manner*, que *and* magistris *the owners* pecoris *of the flock*. Et *and* piget *I am vexed* consuluisse *that I gave counsel* infido viro *to the faithless man*. Que *and* consulit *he asks counsel of* rectorem *of the* ratis *the* pilot *of the ship* de cunctis astris *about all the stars*. Consulis *you order* istuc *that matter* pessimè *very ill in* te *against your-* self, atque *and in* illum *against him*. Metuo, timeo, formido, caveo tibi *I am in fear for you*. Metuo, timeo, formido, caveo te, vel *or a* te *I am in fear of you*.

Studeo, cum *when* significat *it signifies* favere *to favour* regit *governs* dativum *a dative case*: ut as, Cælius studuit *favoured* Catilinæ *Catiline*.

Interdico *to forbid* meddling with regit *governs* dativum *a dative case* personæ *of the person*, ablativum *an ablative case* rei *of the thing*, verò *but interdum sometimes* accusativum *an accusative* rei *of the thing*: ut as, Interdico tibi *I forbid thee* medling with aquâ *water* et *and* igni *fire*. Interdixit *he* forbid histrionibus *the actors* scenam *the stage*.

Verba *verbs* promittendi *of promising*, ac *and* solvendi *of pay-* ing, regunt *govern* dativum *a dative case* personæ *of the person*: ut as, Venus promisit *promised* mihi *me* vana *what is false*. Possit *may* *he* solvere *pay* vota *his* vota *his* tibi *absenti* *to you in your absence*.

Verba *verbs* imperandi *of commanding* ac *and* nunciandi *of showing or telling*, regunt *govern* dativum *a dative case*: ut as, Heu! alas! imperat *he commands* ventis *the winds*, non imperat *but does not command* tumidæ iræ *his swelling anger*. Et *and* senex *when I am old* referam *I shall relate* tempora prisca *antient times* pueris *to boys*.

Excipe *except* rego *to rule*, gubernare *to govern*, quæ *which* postulant *require* accusativum *an accusative case*: jubeo *to order*, tempero *to rule*, et *and* moderor *to rule*, quæ *which* nunc *sometimes* dativum *govern a dative case*, nunc *sometimes* accusativum *an accusative case*; regno *to reign over*, et *and* dominor *to reign over*, quæ *which* nunc *sometimes* dativum *govern a dative case*, nunc *sometimes* accusativum *an accusative* cum-præpositione *with a preposition*: ut as, Luna *the moon* regit *rules* menses *the months*. Deus ipse *God himself* gubernat *governs* orbem *the world*. Jussit *he gave orders* consulis *to the consuls*. Que *and* jussit *he ordered* silentia *silence* dextrâ *with his right hand*. Ille *he* temperat *sibi* has

the command of himself. Sol the sun temperat orders omnia all things luce by his light. Hic he moderatur manages equos his horses. Qui who non moderabitur will not govern iræ his passion. Regnat he reigns over huic urbi this city. Solitus accustomed regnare to reign per urbes over cities. Dominabitur he shall reign over victis Argis the vanquished Argos. In victos dominabitur Argos he shall reign over the vanquished Argos.

Verba verbs minandi of threatening, et and irascendi of being angry, regunt govern dativum a dative case: ut as, Terræ the land minantur threatens multa many things mihi to me, aquæ the water multa as many. Non irascor I am not angry with patri my father. Quis enim for who succenset is angry with amanti one that loves him?

Verba verbs fiderdi of trusting regunt govern dativum a dative case: ut as, O formose puer! O beautiful boy! ne crede trust not nimium too much colori to your beauty. Qui he who fidit sibi relies upon himself dux as a leader regit rules examen the swarm. Mando I commit cætera the rest fortunæ to fortune.

Verba verbs obsequendi of complying with, et and repugnandi of opposing, conveniendi of agreeing with, et and discrepandi of differing from, regunt govern dativum a dative case: ut as, Cede deo yield to the Deity. Fortuna fortune repugnat opposes ignavis precibus idle prayers. Omnia all things non conveniunt do not suit omnibus annis all years. Parcus a frugal man discordat differs from avaro one that is covetous.

At but quædam some ex his of these junguntur are joined cum aliis casibus with other cases: ut as, Disconvenit inter meque et te, you and I don't agree. Tu dic name you quo pignore for what wager certes you will contest mecum with me. Noli pugnare don't fight duobus, id est that is, contra duos against two.

Sum, cum compositis with its compounds, præter except possum, regit governs dativum a dative case: ut as, mors death erit will be mihi to me munus a kindness. Jam now verba words desunt are wanting dolori to my grief.

Sum, cum multis aliis with many others, admittit admits geminum dativum a double dative case: ut as, Vitis the vine est is decus an ornament arboribus to trees. Fistula the pipe, quam which Damætas olim formerly dedit gave mihi me dono as a present. Nec por timuit was he afraid nè lest quis any one olim hereafter verteret shou'd impute it vitio as a fault sibi to him.

Est pro for habeo to have regit governs dativum a dative case: ut as, namque for est mihi I have pater a father, est I have injusta noverca a severe step-mother domi at home. An what nescis don't you know esse regibus that kings have longas manus long hands?

Suppetit it sufficeth est is simile like huic to this: ut as, Enim for non est he is not pauper poor, cui rerum suppetit usus who hath a sufficiency.

Verba verbs composita compounded cum his adverbiiis with these adverbs, bene, satis, male, et and ferme for the most part cum his præpositionibus with these prepositions, ad, con, in, super, ob, sub, præ, post, inter, et and ante, postulant require dativum a dative case: ut as, Tantum only maledicit he rails at utrique both of them. Addit he adds vim strength victis to the vanquished. Que and accommodat buckles on ensen a sword lateri to his side. Condidit he has engaged himself mihi to me jam already. Sidera the stars collucent give light mundo to the world. Incute impart vim force ventis to the winds. Que and impone put finem an end labori to your labour. Supervenit he comes suddenly upon hosti the enemy. Objice expose te yourself bello to war. Irrise thus baffled, offer expose te yourself periculis to dangers. Subdite elap calcar a spur equo to the horse. Succurrite succor fœlis rebus our distressed affairs. Præideo I preside over foribus the doors cœli of heaven. Quis who præidet presides over arvis the plowed lands? Tamen however posthabui I postponed mea seria my serious affairs illorum ludo to their sport. Interferit she intermixes oscula kisses verbis between her words. Antefero I prefer pacem peace bello to war.

Sed but præcedo to surpass, præcurro to run before, præverto, prævertor to outstrip, præsto to excell et and alia non paucæ many others aliquoties sometimes mutant change dativum the dative in alium casum into another case: ut as, Turnus præcesserat had got the start of tardum agmen his tardy army. Que and prævertitur she outstrips celerem Eurum the fleet wind fugâ in speed. Vel præstet even tho' he should excell or come up to magnum Achillem the great Achilles. I go, illude insult virtutem true courage superbis verbis in haughty words.

Est ubi sometimes hic dativus this dative tibi, aut or sibi, aut or etiam also mihi, additur is added tantum only causâ for the sake elegantiz of elegance: ut as, Nec nor vagus pes let your unsteady foot natet tibi swim about in laxâ pelle in too large a shoe. Jugulo I stab hunc this man suo sibi gladio with his own sword. Cæsar erit mihi in medio shall be in the center.

Verba transitiva *verbs transitive* cujuscunque generis of what kind soever, five whether *activi active*, five or *deponentis deponent*, five or *communis common*, regunt govern accusativum an accusative case: ut as, Pueri lads, cogite pen up oves the sheep. Tityrus servabit will watch hædos the kids. Illa she sequitur follows patrem her father, que and sequitur follows sorores her sisters. Febris the fever depascitur feeds upon artus their limbs.

Sæpe accidit it often happens ut that accusativus an accusative case et both collocetur may be placed, et and construat^r construed ante verbum before the verb: ut as, quid what non amor sentit does not love perceive?

Quinetiam further verba neutra *verbs neuter* habent have accusativum an accusative case cognatæ significationis of a near signification, qui which non raro often vertitur is changed in ablativum into an ablative: ut as, vivere vitam to live a life, Vivere vitâ the same. Ire viam to go a journey, Ire viâ the same. Obire mortem to die, Obire morte the same.

Sunt there are some quæ which habent have accusativum an accusative case figuratè by a figure: ut as, Nec nor vox does your voice sonat sound hominem like an human creature, O dea O a Goddess! certe doubtless. Qui who Curios simulant pretend to be like Curius, et and Bacchanalia vivunt revel as at Bacchanals. Rufillus olet smells pastillos of perfumed balls, Gorgonius hircum like a goat.

Verba verbs rogandi of asking, docendi of teaching, celandi of concealing, regunt govern duplicem accusativum two accusative cases: ut as, Illa she rogat asks Jovem of Jupiter munus a favour sine nomine without naming it. Posce ask veniam pardon deos of the Gods. Jam now docebo I will teach te thee tua fata-all thy fate.

Interdum sometimes mutant they change alterum accusativum one of the accusatives in ablativum into an ablative cum præpositione with a preposition: ut as, Obtestemur let us humbly intreat ipsum him, que and oremus let us beg veniam this favour ab ipso of him.

Accusativus an accusative case sequitur follows verba verbs rogandi of asking, et and docendi of teaching in voce passivâ in the passive voice: ut as, Posceris you are required to sacrifice exta the entrails bovis of an heifer. Matura virgo the adult virgin gaudet is pleas'd doceri in being taught motus Ionicos the Ionic movements.

Quædam verba some verbs passivæ vocis of the passive voice, imprimis especially vestiendi of arraying, regunt govern

govern etiam also accusativum an accusative case more after the manner Græcorum of the Greeks, κατὰ subintellecto being understood: ut as, Nunc one while movetur he dances like Satyrum a Satyr, nunc another while agrestem Cyclopa a clumsy Cyclops. Induitur she puts on pallam a cloak. Que and recingitur ungirds sumtum anguem the snake she had taken.

Quodvis verbum any verb admittit admits ablativum an ablative case significantem signifying instrumentum the instrument, causam the cause, aut or modum the manner actionis of an action: ut as, Hi these certant endeavour defendere to defend themselves jaculis with darts, illi they saxis with stones. Et and premebam I pressed digitos his fingers digitis with my fingers, et and frontem his forehead fronte with my forehead. Corda her heart tument swells rabie with madness. Remisit he let go lora the reins formidine thro' fear. Procubuit he fell down more after the manner mactati juveneci of a slain bullock. Curva senectia crouching old age jam veniet will soon come tacito pede with a silent foot.

Præpositio a preposition aliquando sometimes additur is added ablativo to the ablative case causæ of the cause, et and modi the manner actionis of an action: ut as, Non possum I cannot loqui speak præ incrore for grief: Locuta est she spoke mollius more softly, et and solito de more after the usual manner matrum of mothers. Nomen a noun pretii of price ponitur is put in ablativo in the ablative case: ut as, Domus est emptā tibi you have bought a house his quinquagenis millibus for an hundred thousand sesteriums, quam which cupis you desire vendere to sell vel breviori summa even at a cheaper rate.

Vili at a low rate, parvo for little, paululo for little, minimo for very little, magno for much, permagno for very much ponuntur are put sæpe often sine substantivis without substantives: ut as, Amæne O Amænus, vendis you sell domum your house vili cheap. Æneia hospitia his friendship with Æneas itabunt shall cost illi him haud parvo not a little. Atridæ the sons of Atreus mercantur would purchase hoc this magno with a great sum.

Hi genitivi these genitive cases excipiuntur are excepted positi put sine substantivis without substantives: tanti for so much, quanti for how much, cum compositis with their compounds, pluris for more, minoris for less, majoris, for a greater price: ut as, Priamus Priam, que and tota Troja all Troy vix fuit was scarce tanti of so much worth. Dic mihi tell me quanti for how much possit it may emi be bought.

Non vendo *I sell not* pluris *for more*, quàm *than* ceteri *others*; fortasse *perhaps* etiam *even* minoris *for less*. Alapæ *freedom* veneunt *is sold* multo majoris *at a much greater price* mecum *with me*.

Sin *but if* substantiva *their substantives* addantur *are added*, ponuntur *they are put* in ablativo *in the ablative*: ut *as*, Quanto metiris pretio *what price do you set upon it?* Vendidi *I sold* minore pretio *at a lower price*, quàm *than* emi *I bought*.

Valeo *to be worth* reperitur *is found* junctum *joined* cum accusativo *with an accusative case*: rarius *seldom* cum ablativo *with an ablative*: ut *as*, Hæc mea tecta *these buildings of mine* valent *are worth* mille talenta *a thousand talents* argenti *of silver*. Valet *it is worth* vicenis sestertiis *twenty sestertiums*.

Verba *verbs* abundandi *of abounding*, implendi *of filling*, onerandi *of loading*, et *and* his diversa *their contraries*, junguntur *are joined* ablativo *to an ablative case*: ut *as*, semper eget *he always wants*, semper abundat *always abounds* liquidis aquis *with liquid water*. Implet *he fills* pectus *my breast* falsis terroribus *with imaginary terrors*. Pars part onerant *load* mensas *the tables* epulis *with dishes*. Achilles spoliavit *deprived* illum *him* vitâ *of life*. Ego *I* levabo *will ease* te *thee* hoc fasce *of this load*. Animæ *souls* carent *are free* morte *from death*.

Quædam verba *certain verbs* implendi *of filling*, et *and* carenti *of wanting* regunt *govern* genitivum *a genitive case*: ut *as*, Implentur *they are filled* veteris Bacchi *with old wine*, que *and* pinguis ferinæ *fat venison*. Dum *whilst* eges *you want* custodis *a guardian*. Non indiget *he does not stand in need* nostræ artis *of our skill*.

Fungor *to discharge*, fruor *to enjoy*, utor *to use*, vescor *to live upon*, et *and* alia quædam *some others* junguntur *are joined* ablativo *to an ablative case*: ut *as*, Fungitur *he discharges* officio *his duty*. Fruitur *she enjoys* meliore marito *a better husband*. Utere *use* sorte tuâ *thy good fortune*. Utere *may you have* melioribus fatiis *a better fate*. Quicumque *whoever* of us vescimur *live upon* munere *the bounty* terræ *of the earth*. Item *in like manner* prosequor *or* afficio *te* laude, honore, pœna, &c. *I praise, honour, punish thee*.

Mereor *to deserve*, cum adverbis *with these adverbs* bene *well*, malè *ill*, meliùs *better*, pejùs *worse*, optimè *very well*, pessimè *very ill*, jungitur *is joined* ablativo *to an ablative case* cum præpositione *with the preposition* de: ut *as*, Gloriosum est *it is a glorious thing* mereri *to deserve* bene *well* de republicâ

licâ of the republic. Si if merui I have deserv'd quid any thing bene well de te of you.

Quædam verba some verbs accipiendi of receiving, auferendi of taking away, et and distandi of being distant junguntur are joined ablativo to an ablative case, cum præpositionibus with the prepositions a, ab, abs de, e, ex: ut as, Accipit he receives artes his instructions ab iisdem magistris from the same masters. Ille he rapit pulls calidum ferrum the reeking sword de vulnere from the wound. Que and distamus we are distant totidem gradus so many degrees ab illo from him.

Hic ablativus this ablative case, post verba after verbs auferendi of taking away et and distandi of being distant, vertitur is turned non raro often in dativum into a dative: ut as, Tum then aufert he takes off caput the head ipsi domino from the master himself. Amicus a friend distabit wil! differ in-fido scurræ from a faithless parasite.

Ablativus an ablative case significans signifying mensuram the measure excessûs of excess additur is added verbis to verbs, quæ which obtinent carry vim the force comparationis of comparison: ut as Multo præstat 'tis much better cavere to avoid, quàm than admittere to give admittance. Superat he outdoes hunc this man multis gradibus by many degrees.

Ablativus an ablative case sumtus taken absolute absolute additur is put quibuslibet verbis to any verbs: ut as, Ille he, tandem at length depositâ formidine having laid aside his fear, fatur hæc thus speaks. Aspexi I beheld lachrymas tuas your tears, me lachrymante when I was crying. Est una mens omnibus they are all of a mind rege incolumi whilst the king is safe. Carpe viam take your journey me duce I being your guide.

Nomen a noun partis affectæ of the part affected ponitur is put in ablativo in the ablative case, et and poëtice by the poets in accusativo in the accusative: ut as, Torpet he is stupified animoque both in mind, et and corpore in body. Nescit he knows not how stare to stand loco in his place, micat auribus his ears quiver, et and tremit artus his joints tremble. Cingor I am bound victricia tempora as to my victorious temples lauro with laurel.

Interdum sometimes etiam also in genitivo in a genitive case: ut as, Discrucior I am tormented animi in mind.

Diversi casus divers casus diversæ rationis of different construction possunt may acjungi be set after eidem verbo the same verb: ut as, Dedit he gave vellem his garment mihi to me propriâ manu with his own hand pignori for a p'ledge, te præsentem you being present.

Ablativus an ablative case agentis of the doer additur is added passivis to verbs passive antecedente a vel ab the preposition a or ab going before, et and interdum sometimes dativus a dative: ut as, Qui locus which place olim formerly conditus est was built a forti Diomede by the Gallant Diomedes. Increpor I am blamed a cunctis by all. Murus the city wall pulsatur is battered ab hoste by the enemy. Cava buccina his hollow trumpet sumitur is taken up illi by him.

Ceteri casus the other cases manent continue in passivis in passives, qui which fuerunt belonged to them activorum as actives: ut as, Accusaris thou art accused furti of theft a me by me.

Verba infinita verbs of the infinitive mood familiariter adduntur are usually put after verbis quibusdam some verbs, et and adjectivis adjectives: ut as, Cum when possis you may vendere sell captivum a captive, noli do not occidere kill him. Jussus being ordered confundere scdus to violate the treaty. Erat he was tum then dignus worthy amari to be loved. Indocilis unable pati to endure pauperiem poverty.

Verba infinita verbs of the infinitive mood interdum sometimes ponuntur are put absolute absolutely or alone per ellipsin by the figure ellipsis, præsertim especially in iracundiâ in a passionate way of speaking et and narrationibus in narrations: ut as, Mene that I victam baffled desistere should d. sist from incepto my undertaking? Tum then celerare they hastened fugam their flight in sylvas into the woods, et and fidere trusted nocti to the night.

Infinitum a verb infinitive sumitur is taken etiam also pro for nomine a noun: ut as, nihil nothing superest remains quod that faciam I can do præter except amare to love.

Gerundia gerunds in di pendent depend tum both a quibusdam substantivis on certain substantives, tum and also adjectivis adjectives genitivum regentibus that govern a genitive case: ut as, Facias make finem an end orandi of intreating, sum I am certus determined eundi to go. Cupidis to those that are desirous pugnandi of fighting sunt there are mille artes a thousand ways nocendi of doing mischief.

Infinitivus modus an infinitive mood ponitur is put pro for gerundiis the gerunds in di poëticè by the poets: ut as, Tempus it is time tibi for you abire to be gone. Soli the only persons periti skill'd cantare in singing.

Interdum sometimes etiam also genitivus pluralis a genitive plural non inveniunt additur is elegantly put after gerundiis gerunds in di: ut as, Causa the reason collocandi of placing reliquorum siderum the rest of the stars. Gerun-

Gerundia *gerunds in do* pendent *depend* ab his præpositionibus *upon these prepositions*, a, ab, abs, de, e, ex, cum, in, pro : ut *as*, Ignavi *idle boys* citò *deterrentur* *are soon discouraged* a *discendo* *from learning*. Ubi *superior* gloria *greater glory* comparatur *is gotten* ex *defendendo* *by defending*, quàm *than* ex *accusando* *by accusing*. Ratio *the means* scribendi *of writing* conjuncta *est* *is joined* cum *loquendo* *with speaking*.

Ponuntur *they are put* et *also* absque præpositione *without a preposition* more *after the manner* ablativi *of an ablative case*, et *and* interdum *sometimes* dativi *a dative* : ut *as*, Vitium *the disease* alitur *is nourished*, que *and* vivit *lives* tegendo *by being concealed*. Mox *soon* after dat *it gives* them crura *legs* apta *fit* natando *for swimming*.

Gerundia *gerunds in dum* pendent *depend* ab his præpositionibus *upon these prepositions*, inter, ante, ad, ob, propter, circa : ut *as*, Inter agendum *as you drive them along* cave *to take care* occurrere *of meeting* capro *the he-goat*, ille *he* ferit *butts* cornu *with his horn*. Tollent *they will grow* ingentes *very unruly* ante *domandum* *before they are broke*. Locus *a place* amplissimus *very honourable* ad agendum *to plead in*.

Cum *when* necessitas *necessity* significatur *is signified* ponuntur *they are put* citra præpositionem *without a preposition* addito verbo *est* *the verb est being added*, vel *or* intellecto *understood* : ut *as*, parcendum *you must spare* them teneris *when young*. Si *if* vis *me* you wou'd have me flere *weep*, primum *first* dolendum *est* ipsi tibi *you must be concerned yourself*.

Gerundia *gerunds etiam also* vertuntur *are changed* in nomina adjectiva *into nouns adjective* : ut *as*, Tantus amor *so great is their love* florum *of flowers*, et *and* gloria *glory* generandi mellis *of making honey*. Semper *he is always* festinat *in a hurry* et *and* obruitur *is over anxious* in augenda re *in increasing his estate*. Transít *he passes* a componendo carmine *from composing verses* ad accusandos homines *to accuse men*. Ne delectetur *let him not be delighted* criminibus inferendis *in bringing accusations*.

Supinum *the supine in um* ferè *commonly* significat *signifies* activè *actively*, et *and* sequitur *follows* verba *verbs* motûs *of motion* : ut *as*, Mæcenâs *it goes* lusum *to play*, ego *I* que *and* Virgilius *Virgil* dormitum *to sleep*. Veniunt *they come* spectatum *to see*, veniunt *they come* ut *that* ipsæ *themselves* spectentur *may be seen*.

Sapinum the supine in u *ferè commonly significat signifies* *passivè passively, et and sequitur follows* *nomina adjectiva nouns* *adjective: ut as, Nil let nothing* *scdum indecent dictu to be* *said, que and visu seen tangat approach* *hæc limina these* *doors, intra quæ within which est there is* *puer a boy. Si* *taris you enquire after* *digna things worthy* *relatu to be told.*

Participia participles (cum gerundiis with gerands, supinis *supines, ceterisque verbalibus and all other verbals) ferè com-* *monly obtinent regimen take the government* *suorum verbo-* *rum of their own verbs: Dirus hydrops the frightful dropsy* *indulgens sibi indulging itself* *crescit increases. Utendum* *est we must make use of* *ætate our time, ætas time præterit* *passes away cito pede with a swift foot. Non ibo I shall* *not go* *servitum to wait upon* *Graïis matribus the Grecian* *dames. Justitia justice est is* *obtemperatio the obeying* *legibus the laws. Vitabundus designing to avoid* *castra the camp* *hostium of the enemy.*

Dativus a dative case additur is added interdum sometimes *participiis to participles passivæ vocis of the passive voice* *præsertim especially si exeunt in dus if they end in dus: ut* *as, Magnus civis a mighty ci* *izen obit died, et and formi-* *tatus dreaded* *Othoni by Otho. Ille aper that boar* *ferien-* *tis must be smote* *mihî by me.*

Participia participles cùm when *hunt they become* *nomina* *substantivæ substantives* *postulant require* *genitivum a genitive case: ut as,* *Taurus a bull fit becomes* *patiens capable of enduring* *aratri the plow. Non quisquam not any one* *melior was better* *illo than him, nec nor* *amantior more a lover æqui of* *justice.*

Exosus bating perosus utterly bating, pertæsus weary of, *significant signify* *activè actively, et and exigunt require* *accusativum an accusative case: ut as, Juvenis a youth* *exosus* *bating bellum war. Perosus utterly bating* *omne femineum* *genus all the female kind. Pertæsus weary of* *vitam life.*

Natus born, prognatus born, satus sprung, cretus descend- *ed, creatus produced, ortus risen, editus brought forth, exi-* *gunt require* *ablativum an ablative case, vel either cum* *præpositione with a preposition, vel or sine præpositione with-* *out a preposition. Natus Jove the son of Jupiter* *desilit leaps* *down in* *terras upon the earth patriâ ab arce from his father's* *citadel. Prognatus eodem ovo that came out of the same* *egg. Sate O thou who sprung* *sanguine from the blood di-* *vûm of Gods. Cretus descended* *ab origine eadem from the* *same original. Creatus produced* *stirpe from the lineage* *Vul-* *cani*

cani of Vulcan. Ortus sprung e magnis centurionibus from great centurions. Fui I was Nympha a Nymph edita descend- ed de magno flumine of a great river.

Impersonalia impersonals non habent have not nominati- vum a nominative case præcedentem going before them: ut as, Quippe for ita visum est so it seem'd good Neptuno to Neptune. Juvat it is a pleasure ire to go sub-umbras to the shades below.

Interest it concerns, refert it concerns, regunt govern geni- tivum a genitive case: ut as, Interest omnium it concerns all men rectè agere to do well. Parvi refert it little concerneth.

Exceptis ablativis femininis these ablatives feminine being excepted, meâ, tuâ, suâ, nostrâ, vestrâ, cuiâ: ut as, Tuâ refert nihil it nothing concerns you. Meâ magni in- terest it much concerns me. Et also: Interest it is of moment ad laudem meam towards my praise.

Hæc impersonalia these impersonals postulant require ac- cusativum an accusative case, juvat it delights, decet it be- comes, cum compositis with its compounds, et and de- lectat it delights: ut as, Juvat me it delights me coluisse to have frequented Helicon Helicon in prima juvenia in my early youth. Decet it becomes novercam a step-mother dare to give hæc dona such presents as these. Delectat me it de- lights me claudere verba pedibus to write verses.

Verò but præpositio the preposition ad propriè additur pecuniarily added his to these, attinet it belongs, pertinet it per- tains, spectat it concerns; quibus to which adjungas you may add etiam also verba motûs verbs that signify or imply mo- tion: ut as, Nihil ad me attinet it belongs not at all to me. Pertinet ad faciem 'tis of service to a face compescere to curb rabidos mores an angry temper. Spectat ad omnes it concerns all men vivere to live bene well. Sic itur this is the way ad astra to immortality.

Accusativus an accusative case cum genitivo together with a genitive subjicitur is put after his impersonalibus these impersonals, poenitet it repents, tædet it wearies, miseret, miserefcit it pities, pudet it shames, piget it grieves: ut as, Tædet me I am weary vitæ of life. Poenitet Agamemnona it repents Agamemnon iræ of his anger. Nec te miseret and have you no pity nata'que both for your daughter tuique and your self? Me quidem pudet truly I am ashamed of, pigetque and sorry for fratris my brother.

Nonnulla impersonalia some impersonals redeunt return back aliquando sometimes in personalia into personals: ut as, Pin-
gue

que solum a rich soil lassat tires, sed but ipse labor the labour it self juvat is a pleasure. Parva mean things decent become parvum a mean person.

Cœpit it began, incipit it begins, definit it ceases, debet it ought, solet it is wont, et and potest it is possible, juncta being joined impersonalibus to impersonals, induunt put on formam the nature impersonalium of impersonals: ut as, Ubi primum as soon as ever cœperat non convenire there began to be no agreement, quæstio a question oriebatur arose. Tædere solet avaros covetous men used to be grieved impendii at expence. Non potest perveniri it is impossible to arrive ad summa at perfection nisi but ex principiis from beginnings.

Verbum impersonale a verb impersonal passivæ vocis of the passive voice obtinet has eundem casum the same case cum personalibus passivis with personal passives: ut as, Pugnabatur ab hostibus the enemy fought constanter resolutely.

Qui quidem casus which case indeed sæpe subauditur. is often understood, præsertim especially in verbis in verbs quæ which expriment express gestum gesture: ut as, Itur they go ad Atriden to the Emperour. Que and discumbitur they lie down super upon ostro scarlet strato spread abroad.

Verbum impersonale a verb impersonal passivæ vocis of the passive voice potest may accipi be taken pro singulis personis for each person activæ vocis of the active voice eleganter elegantly: ut as, Statur it is stood; id est that is, sto I stand, stas thou standest, stat he stands, stamus we stand, statis ye stand, stant they stand. Plenè dicas you may say in words at length, statur a me, statur a te, statur ab illo, &c.

Reliqua ferè impersonalia almost all other impersonals in dativum feruntur govern a dative case: ut as, Nec nor licet is it allowable mihi for me scire to know. Convenit urbis bears agree inter se with one another. Non vacat Jovi Jupiter is not at leisure adesse to attend exiguis rebus trifling matters. Puero parcatur Iulo, let young Iulus be spared.

Quæ nouns which significant signify partem temporis part of time ponuntur are put in ablativo in the ablative case: ut as, Mendæ blemishes latent lie concealed nocte in the night. Bona verba auspicious words nunc sunt dicenda are now to be uttered bono die on this auspicious day.

Autem but quæ nouns which significant signify durationem duration et and continuationem continuance temporis

poris of time ponuntur are put in accusativo in the accusative, et and interdum sometimes in ablativo in the ablative: ut as, Janua the gate attri Ditis of black Pluto patet lies open noctes atque dies night and day. Hic here jam from that time regnabitur kings shall reign ter centum totos annos full three hundred years. Poeta a poet auditur is heard sæpe oftentimes toto die for a whole day together.

Dicimus etiam we say also in paucis diebus within a few days. De die by day. De nocte by night. Promitto I promise in diem for a day. Commodum I lend in vel or ad mensem for a month. Annos ad quinquaginta natus fifty years old. Studui I studied per tres annos for three years. Intra annos quatuordecim for fourteen years. Puer a child id ætatis of that age. Non plus not above triduum aut or triduo three days. Tertio vel or ad tertium upon the third calendas vel or calendarum of the calends.

Spatium the space loci of place ponitur is put in accusativo in the accusative case, et and interdum sometimes in ablativo in the ablative: ut as, Quidem truly locus the place distat is distant mille passus a thousand paces ab urbe from the city. Nec absunt nor are they distant longis passibus many steps inter se one from the other. Item also: abest he is distant bidui two days journey. Ubi where spatium intelligitur is understood.

Nomina appellativa common names of places, et and nomina the names regionum of countries haud omittunt seldom leave out præpositionem the preposition: ut as, Fuit there was lucus a sacred grove in urbe in the city. Ibant they were going ad templum to the temple Palladis of Pallas. Transis you pass ex Asia out of Asia in Europam into Europe.

Nomen the name oppidi of a town, in quo in which actio fit any thing is done, ponitur is put in genitivo in the genitive case, modò so that fit it be primæ of the first vel or secundæ declinationis second declension, et and singularis numeri singular number; alioquin otherwise in ablativo in the ablative: ut as, Quid faciam what should I do Romæ at Rome? Nutritus brought up Thebis at Thebes an or Argis at Argos? Is he habitat dwells Mileti at Miletus. Oracula oracles cessant are ceased Delphis at Delphi. Ventosus being unconstant Romæ at Rome amem I love Tibur, Tibure at Tibur Romam Rome.

Sic *tibi* utimur *we use* *ruri* vel *or rure* the country in ablative in the ablative: ut *as*, *Est tibi* you have *far modicum* a little corn *rure paterno* at your father's country farm.

Humi upon the ground, *domi* at home, *militiæ* in war, *belli* in war, *ponuntur* are put, *instar propiorum* like proper names, in genitive in the genitive case: ut *as*, *Fusus humi* laid upon the ground. *Virtus a conductu spectata* thoroughly tried *belli domique* in war and peace. *Fuimus* we were *semper* always *unâ* together *militiæ* in war, *et* and *domi* at home.

Motus motion *ad locum* to a place *ponitur* is put in accusativo in the accusative case, a loco from a place in ablative in the ablative: ut *as*, *Hinc* from hence *tendimus* we went *rectâ* straight-forward *Beneventum* to Beneventum. *Aricia accepit me* received me *egressum* after my departure *magnâ Româ* from large Rome.

Ad hunc modum after this manner *utimur* we use *domus* an house *et* and *rus* the country: ut *as*, *Ite domum* go home. *Rure rediit* he is returned out of the country.

En et *Ecce* the adverbs *en* and *ecce* *junguntur* are joined *frequentius* most commonly *nominativo* to a nominative case, *accusativo* to an accusative *rarius* but seldom; nisi unless *ponuntur* they are used *ridiculè* jeeringly, *enim* for *tunc* then *accusativus* the accusative case *est* is *potior* preferable: ut *as*, *En Priamus*, lo Priam. *Ecce tibi* behold *status noster* our condition. *En* behold *quatuor aras* four altars: *ecce* see there *duas* two *tibi* for you, *Daphni Daphnis*. *En habitum* behold his habit. *Ecce autem alterum* but see the other here.

Quædam certain *adverbs loci* of place, *quantitatis* quantity, *et* and *temporis* time, *admittunt* admit *genitivum* a genitive case: ut *as*, *Est mihi* I have *satis consilii* advice enough in me in my self. *Tunc temporis* at that time. *Ubiunque* *locorum* in what place soever *vivitis* you live, *O cives* o citizens, *abunde* est there is plenty *terrorum* of fears *et* and *fraudis* deceit. *Pridie* the day before *ejus diei* that day.

Instar like *et* and *ergo* for the sake of *admittunt* admit *genitivum* a genitive case: ut *as*, *Instar montis* as big as a mountain. *Venimus* we came *illius ergo* for his sake.

Quædam some *admittunt* admit *dativum* a dative case *nominum* of the nouns *unde* from which *deducta* sunt they are derived: ut *as*, *Venit obviam illi* he met him: Nam *pro* *obvius* illi *dicitur* is said. Sunt

Sunt *there are* some quæ *which* admittunt *admit* accusativum *an accusative case* vi by the force præpositionis *of a preposition* intellectæ *understood*: ut as, Accessit *he advanced* propius *nearer* muros *the walls*. Mauri *the Moors* sunt *are* proximè Hispaniam *next to Spain*.

Cedò postulat *requires* accusativum *an accusative case*: ut as, Cedò appoint *any one*, arbitrum *arbitrator*.

Adverbia diversitatis *these adverbs of diversity*, aliter *otherwise*, secus *otherwise*; et *and* illa duo *these two*, antè *before*, post *after*, non rarò junguntur *are often joined* ablativo *to an ablative case*: ut as, Multo aliter *much otherwise*. Paulo secus *little otherwise*. Multo antè *much before*. Paulo post *a little after*. Venit *he came* longo post tempore *a long time after*.

Adverbia adverbs comparativi *of the comparative* et *and* superlativi gradus *superlative degree* sequuntur *follow* formam *the construction* adjectivorum *of adjectives* ejusdem generis *of the same sort*: ut as, Lumina nostra *my eyes* vident *see* longius assuetò *farther than usual*. Dixit *he spake* optimè *the best* omnium *of all*.

Plùs *more* jungitur *is joined* nominativo *to a nominative*, accusativo *an accusative*, et *and* ablativo *to an ablative*: ut as, Paulo plùs trecenta vehicula *somewhat more than three hundred carriages* sunt amissa *were lost*. Acies *the army* abierat *was marched off* paulo plùs quingentos passus *something more than half a mile*. Fui *I was* in nave *on ship-board* dies triginta *thirty days*, aut *or* plùs eo *more than that*.

Conjunctiones copulativæ *conjunctions copulative*, et *and* disjunctivæ *disjunctive*, cum *his* quatuor *with these four*, quàm *than*, nisi *but*, præterquam *except*, an *or*, conjungunt *couple* similes casus *like cases*, et *and* modos *moods*: ut as, Di O ye gods, maris *of the sea*, et *and* cœli *heaven*. Probitas *honesty* laudatur *is praised* et *and* alget *starves*. Ulysses non erat *was not* formosus *handsome*, sed *but* erat *he was* facundus *eloquent*. Est *it is* melius *better* dare *to give* dimidium *half*, quàm *than* perdere *to lose* totum *all*.

Nisi *unless* quædam regula *some certain rule* poscat *requires* aliud *some other case*: ut as, Emi *I bought* librum *a book* centussu *for an hundred pence*, et *and* pluris *more*. Vixi *I lived* Romæ *at Rome* et *and* Venetiis *at Venice*.

Autem *and* aliquoties *sometimes* similes modos *like moods*, sed *but* diversa tempora *different tenses*: ut as, Paruit *he obeyed*, et *and* vivit *is alive*. Illa *she* volaret *could*

could have flown vel per summa gramina even over the highest stalks segetis of standing corn intactæ without touching it, nec læsisset nor would she have hurt teneras aristas the tender ears cursu as she skimm'd along.

Præpositio a preposition in compositione in compositione nonnunquam sometimes regit governs eundem casum the same case quem which regebat it governed, et also extra compositionem out of composition: ut as, Detrudunt they thrust off naves the ships scopulo from the rock. Pastor the shepherd adit goes to oppida the town. Excute shake off metum fear corde from your heart. Delabor I slide down summo Olympo from the lofty Olympus. Vultus his looks hærent remain infixi imprinted pectore in her heart. Sapientia wisdom semper prævalet is always too hard for virtute strength.

Præpositio a preposition sæpe oftentimes subauditur is understood, sæpe etiam oftentimes also eleganter repetitur is elegantly repeated post verbum after the verb: ut as, Simulat he pretends spem hope vultu in his looks, premit altum dolorem he buries deep his anguish corde in his heart. Vitium vice fallit nos deceives us specie under the appearance virtutis of virtue, Devenère they came to locos lætos the joyful abodes. Nunquam accedo I never come ad te to you, quin abeam but I go away abs te from you doctior better instructed. Detraho I take off, annulum a ring de digito from his finger. Excessit ex ephebis he was grown towards a man. Incurris you run in strictos enses upon drawn swords.

In pro fer, erga towards, contra against, ad to, supra over, exigit requireth accusativum an accusative case: ut as, Accipit she admits animum mentemque benignam kind thoughts and inclinations in Teucros towards the Trojans, Peccem I should offend in commoda publica against the public good. Hæres an Heir queritur is sought for in regnum for the kingdom. Imperium the power Jovis of Jupiter est is reges in ipsos over kings themselves.

Præpositiones prepositions, cum when amittunt they lose casum their case, migrant in adverbia become adverbs: ut as, Conjux my wife venit comes ponè behind. Quem queritis I whom you enquire after adsum am here coràm before you.

*O et prò the interjections O and prò junguntur are joined nominativo to a nominative case, accusativo an accusative, et and vocativo a vocative: ut as, O festus dies, O joy-
ful*

ful day! O faciem pulchram, O charming face! O formose puer, O beautiful boy! Pro dolor, Oh the anguish! Prò deùm fidem alas the help of Gods! Prò sancte Jupiter, O sacred Jupiter!

Heu jungitur *is joined* nominativo to a nominative, dativo *dativæ*, accusativo *accusativæ*, et *and* vocativo *vocativæ*: ut *as*, Heu pietas, *Ab his piety!* Heu prisca fides, *Ab his antient integrity!* Heu misero mihi, *Ab wretched me!* Heu stirpem invisam, *Ab the odious stock!* Heu miserande puer, *Ab piteous youth!*

Hem dativo to a *dativæ*, accusativo *accusativæ*, et *and* vocativo *vocativæ*: ut *as*, Hem tibi to you. Hem astutias, *Ab the roguery.* Hem mea lux, *Ab my charmer.*

Ah et *and* vah accusativo to an *accusativæ* et *and* vocativo *vocativæ*: ut *as*, Ah me miserum, *Wretch that I am!* Ah virgo infelix, *Ab unhappy lady!*

Hei et *and* væ dativo to a *dativæ*; ut *as*, Hei mihi, *Wo to me.* Væ victis, *Wo to the vanquished.*

Heus et *and* ohe vocativo to a *vocativæ*: ut *as*, Heus Syre, *sobo Syrus.* Ohe libelle 'tis enough my little book.

Figura construed.

Figuræ the Figures dictionis of speaking sunt are, Prothesis, Aphæresis, Syncope, Epenthesis, Apocope, Paragoge, Tmesis, Metathesis, Antithesis --- Prothesis apponit adds capiti to the beginning of a word; sed but Aphæresis, aufert takes away. Syncope tollit takes away de medio from the middle of a word; sed but Epenthesis insert puts in. Apocope aufert takes away fini from the end of a word; sed but Paragoge dat gives. Tmesis secat verba divides words into two parts; sed but Metathesis mutat litterulam ordine transposes a letter; Antithesis mutat changes a letter. Sic sô, Gnatûs, temnere, dixiti, &c.

Prosodia construed.

Carmen a verse fit is made ex pedibus of feet: Pedes the feet are made è syllabis quantis of syllables that have quantity. Quantitas the quantity syllabarum of syllables est is duplex twofold, nempe to wit, longa long et and

and brevis short; sed but quædam some syllables sunt are communes common. Pedes duo sunt there are two sorts of feet, dactylus a dactyl, et and spondæus a spondee. Dactylus a dactyl constat consists tribus syllabis of three Syllables, quarum whereof prima the first longa est is long, duæ postremæ the two last breves are short; ut as, frigidâ. Spondæus a spondee constat consists duabus syllabis longis of two long syllables; ut as, lætō.

Carmen Adonicum an Adonic verse constat consists duobus pedibus of two feet dactylo a dactyl et and spondæo a spondee; ut at, frigidâ lætō. Carmen Hexametrum an Hexameter verse, fivè or longum a long verse constat consists sex pedibus of six feet, è quibus of which quatuor priores the four former sunt are dactyli dactyls vel or spondæi spondees, quintus the fifth ferè commonly dactylus is a dactyl, sextus the sixth semper always spondæus a spondee; ut as, nōn egō dēsertō jaccū-issēm frigidâ lætō. Carmen pentametrum a pentameter verse, fivè or breve a short verse, constat consists quinque pedibus of five feet, ita divisīs sō divided, ut that sint there may be in priore parte in the former part duo pedes two feet dactyli dactyls, vel or spondæi spondees, cum syllabâ longâ with a long syllable; in posteriore in the latter part duo dactyli two dactyls, item likewise cum syllabâ longâ with a long syllable; ut as, nēc quērērēr tārds irē rēlictā diēs.

Scanfioni accidunt there belong to scanning Synalæpha, Ecthlipsis, Synæresis, Dizeresis et and Cæsura. Synalæpha est is elisio the striking out vocalis of a vowel in fine at the end dictionis of a word ante alteram before another vowel in initio at the beginning sequentis of the following word: ut as,

Sērā nimis vīt' ēst crāstinā viv' hōdiē.

at but Heu et O the interjections Heu and O nunquam eliduntur are never cut off; quibus to which adde add ah, hei, hui, io, et and monosyllabum the monosyllable cui. Ecthlipsis est is quoties as often as in the letter m cum suâ vocali with the vowel belonging to it perimitur is lost, proximâ dictione the next word exorsâ beginning a vocali with a vowel, ut as, mōnstr' hōrrend' infōrm' ingēns, cū lūmēn ādēptūm, pro for monstrum horrendum informe.

Synæresis est is contractio the contraction duarum syllabarum of two syllables in unam into one, ut as:

Sīnt maēcēnārēs, nōn dēerūnt, Flāccē, Mārōnēs.

Dizeresis est is ubi when ex unâ syllabâ out of one syllable dissectâ divided duæ two fiunt are made: ut as,

Dēbā-

Dēbūērānt fūſōs ēvōlūſſē mēōs. Pro *for* evolviſſe.
 Caeſura eſt iſ cum *when* poſt pedem *after* a foot abſolu-
 tum *completed* ſyllaba brevis a *ſhort* ſyllable in fine dictionis
 at the end of a word extenditur *is made long*: ut *as*,

Pēſtōribūſ īnhīāns ſpīrāntiā cōſulit ēxtā.

His *to theſe* adjicias *you may add* ſyſtolen *ſyſtole*: ut *as*,
 ſtetērunt pro *for* ſtetērunt--; et *and* Diaſtolen *Diaſtole*: ut *as*,
 Priāmidēs pro *for* Priāmidēs.

Regulae Quantitatis.

I. Generales.

Vocales the vowels, nempe *to wit*, a, e, i, o, u, habentur *are eſteemed* ubique *every where* pro brevibus *for ſhort*; Diphthongi the Diphthongs, nempe *to wit*, æ, au, ei, œ, eu, pro longis *for long*. Sed *but* vocalis a vowel ante duas conſonantes *before two conſonants* vel *either* in eādē dictione *in the ſame word*, vel *or* in diverſis *in two different words*, aut *or* ante duplicem *before a double conſonant*, nempe x. z. j. longa eſt *is long* poſitione *by poſition*: ut *as*, vēntus-- āxis— mājeſtas; niſi *unleſs* in compoſitis a jugum *in the compounds of jugum*. Vocalis a vowel brevis *ſhort* naturā *by nature*, ante mutam *before a mute*, ſequentē liquidā *when a liquid follows*, redditur *is made* communis *common*: ut *as*, Mediōcris vel *or* mediōcris. Verò *but* longa a vowel long *before non* mutatur *is not altered* thereby: ut *as*, Mātēr, mātiris. Mutæ ſunt *theſe are* mutes, b, c, d, f, g, p, t, liquidæ ſunt *theſe are* liquids, r. l. In vocibus hyperdiſſyllabis *in words of more than two ſyllables* quantitas the quantity penultimæ *of the laſt ſyllable but one* poteſt *may* cognosci *be known*, pronuntiatione *by its pronuntiation*: ut *as*, Felīcis, criminis. Ultima ſyllaba the laſt ſyllable cujuſque verſus *of every verſe* habetur *is reckoned* communis *common*. Nulla ratio *no regard* habetur *is had* literæ h *of the letter h*: ut *as*,

Sivē quis Añtilōchūm nārābāt āb Hēctōrē victūm.

Interjectiones the interjections Ohe et *and* Io habent *have* priorem ſyllabam the former ſyllable communem *common*, ſed *but* Eheu longam *long*.

2. Speciales.

GRæcæ dictiones *Greekiſh words* plerumque generally ſervant retain quantitatem the quantity ſuæ originis *of their original*: ut *as*, Rhodopēius, āer, &c. De.

Derivata derivatives ferè commonly sequuntur follow quantitatē the quantity primitivorum of their primitives: ut *as*, āmo, āmans, āmator, &c. His exceptis these words being excepted, vox vōcis a voice à of vōco to call, lex legis a law à of lēgo to read, rex regis a king à of rēgo to rule, sēdes et and sēdile a seat à of sēdeo to sit; et and vice versā on the contrary, dux dūcis a leader à of dūco to lead, fides faith à of fīdo to trust, dīcax talkative et and maledīcus ill-tongued, et and multa many id genus of that sort, à of dīco to speak; lūcerna a candle à of lūceo, to shine, tōpor drowsiness à of tōpio to make drowsy, et and multa alia many others, quæ tibi occurrent that will come in your way inter legendum as you are reading.

Itidem in like manner composita words compounded ferè commonly follow the quantity simplicium of their simples: ut *as*, pno to put, postpōno to set less by, excipias you may except innūba a maid, pronūba a bride-maid à of nūbo to be married; dejēro to swear point blank et and pejēro to forswear à of jūro to swear; cognītus known et agnītus known again à of nōtus known: Item also ibīdem, ibīque, quandōque, quandōcunque. Præpositiones these Prepositions, à, dē, præ, se, ē, tra, ve, in compositione in composition ubique every where producuntur are made long, nisi vocali sequente unless when a vowel follows: ut *as*, āmoveo—si dēerunt. Etiam likewise di the syllable di producitur is made long, nisi except in dīrimo et and dīsertus. Itidem in like manner, pro the preposition pro in compositione in composition plerumque for the most part producitur is made long: ut *as*, longo prōficit usu. Præterquam except in istis in these words prōcella a storm, prōfugus a vagabond, prōtervus rude, prōnepos a great grandson, prōneptis a great grand-daughter, prōpheta a prophet, prōlogus a prologue, prōboscis an Elephant's trunk, prōfanus profane, prōfiteor to profess, prōficiscor to go forward, prōfari to utter, prōfugio to fly away, prōfectō truly, prōfessus having professed, prōfestus common, prōfundus deep—prōfundo to pour out, prōpello to drive off, prōpulsō to ward off, prōpago a flock, prōpino to drink to one, prōcumbo to lie all along habent have primam syllabam the first syllable communem common.

Præpositiones these prepositions, ab, ad, ob, sub, re, in, per, circum, corripiuntur are made short, si if positio position sinat gives leave. Omne præteritum dissyllabum every præterperfect tense of two syllables, habet both priorem the former syllable longam long: ut *as*, vīdī I have seen,

mōvi I have moved: *Excipe* except, *fīdi* à of *fīndo* to cleave, *bībi* à of *bībo* to drink, *scīdi* à of *scīndo* to cut, *stēti* à of *sto* to stand, *stīti* à of *sisto* to make to stand, *dēdi* à of *do* to give, *tūli* à of *fero* to bear. Itidem in like manner *supina* syllaba *supines* of two syllables habent have priorem the former longam long: ut *as*, *vīsum* to see, *mōtum* to move: *Excipe* except *itum* to go, *litum* to draw, *quītum* to be able, *sītum* to suffer, *rūtum* to rust, *rātum* to suppose, *dātum* to give, *fātum* to sow; *cītum* à of *cio* to stir up, et and *stātum* à of *sisto* to make to stand, sed but, *stāturus*. Plurimæ dictiones very many words producent make long vocales their vowels ex autoritate by the authority poëtarum of the poets: ut *as*, *rāmus* a bough, *rēmus* an oar, *plānus* plain, *plēnus* full, *tōtus* whole, *mūtus* dumb, &c. quæ which, discenda sunt are to be learned assiduo usu by constant use et and lectione by reading. Vocalis a vowel ante alteram before another vowel in eādē dictione in the same word, purē latinā that is a downright latin word ubique every where brevis est is short: ut *as*, *Dēus* God, *mēus* mine, *pīus* godly, *rēi* of a thing, *spēi* of hope, *fīdēi* of faith, &c. Diphthongus etiam even a diphthong, sequente vocali when a vowel follows in eādē dictione in the same word, sæpe often corripitur is made short: ut *as*, *sudibūsvē* præussis. Genitivi et dativi genitive and dative cases, quintæ declinationis of the fifth declension excipiendi sunt are to be excepted, ubi where e the letter e collocatur is placed inter geminum i between two i: ut *as*, *faciēi*, *diēi*.

Genitivi the genitive cases etiam also primæ declinationis of the first declension in *āi* ending in *āi* excipiendi sunt are to be excepted: ut *as*, *aulāi*, et and vocativi vocative cases propriorum of proper names: ut *as*; *Cāi*, *Pompēi*. Excipias etiam you may likewise except genitivos genitive cases in *ius*, ubi where i the letter i reperitur is found communis common: ut *as*, *illius* vel or *illius*, nisi unless in *alterius*, ubi where i the letter i semper brevis est is always short, et and in *alius*, ubi where i the letter i semper longa is always long. Fi quoque the syllable *fi* also in *fio* in the verb *fio* ubique producit is every where made long, nisi r sequitur unless the letter r follows: ut *as*, in *fierem* et and *fieri*, ubi where *fi* the syllable *fi* brevis est is short. Dūs habet both priorem syllabam the former syllable longam long, *Uīana* communem common.

Ultimarum syllabarum quantitas.

Omnia monosyllaba all monosyllables longa are long;

Excipe

Excipe *except* quæ *those which* definunt *end in* b, d, t. Aut *refertur ad diphthongos is thrown to the diphthongs*. Item *also* læ, nēc, fāc, nē *interrogativum the interrogative*, quē, vē ; *Adjectiones syllabicas the additional syllables* cē, tē, ptē, *pronomen the pronoun* hīc, fāl, mēl, fēl, vēl, ān, īn, pēr, tēr, vir. Cor, vās *vadis a surety*, ēs *a verbo sum from the verb sum*, os *offis a bone*, īs, bīs, cīs, quīs. I, u, c, *words ending in* i, u, c, *longa are long* ; *excipe except* cūī, nīī, fīcubī, fīcutī, necubī, donēc. Item, *likewise*, gummī, molŷ, phyllī, phyllidī *et and similia the like*. n *words ending in n longa are long*—*Excipe except* en *making īnis in the genitive* : ut *as*, carmen carminis, forsan, forſitan, tamen, vidēn ? vidīſtīn ? *apocopata apocopated*. Sed *but* nemōn. In an, *words in an a nominativis from nominatives in a, as* Æginān. Græca quædam *some greek words, as* Alexīn, Itŷn, Arcasīn. Item *likewise in on words in on per o parvum with little or short o, as* Ilion, Orpheon. *As words ending in as longa are long* ; *Excipe except*—*As*—*breviter crescens in i reasing short in the genitive case* ; *as* ānas anātis, lampās lampādis. Item *likewise Græca greek words* ; *as*, Heroās, Cyclopās, &c, *Es words ending in ēs longa are long*—*Excipe except* ēs *making ītis short in the genitive* : ut *as*, miles—ītis, item *likewise* ſegēs, tegēs, præpēs, perpēs, desēs, obsēs, præsēs, penēs : Item *also neutra neuters in* ēs, *et and nominativi et vocativi plurales nominative and vocative cases plural græcorum of greek nouns* ; ut *as*, Hippomanēs, Cocoēthēs, Cyclopēs, Naidēs. ōs *words ending in ōs longa are long*—*Excipe except* compos, impos. Item *likewise græca greek nouns per o parvum in o short, as* Delōs, Phyllidōs. *Vocativum the vocative case in a, a græcis from the greek words in as*, Thomā ; *Ablativi ablative cases* ; *as*, muſā ; *Imperativi imperative moods* ; *as*, amā ; *indeclinable an indeclinable word* ; *as*, prætereā, *longa are long*. *Excipe except* ejā, itā, putā, quiā, polteā, *et and vocativi vocatives a græcis from the Greeks in*—tes, *as*, Thyestā.—*Græca greek words, quæ which scribuntur are wrote per eta with eta as* Lethe.—*Quinta declinatio words of the fifth declension et and adverbia adverbs indē nata formed thence* ; *as*, Diē, pridīē ; Item *likewise* famē, ferē, fermē, ohē ; *Imperativi singulares activi imperatives singular of the active voice secundæ conjugationis of the second conjugation, as* docē ; *adverbia adverbs in ē derivata derived ab adjectivis from adjectives secundæ declinationis of the second declension, as* pulchrē, *longa are long* ; *Excipe except* malē, infernē, supernē, apprimē.

Dativi et ablativi datives and ablatives in o, as, multō; adverbia adverbs derivata derived ab adjectivis from adjectives, as, multō; Item alfe omninō longa are long. Exclpe excepte cedō, citō, imō, modō cum compositis with its compounds, quibus accedunt to which are added duō, homō, illicō, sciō, nesciō, egō. Dativi et ablativi datives and ablatives in is; as, musis, sic se foris, gratis.

Is the termination is crescentium longē of words increasing long in genitive in the genitive case; as, Samnis, Salamis—gen. Samnitis, Salaminis—Singulare præsens the present tense singular quartæ conjugationis of the fourth conjugation; as, audis—Item likewise veli, nolis, malis, possis longa are long.—Us the termination us acutē crescens increasing long in genitive in the genitive; as, tellūs telluris, item likewise tripūs, Amathūs—Us quartæ declinationis of the fourth declension, in genitivo singulari in the genitive singular, nominativo, accusativo et vocativo plurali in the nominative, accusative and vocative plural; as, manūs; Item likewise genitivus græcus the greek genitive; as, Sapphūs, longa are long. Hebræa quædam some Hebrew words in ēl; ut as, Daniēl, longa are long.—Græca greek words: ut as, aēr, et and quæ which habent have ēris long in the genitive: sed but pater, mater, et and pleraque most words in r corripuntur are made short.

Communia.

O words ending in o, communia are common—Numeralia in ginta numerals ending in ginta sæpius longa are oftner long. Pronomen the pronoun hoc is common extra ablativum unless in the ablative case.—Cavē, valē, vidē, salvē, respondē, tabē.—Milī, tibī, sibī, quasī, ubī, usī, ibī, are common; sed but alibi is long. Ambō, crebō, mutuō, postremō, sedulō, serō, verō, denuō, quandō, ergō, are common; sed but, ergō, pro causa for the sake of et and græca Greek words per u with u semper producuntur are always long.

APPENDIX.

RULES for the GENDERS of NOUNS.

Taken chiefly from JOHNSTON and CLARKE.

GENDERS in nouns is only a denomination given them from their being joined with an adjective in this or that termination.

There be three genders, the masculine, the feminine and neuter.

1. The names of *Males* are Masculine, and of *Females* Feminine.
2. Nouns of the *first* or *fifth* declension are Feminine.

Except these Masculines.

Adria, cometa, echinometra, mandragora, pandæra, planeta, meridies and *dies* (which is likewise Feminine in the Singular at least) as also *Greek* Nouns of the first Declension in *as*, or *es*, excepting the Names of Jewels, which follow the General Rule and are Feminines.

3. Nouns of the *second* or *fourth* Declension are Masculine.

Exceptions.

But *Greek* words are rather Feminine:

So *vannus, acus, alvus, domus,*
With *tribus, porticus* and *humus,*
And *manus, carbasus,* and *ficus,*
Likewise *quinquatrums* and *idus.*

But *colus, grossus,* and *phaselus,*
Rubus too, and *Pampinus*

Are

Are by some authors doubtful reckon'd,
That is, have genders first and second ;
Penus and *specus* you will see
In one or other of all three.

Virus and *Palagus* make *boc* ;
But *vulvus hic*, and sometimes *boc*.

4. Nouns ending in *on*, *um*, *u*, and all *invariables*, are neuter.

5. Nouns of the *third declension* ending in *er*, *or*, *os*, *o*, *n*, are masculine.

Nouns in *er*, *or*, *os*, excepted.

Except the Female noun *arbor*,
But *aequor*, *marmor*, *ador*, *cor*,
As also *laser*, *iter*, *tuber*,
With *piper*, *zingiber* and *uber*,
Are neuters, and so's *verber*, *suber* ;
With *cicer*, *fiser*, and *papaver*,
Ver, *filer*, *spintber*, and *cadaver* ;
Linter is common, *hæc boc larver*.

Add these two Females *dos* and *cos*,
Likewise the Female noun *arbor* ;
But *os* is Neuter, 'tis all one,
Whether 'tis put for mouth or bone.

But Herbs and Jewels ending thus,
Are Females most like those in *us* ;
Eos and *diametros*,
Are Female, Common, *custos*, *bos* ;
Neuter, *chaos*, *epos*, *melos*.

Nouns in *o*, excepted.

Trissyllables in *do* and *go*
Are females, except *harpago*.
Hæc likewise *cardo*, *grando* make ;
Verbals in *io* will take *bæc*,
But numerals and *pugio*, *hic*.

Nouns in *n* excepted.

But feminines are *findon*, *icon*,
As likewise *alcidon*, *aëdon*.
Neuters are those that end in *men*,
To which add *gluten*, *unguen*, *inguen*.

6. Nouns of the third Declension, ending in *as, es, is, s* or *s* with a consonant before it are Feminine.

Nouns in *as* excepted.

But the word *as* for male still passes ;
For Neuters *nefas, fas, was vasis* ;
As *antis* making, is male too, as
Adamas, gigas, elephas.

Nouns in *es* excepted.

Gurges, poples, verres, pariet,
Limes, fomes, termes, aries,
Lebes, tapes, add to these,
Palmes, trames, cespes, pes,
Stipes, antes, magnes, bes
Are masculine ; but neuter *æs* :
Male *acinaces*, common *præs*,
Palumbes common ; *amies, trudes,*
No certain Gender have, nor *tudes.*

Nouns in *is* excepted.

But males are words that end in *Nis* ;

So *coffis, echenëis, antis,*
With *cassis, fustis, vermis, ensis,*
Torris, caulis, lapis, follis,
Axis, orbis, collis, pollis,
And (*urceus* understood) *aqualis* ;
Understand *dies* with *natalis* :

Compounds from *as*, to wit *centussis,*
For *nummus* sake, and so *decussis,*
Glis, cucumis, and vomis, unguis,
Are males ; with *vepris, sentis, sanguis* ;
Piscis and *callis, cencbris* join,
But for the bird 'tis feminine.

These *torquis, retis, amnis, clunis,*
Corbis, finis, pulvis, funis,
So likewise *anguis* and *canalis*
Are doubtful ; *funis* rather male is ;
But note that *pulvis* you'll scarce find
Or *amnis* of the female kind.

Nouns in *x* or *s* with a consonant excepted.

Dens, seps, grex, nefrens, phœnix, fons,
 With *microps, rudens, fornix, mons,*
Hydrops, gryps, helops, cœcyx, pons,
Calix, and calyx, chalybs, varix,
 Are masculine, and likewise *oryx.*

Diffyllables in *ax* or *ex*
 Are males, and so is rather *pumex* ;
 Doubtfuls are *limax, filex, cortex* ;
 And females *carex, fornax, forfex.*

Tradux is doubtful. *Torrens, tridens,*
 With *spadix, urpax, bombyx, bidens*
 And *profluens, oriens, occidens,*
Dodrans, and others of like sense,
 Namely all other parts of *as*
 For males among good authors pass.

Lynx, calx, stirps, imbrex, perdix all
Scrobs, adeps, females are or male ;
 But of the two *Lynx* female rather
 And *adeps* ; all the rest are either.

7. Nouns of the third Declension ending in *a, c, e, i, t,*
ar, ur, and *us* are neuter.

Exception.

For males, *Sal, sol,* and *magil go,*
Salar the fish is male, and so
Fur, fursur, vultur, turtur too,
Auxur is male and neuter too.
Lepus is male, and likewise *mus,*
 But female rather you'll find *grus.*
Tellus is female ; *laus, fraus, -udis*
 As well as those that end in *utis,*
Lagopus too are females all,
 Tho' all the rest from *œu* are male,
as, tripus, polypus.

8. Rules for proper Names.

Proper from Commons gender take :
 Thus *Dis* is male, for *Dens* sake ;

So winds and months make this rule good,
Ventus and *mensis* understood.

So names of Stones oft gender take

For *lapis*, or for *gemma's* sake.

Genders of mountains do depend

For the most part upon their end ;

Yet these, some oftner, others once,

Do take their Gender too from *mons*.

Isles, Towns and Countries Names we see,

For the like reason Female be ;

And rivers too male gender take

For the most part for *Fluvius* sake.

Nouns too appellative of Tree,

For *arbor's* sake will Females be.

But some the general word forsake,

And from their ending gender take.

Note, Males are trees that end in *ster*,

Neuters in *ur*, and likewise *er*.

9. Nouns common to both Sexes are the Common of two Genders.

But Vossius will allow the following Nouns only to be common.

Conjux atque *parens*, *infans*, *patrueilis*, & *haeres*,
Affinis, *vindex*, *judex*, *dux*, *miles* & *hostis*,
augur & *antistes*, *vates*, *conviva*, *sacerdos*,
Municipique *adidas* *adolescens*, *civis* & *auctor*;
Custos, *nemo*, *comes*, *testis*, *sus*, *basque*, *canisque*:
His *quidam* *jungunt* *praes*, *index*, *martyr* & *obses*:
Sic homo, *sic princeps*, *juvenisque*, *clienisque* *satelles*.

10. Greek nouns that gender chiefly use, Which in the original they chuse.

OF HETEROCLITES.

Heteroclites are words that are either defective, variant or redundant *.

* But since the number of these is too considerable for a young beginner to encounter, and most of them will be explained to him in the course of his reading by consulting his dictionary (I mean *Ainsworth's*) the above specimen may be sufficient to give him a general notion of what he is to expect in his farther acquaintance with this language.

DEFECTIVES.

Singulars only are such as want the plural in sense : as *aurum*.
Plurals only are such as want the singular in sense : as *arma*.

VARIANTS.

Some nouns are of one declension in the singular, and another in the plural, which often alters the gender : as, *nundinum* n. *Nundinae* f. &c.

REDUNDANTS.

Others again have different endings in the nominative, which also oftentimes occasions a difference of gender : as, *baculus*, *baculum*, &c.

Besides which there are other defectives to be taken notice of, viz.

APTOTES.

Which have but one ending for every case they are found in : as, *gummi* &c. and all nouns of number from three to an hundred.

MONOPTOTES.

Used only in one oblique case : as, *ingratis*, &c.

DIPTOTES.

In two : as, *spontis*, *sponte*, &c.

TRIPTOTES.

In three : as, *impetis* - *te* - *tibus* &c.

TETRAPTOTES.

In four ; as, *ditionis* - *ni* - *nem* - *ne* &c.

PENTAPTOTES.

In five ; as, *Gerunds*, and such as have no vocative.

Rules for the Termination of the Preterperfect Tense of Simple Verbs in the Active Voice.

1 Conjugatio.

AS in præsenti perfectum format in avi.

2 Conjugatio.

*IS in præsenti perfectum format in ui.
 Et vel r ante geo si fiet geo vertitur in fi.
 Fit veo vi; sic & format fueo tibi suevi.*

3 Conjugatio.

*O fit i in bo, co, do, so, to, vo, vel in uo.
 Ho, go, quo tibi xi faciunt; et ab eſto fit exi.
 Ex lo, mo fit ui; no, ro, ſco, vi tibi formant.
 Po tibi pſi format; ſed o tollatur ab io.*

4 Conjugatio.

Quarta dat is ivi; ut, monſtrat ſcio ſcis tibi ſcivi.

De compoſitorum verborum præteritis.

Præteritum dat idem ſimplex & compoſitivum:

Ut, docui, edocui monſtrat; ſed ſyllaba, ſæpe

Quem ſimplex geminat, compoſito non geminatur:

Exceptis a do, diſco, ſto, poſco creatis.

Præcurro, excurro, decurro, accurro, procurro

Dupliciter ſeſſas per curri, perque cucurri.

A plico compoſitum cum nomine-sub-re plicavi;

Cætera ui, aut avi: ſic a neco. Sæpius optat

Increpo ui; ſed diſcrepo, dimico ſæpius avi.

Dant ob-sub-red-oles olui, ſed cætera olevi.

Compoſita a pungo formabant omnia punxi;

A do nata didi tibi ſeſſio tertia format;

Sæpius abſcondo abſcondi: a ſto nata ſtiti dant.

Mutantia primam vocalem in e.

Damno, laeto, sacro, fallo, arceo, traeto, fatiscor,
Cando *vetus*, capto, jacto, patior, gradiorque,
Partio, carpo, patro, scando, spargo, pariorque,
Si componentur, vocalem primam in e mutant.

Mutantia primam vocalem in i.

*Hæc habeo, lateo, falio, statuo, cado, lædo,
Æstimo, tango, cano, sic quero, cædo, cecidi,
Sic egeo, teneo, tacio, sapio, rapiorque,
Si componentur vocalem primam in i mutant :*
A placeo sic displiceo : at com-perplaceoque.

*Obf. Composita a verbis calco, salto, a per u mutant,
Composita a claudo, quatio, lavo rejiciunt a :
Sic causo incuso. Natum a plaudo o facit ex au :
Ast unum applaudo retinet sibi simplicis usum.*

Mutantia primam vocalem in i præterquam in præterito.

*Hæc si componas, ago, emo, sedeo, rego, frango,
Et capio, jacio, lacio, specio, premo, pango,
Vocalem primam præsentis in i sibi mutant,
Præteriti nunquam ; ceu frango, refringo, refregi :
Simplicis at formam sequitur perago, satagoque,
Depango, oppango, circumpango, atque repango.
Nil variat facio nisi præpositis præeunte ;
Id docet olfacio, cum calfacio, inficiorque ;
A lego nata, re, per, præ, sub, trans, ad præeunte,
Præsentis servant vocalem, in i cetera mutant.
De quibus hæc intelligo, diligo, negligo tantum
Præteritum lexi faciunt reliqua omnia legi.*

Verbs excepted from the foregoing rules, together with such as want the Preterperfect Tense, here follow in alphabetical order.

A

- | | |
|------------------------------|-------------------------------|
| 3 Accerso-ivi to call. | 2 Cluso to be famous. |
| 3 Ago egi to act. | 3 Cogo coëgi to force. |
| 3 Advesperasco to grow late | 3 Como compsi to dress. |
| 3 Egresco to be sick. | 3 Compesco-ui to restrain. |
| 3 Ambigo to doubt. | 3 Coquo coxi to boil. |
| 4 Amicio-ixi-ui to clothe. | 3 Cornesco to grow horny. |
| 4 Aperio-ui to open | 3 Crasseco to grow thick. |
| 3 Arcesso-ivi to send for. | 3 Credo credidi to trust. |
| 2 Ardeo arsi to burn. | 1 Crepo-ui to crack. |
| 3 Assero-ui to claim, | 1 Cubo-ui to lie down. |
| 2 Audeo (ausus sum) to dare. | 3 Cumbo inusitat comp. cubui. |
| 2 Augeo auxi to increase. | 3 Cupio-ivi to desire. |
| 2 Aveo to desire. | 3 Curro cucurri to run. |

B

- 3 Batuo to beat.

C

- | | |
|---------------------------------|-----------------------------------|
| 3 Cado cecidi to fall. | 1 Defrudo to defraud. |
| 3 Cædo cecidi to beat. | 3 Dego degi to live. |
| 2 Ceveo to wag the tail. | 2 Deliqueo delicui to melt. |
| 3 Calesco (calui) to wax hot. | 3 Demo dempsi to take away. |
| 2 Calveo to be bald. | 2 Densco to thicken. |
| 3 Calvesco to grow bald. | 3 Depso-ui-i to knead. |
| 4 Cambio to exchange. | 3 Dico dixi to say. |
| 3 Cano cecini to sing. comp. | 3 Dido dididi to distribute. |
| cinui. | 3 Disco didici to learn. |
| 3 Capesso-fivi to take in hand. | 3 Dispalesco to be spread abroad. |
| 3 Capió cepi to take. | 3 Dispesco-ui to divide. |
| 3 Cedo cessi to yield. | 3 Divido divisi to divide. |
| 3 Cerno crevi, to enter on an | 3 Ditesco to grow rich. |
| estate. | 1 Do dedi to give. |
| 2 Cio civi to stir up. | 1 Domo-ui to tame. |
| 3 Claudio si to shut. | 3 Duco duxi to lead. |
| 3 Cludo si to surround. | 3 Dulcesco to grow sweet, |
| | 3 Duresco (durui) to grow hard. |

E.

- 3 Elicio-licui to entice out. rest
lexi.

3 Emo emi to buy.

3 Hiscq to open the mouth.

2 Humeo to be moist.

F.

3 Facesso fi-fivi to dispatch.

3 Facio feci to do.

3 Fallo feselli to deceive.

4 Farcio farsi to stuff.

3 Fatisco to be weary.

4 Ferio (percussu) to smite.

3 Fido (fusus sum) to trust.

3 Findo fidi to cleave.

4 Fio (factus sum) to be made.

2 Flaveo to be yellow.

3 Flavescio to grow yellow.

2 Fleo flevi to weep.

3 Fluo fluxi to flow.

3 Frango fregi to break.

1 Frico avi-ni to rub.

2 Frigeo frixi to be cold.

3 Frigo to parch.

3 Fruticesco to grow shrubby.

4 Fulcio fulsi to prop.

3 Fundo fudi to pour.

3 Furo (insanivi) to rave.

G.

2 Gaudeo (gavisus sum) to be glad.

3 Gero gessi to bear.

4 Gestio to leap for joy.

3 Gigno genui to beget.

2 Glabreo to be smooth.

3 Glisco to spread much.

3 Glubo to peel.

3 Grandesco to grow big.

3 Gravescio to wax heavy.

H.

2 Hareo haesi to stick.

2 Hebeo to be blunt.

3 Hebesco to grow dull.

4 Haerio haui to draw.

3 Herbasco to wax green.

J.

3 Jacio jeci to cast.

3 Ignescio to be on fire.

3 Incesso fi-fivi to attack.

3 Ingravesco to grow bigger.

3 Insolesco to grow insolent.

2 Jubeo jussi to bid.

1 Juvo juvi to help.

3 Juvenesco to grow young.

L.

3 Labasco to be ready to fall.

1 Labo to totter.

3 Lacesco lacesivi to provoke.

3 Lacio inusitat. lexi to entice.

3 Lactesco to grow milky.

3 Lædo læsi to hurt.

3 Lapidescio to grow stony.

1 Lavo lavi to wash.

3 Lego legi to read.

3 Lentescio to grow clammy.

2 Leo inusitat. levi to anoint.

2 Libet libuit (-itum est) it pleaseth.

2 Licet-uit (-itum est) it may.

3 Lino livi-levi lini to smear over.

3 Linquo liqui to leave.

2 Liqueo to be clear.

2 Liveo to be black and blue.

3 Livesco to wax blue.

2 Luceo luxi to shine.

3 Ludo lusi to play.

2 Lugeo luxi to mourn.

3 Luo lui to pay.

M.

2 Maneo mansi to carry.

3 Marcesco to wither.

3 Masculesco to wax male.

- 3 Meio (minui) to make water. 3 Pergo perrexi to go forward.
 3 Mergo merui to plunge. 2 Pertedet (pertulitum est) it
 3 Meto messui to mow. irketh.
 1 Mico micui to glitter. 3 Peto petivi to ask.
 2 Miseret (misertum est) it pi- 2 Piget-uit(-itum est) it irketh.
 tieth. 3 Pingo pinxi to paint.
 3 Mitesco to grow tame. 3 Pinguesco to grow fat.
 3 Mitto misi to send. 2 Placet-uit (-itum est) it pleas-
 2 Mereo to lament. eth.
 2 Mordeo momordi to bite. 3 Plecto-exui-xi to punish.
 3 Muresco to grow musty. 3 Plaudo plausi to clap hands.
 2 Mulceo-fi to stroke. 2 Pleo inusitat plevi to fill.
 2 Mulgeo-fi-xi to milk. 1 Plico-avi-ui to fold.
 3 Plumefco to be fledged.
 2 Polleo to be able.
 3 Pollincio pollinxi to embalm.
 3 Pono posui to put.
 3 Posco poposci to require.
 2 Prandeo prandi (pransus sum)
 to dine.
 3 Premo pressi to press.
 3 Procello proculi to beat down.
 3 Promo prompsi to draw out.
 3 Prodigio prodigi to lavish
 3 Psallo psalli to sing.
 3 Pubesco to bud.
 2 Pudet-uit (-itum est,) it sham-
 eth.
 3 Pungo pupugi to prick.

N.

- 1 Neco-ui avi to slay.
 3 Necto nexui-i to fasten to-
 gether.
 2 Neo nevi to spin.
 1 Nexo to fasten together.
 3 Nexo xi to knit.
 3 Ningo to snow.
 3 Nubo nupsi (nupta sum) to
 be married.

O.

- 2 Obaleo-ui or evi to smell
 strong.
 4 Operio ui to cover.

P.

- 3 Pago pepigi to covenant.
 3 Pando to open.
 3 Pango-xi-pegi to fasten.
 3 Parco peperci parsi to spare.
 3 Pario peperi to bring forth.
 2 Paveo to dread.
 3 Pecto-exui-xi to comb.
 3 Pecto pepedi to fart.
 3 Pellicio pellexi to needle.
 3 Pello pepali to drive away.
 2 Pendeo pependi to hang.
 3 Pendo pependi to weigh.
 3 Percello percali to beat down.

Q.

- 3 Quaro quæsi to seek.
 3 Quatio (quassi vix usitat) to
 shake.
 3 Queo quivi to be able.

R.

- 3 Rado rasi to shave.
 3 Rapio rapui to snatch.
 4 Rancio ransi to be hoarse.
 3 Repello to thrust back.
 2 Renideo to shine.
 3 Refello to refuse.
 2 Rideo

- 2 Rideo risi to laugh.
 3 Rodo rosi to gnaw.
 3 Rudo rufi to bray.
 3 Rufesco to wax red.
 3 Rumpo rupi to break.

- 3 Serto stertai to snore.
 3 Struo struxi to build.
 2 Suadeo suasi to advise.
 3 Sumo sumpsi to take.
 3 Surgo surrexi to arise.

S.

- 4 Salio-ii-ui to leap.
 3 Salto salti to season with salt.
 4 Sancio-ivi-xi to establish.
 3 Sapio-ui-ivi to taste.
 4 Sarcio fursi to patch.
 4 Sarrio ivi-ui to harrow.
 3 Satago fatēgi to be busy.
 2 Scabeo } to claw,
 3 Scabo }
 3 Scindo scidi to cut.
 3 Scribo scripsi to write.
 1 Seco secui to cut.
 2 Sedeo sedi to sit.
 4 Sentio sensi to perceive.
 4 Sepio-ivi-psi to hedge.
 3 Sereisco to wax fair and dry.
 3 Sero serui to set in order.
 3 Sido sedi to pitch or alight.
 3 Sisto stiti to stop.
 2 Soleo (solitus sum) to be wont.
 3 Solidesco to wax sound.
 2 Sorbeo-ui-psi to sup up.
 3 Sordesco to grow nasty.
 3 Spargo sparsi to sprinkle.
 3 Specio spexi to see.
 3 Sperno spreui to despise.
 2 Spondeo spospondi to betroth.
 3 Stinguo stinxi to extinguish.
 1 Sto steti to stand.
 3 Strepo strepui to make a noise.
 2 Strideo stridi to screech.
 3 Sterno stravi to strew.

T.

- 3 Tango tetigi to touch.
 3 Temno tempsi to content.
 3 Tendo tetendi to bend.
 3 Tenescisco to grow tender.
 3 Tergo tersi to scour.
 3 Tero trivi-terui to bruise.
 3 Texo textui to weave.
 3 Tollo (sustuli) to lift up.
 2 Tondeo totondi to shear.
 1 Tono tonui to thunder.
 2 Torqueo torxi to twist.
 3 Trudo truxi to thrust.
 3 Tundo tutudi to pound.
 3 Turgesco to wax big.

V.

- 3 Vado vasi to go.
 3 Vello velli-vulsi to pluck.
 4 Veneo venii to be sold.
 4 Venio veni to come.
 3 Vergo to decline.
 3 Verro verri to brush.
 1 Veto vetui to forbid.
 2 Video vidi to see.
 2 Vico viēvi to bin d.
 4 Vincio vinxi to bind.
 3 Vinco vici to conquer.
 2 Vireo to be green.
 3 Vivo vixi to live.
 3 Uro ussi to burn.
 3 Uvesco to wax moist.

N. B. Inceptives in Sco borrow from their primitives.
 as, tepeisco -tepuī a tepeo.

All Desideratives want the preterperfect Tense, except,
 Hac tria nupturio, cum parturio, esarioque.

Verba

Verbs of the Active Voice intransitive or neuter form no Passive Voice, except that they are used sometimes in the third Person singular, as *vivitur*, i. e. *ab hominibus*, Men live.

Verbs of the Passive Voice form no preterperfect Tense, but instead thereof is used a participle of the preterperfect Tense with the Verb *sum*, as, *amatus sum* vel *fui*, I was or have been loved.

Rules for forming the Participle of the Preterperfect-Tense Passive.

The Participle of the Preterperfect Tense is formed from the Preterperfect Tense of the Active by changing the Termination according to the following Rules.

The Terminations.

Ex ci, gi, qui, xi, perfectum desinit in -ctus, ut, vici-victus.
Di, li, ri, si, ti, fines in -sus tibi mutant, ut, vidi-visus.
Per -tus finalem i sed mi, ni, pi, tibi formant, ut, emi-emptus.
Psi-tus praeterito fiet, vi-tus quoque fiet ;
Nam scripsi scriptus format, livique litus dat.
Quod dat-ui dat-itus perfectum, si modo tollas ut, domui-domitus.
Verbum in-uo, quia semper-ui formabit in-utus, ut, exui-exitus.

N. B. Sevi nata-situs, do ternae nat-a-ditus dant.
Composita a pario pro partus dant tibi pertus.
A rapui raptus sic formant omnia-reptus.
Texui habet-textus, serui quoque -sertus habebit.
Hec quoque de novi duo cognitus agnitus extant.

Exceptions from the Rules foregoing here follow in Alphabetical order.

N. B. The words that are englished are most of them Deponents, the rest Passives.

A.

- | | |
|--------------------------------|------------------------------|
| 3 Adipiscor adeptus to obtain. | 3 Amplector -xus to embrace. |
| 3 Agor actus. | 3 Asseror assertus. |
| 3 Alor alius -altus. | |
| 4 Amicor amictus. | |
| (Apiscor) aptus to get. | 3 Cedor cactus. |
| | 3 Capior |

3 Capior captus.

2 Cieor citus.

3 Color cultus.

3 Comminiscor-entus *to devise.* 3 Jacior jactus.

4 Comperior compertus *to know*
certainly.

3 Complector-xus.

3 Consultor consultus.

3 Credor creditus.

D.

3 Defetiscor fessus *to be quite*
tired.

3 Didor diditus.

1 (Dor *inustat.*) datus.

2 Doceor doctus.

E.

3 Expergiscor experrectus *to a-*
wake.

4 Experior expertus *to try.*

F.

3 Fallor falsus.

4 Farcior fartus.

2 Fateor fassus *to confess.*
comp. -fiteor fessus.

3 Feror (latus.)

3 Findor fissus.

3 Fingor fictus.

3 Fodior fossus.

3 Frangor fractus,

1 Fricor frictus.

3 Fruor fructus-fruitus *to enjoy.*

3 Fungor functus *to do a duty.*

G.

3 Geror gestus.

3 Gradior gressus *to step. comp*
-gredior gressus.

H.

4 Haurior haustus.

J.

3 Jacior jactus.

3 Irascor iratus *to be angry.*

L.

3 Labor lapsus *to slide.*

1 Lavor lautus-lavatus.

2 Liceor licitus *to cheapen.*

3 Liquor (liquefactus.)

3 Loquor locutus *to speak.*

M.

2 Medeor *to heal (medicatus.)*

1 Meditor meditatus *to meditate.*

2 Mereor meritus *to deserve.*

4 Metior mensus *to measure.*

3 Metuor.

2 Misceor mistus-mixtus.

2 Misereor misertus *to pity.*

3 Mittor missus.

3 Morior mortuus *to die.*

N.

3 Nanciscor nactus *to get.*

3 Nascor natus *to be born.*

3 Nector nexus.

3 Nitor nixus-nisus *to strive.*

O.

3 Obliviscor oblitus *to forget.*

4 Opperior oppertus-opperitus
to wait for.

4 Ordior orditus *to weave.*

4 Ordior orsus *to begin.*

4 Orior ortus *to arise.*

P.

3 Paciscor pactus *to bargain.*

3 Pandor passus.

3 Pangor pactus.

3 Pascor pactus *to feed or be*
fed.

3 Patior passus *to suffer.*

3 Pector pexus.

3 Pellor pulsus.

3 Perpetior pessus.

3 Pingor pictus.

3 Pinior pistus.

3 Poscor.

3 Proficiscor profectus *to go.*

Q.

3 Queror questus *to complain.*

R.

3 Rapior raptus.

3 Refellor.

3 Reminiscor (recordatus.)

2 Reor ratus *to suppose.*

3 Ringor rictus *to grin.*

S.

4 Sancier sancitus-sanctus,

4 Sarcior fartus.

3 Scindor scissus.

1 Secor sectus.

4 Sentior.

4 Sepelior sepultus.

3 Sequor secutus *to follow.*

3 Seror satus.

3 Sinor situs.

3 Sisor status.

3 Solvor solutus.

T.

3 Tangor tactus.

2 Teneor tentus.

2 Timeor.

3 Tollor (sublatus.)

2 Torreo tostus.

2 Tueor tutus-tuitus *to see, defend.*

V.

3 Vellor vulsus.

3 Verror verus.

2 Vereor veritus *to fear.*

5 Vescor *to eat* (passus.)

3 Ulciscor ultus *to revenge.*

3 Volvor volutus.

2 Urgeor.

3 Uror ustus.

3 Utor usus *to use.*

N. B. As for the Supines of any verb, which are but few in the whole language, change *s* of the preterperfect-tense into *u*, and you have the former, leave out *s*, and you have the latter, as, *amatus, amatum, amatu.*

A short Scheme for conjugating Verbs of the Active Voice, as they depend upon their principal Tense or Theme.

The Persons		1	2	3	1	2	3
		I	THOU	HE	WE	YE	THEY
		<i>do</i>	<i>doſt</i>	<i>doth</i>	<i>do</i>	<i>do</i>	<i>do</i>
Present Tense.	1.	o	as	at	āmus	ātis	ant
	2.	eo	es	et	ēmus	ētis	ent
	3.	o	is	it	imus	itis	unt
	4.	io	is	it	imus	itis	iunt
Preterimperfect Tense.		<i>did</i>	<i>didſt</i>	<i>did</i>	<i>did</i>	<i>did</i>	<i>did</i>
	1.	ābam	ābas	ābat	abāmus	abātis	ābant
	2.	ēbam	ēbas	ēbat	ebāmus	ebātis	ēbant
	3.	ēbam	ēbas	ēbat	ebāmus	ebātis	ēbant
Fut. imp. Tense.	4.	iēbam	iēbas	iēbat	iebāmus	iebātis	iebant
		<i>ſhall or will</i>	<i>ſhalt or wilt</i>	<i>ſhall or will</i>	<i>ſhall or will</i>	<i>ſhall or will</i>	<i>ſhall or will</i>
	1.	ābo	ābis	ābit	abīmus	abītis	ābunt
	2.	ēbo	ēbis	ēbit	ebīmus	ebītis	ēbunt
Imperat. Mood	3.	am	es	et	ēmus	ētis	ent
	4.	iam	ies	iet	iēmus	iētis	ient
		<i>do thou</i>	<i>let him</i>	<i>let us</i>	<i>do ye</i>	<i>let them</i>	
Imperat. Mood	1.	a āto	et āto	ēmus	āte atōte	ent anto	
	2.	e ēto	eat ēto	eāmus	ete etōte	cant ento	
	3.	e īto	at īto	āmus	īte itōte	ant unto	
	4.	i īto	iat īto	iāmus	īte itōte	iant iunto	
		<i>may or can</i>	<i>may ſt or canſt</i>	<i>may or can</i>	<i>may or can</i>	<i>may or can</i>	<i>may or can</i>
Potent. Mood	1.	em	es	et	ēmus	ētis	ent
	2.	eam	eas	eat	eāmus	eātis	eant
	3.	am	as	at	āmus	ātis	ant
	4.	iam	ias	iat	iāmus	iātis	iant

Potential

Potent. Mood.	Preter-imper-fect Tense.	might or might'st or might or			might or might or might or		
		con'd con'dst con'd			con'd con'd con'd		
		1. ārem āres	āret	arēmus arētis	ārent		
		2. ērem ēres	ēret	erēmus erētis	ērent		
		3. ěrem ěres	ěret	erēmus erētis	ěrent		
		4. ĩrem ĩres	ĭret	irēmus irētis	iront		

Infinitive Mood Pref. and Preterim. Tense.	to	of	in	to onto	be	A Participle of the Present Tense.	ing
	1. āre	andi	ando	andum		ans	
	2. ēre	endi	endo	endum		ens	
	3. ěre	endi	endo	endum		ens	
	4. ĩre	iendi	iendo	iendum		iens	

The second THEME for all the Conjugations.

Indicative.	Preterper-fect Tense.	have	hast	hast	have	have	have
		i	isti	it	imus	istis	erunt v. ěre
	Preterpluper-fect Tense.	had	hadst	had	had	had	had
		ěram	ěras	ěrat	erāmus	erātis	ěrant

Potential	Preterper-fect Tense.	might or might'st or might or			might or might or might or		
		con'd con'dst con'd			con'd con'd con'd		
	Preterpluper-fect Tense.	ěrim	ěris	ěrit	erīmus	eritis	ěrint
		had	hadst	had	had	had	had
Future Tense.	will	will	will	will	will	will	will
		have	have	have	have	have	have
	shall or shallon	shall or shallon	shall or shallon	shall or shallon	shall or shallon	shall or shallon	shall or shallon
		ěro	ěris	ěrit	erīmus	eritis	ěrint

Infa. Mood.	Preterper-fect and Preterpluper-fect Tense.	to have or had	istis

The third THEME for all the Conjugations.

Supines—Part. of the Fut. in *rus*—Infin. Fut. imp. and perf.
um *u* *urus* { *urum* } *esse* *vol fore* *to be about to.*
to *to be* *about to* { } *fuisse, to have been about to.*

A Scheme for Passive Verbs.

The first THEME.

Indicative Mood.		Sing.			Plur.		
		1	2	3	1	2	3
		I	THOU	HE	WE	YE	THEY
		<i>am</i>	<i>art</i>	<i>is</i>	<i>are</i>	<i>are</i>	<i>are</i>
Present Tense.	1.	-or	-āris v. -āre	-ātur	-āmur	-amīni	-antur
	2.	-eor	-ēris v. -ēre	-ētur	-ēmur	-emīni	-entur
	3.	-or	-ēris v. -ēre	-itur	-imur	-imīni	-untur
	4.	-ior	-īris v. -īre	-itur	-imur	-imīni	-iuntur
Preterimp. Tense.		<i>was</i>	<i>wast</i>	<i>was</i>	<i>were</i>	<i>were</i>	<i>were</i>
	1.	-ābar	-ābāris v. -ābāre	-ābātur	-ābāmur	-ābāmīni	-ābantur
	2.	-ēbar	-ēbāris v. -ēbāre	-ēbātur	-ēbāmur	-ēbamīni	-ebantur
	3.	-ēbar	-ēbāris v. -ēbāre	-ēbātur	-ēbāmur	-ēbamīni	-ebantur
Future Imp. Tense.	4.	-iēbar	-iēbāris v. -iēbāre	-iēbātur	-iēbāmur	-iēbamīni	-iēbantur
		<i>shall or will be</i>	<i>shalt or wilt be</i>	<i>shall or will be</i>	<i>shall or will be</i>	<i>shall or will be</i>	<i>shall or will be</i>
	1.	-ābor	-ābēris v. -ābēre	-ābitur	-ābimur	-ābimīni	-abuntur
	2.	-ēbor	-ēbēris v. -ēbēre	-ēbitur	-ēbimur	-ēbimīni	-ebuntur
Future Imp. Tense.	3.	-ar	-ēris v. -ēre	-etur	-emur	-emīni	-entur
	4.	-iar	-iēris v. -iēre	-ietur	-iēmur	-iēmīni	-ientur

Imperative Mood.		be thou, let him be,		let us be,	be ye,	let them be
	1.	{ -āre	-ētur	-ēmur	{ -amīni	-entur
		{ -ātor	-ātor		{ -amīnor	-antōr
	2.	{ -ēre	-eātur	-eāmur	{ -emīni	-eantur
		{ -ētor	-ētor		{ -emīnor	-entor
	3.	{ -ēre	-ātur	-āmur	{ -imīni	-antur
		{ -ītor	-ītor		{ -imīnor	-untur
	4.	{ -īre	-iātur	-iāmur	{ -imīni	-iantur
		{ -ītor	-ītor		{ -imīnor	-iuntor

Present Tense.		may, or can be	mayst, or canst be	may, or can be	may, or can be	may, or can be	may, or can be
	1. -ēr	{ -ēris v.	-ēre	-ētur	-ēmur	-emīni	-entur
		{ -ēris v.					
	2. -ear	{ -eāris v.	-eāre	-eātur	-eāmur	-eamīni	-eantur
		{ -eāris v.					
	3. ar	{ -īris v.	-īre	-ītur	-īmur	-amīni	-antur
		{ -īris v.					
	4. iar	{ -iāris v.	-iāre	-iātur	-iāmur	-iamīni	-iantur
		{ -iāris v.					
Potential Mood.		might, or cou'd be	mightst, or cou'dst be	might, or cou'd be	might, or cou'd be	might, or cou'd be	might, or cou'd be
	1. -ārer	{ -arēris v.	-arēre	-arētur	-arēmur	-areminī	-arentur
		{ -arēris v.					
	2. -ērer	{ -erēris v.	-erēre	-erētur	-erēmur	-eremīni	-erentur
		{ -erēris v.					
	3. -īrer	{ -irēris v.	-irēre	-irētur	-irēmur	-iremīni	-irentur
		{ -irēris v.					
	4. -īrer	{ -iirēris v.	-iirēre	-iirētur	-iiremur	-iiremīni	-iirentur
		{ -iirēris v.					

Infia. Mood.		to be		A Participle of the Future in -dus.	to be	
	{ Present and Preterimperfect Tense.	1. -āri	-ēri		1. -andus	
		2. -ēri			2. endus	
		3. -i			3. endus.	
		4. -īri			4. iendus.	

The second Theme for all the Conjugations. -ed, -n, -t;

The Participle of the Preter-Tense, -us.

Indicative Mood.	Preterp. Tense.	have been, had been, both been			have been, have been, have been		
		-us sum	-us es	-us est	-i sumus	-i estis	-i sunt
	v.	v.	v.	v.	v.	v.	
	fui,	fuisti,	fuit	fuimus	fuistis	fuerant	v. ēre
Preterpl. Tense.	Preterp. Tense.	had been, hadst been, had been			had been, had been, had been		
		-us eram	-us eras	-us erat	-i erāmus	-i erātis	-i erant
	v.	v.	v.	v.	v.	v.	
	fueram,	fueras,	fuerat	fuerāmus,	fuerātis	fuerant	

Potential Mood.	Preterp. Tense.	might, or might'st, or	might, or might'st, or	might, or might'st, or	might, or might'st, or	might, or might'st, or	might, or might'st, or	
		con'd	con'd'st	con'd	con'd	con'd	con'd	con'd
		have been, have been,	have been, have been,	have been, have been,	have been, have been,	have been, have been,	have been, have been,	have been, have been,
		-us sum	-us sis	-us sit.	-i sumus	-i sitis	-i sint	
		v.	v.	v.	v.	v.	v.	
		fuerim,	fueris	fuerit	fuerimus,	fueritis,	fuerint	
	Preterpl. Tense.	had been, had'st been,	had been, had'st been,	had been, had'st been,	had been, had'st been,	had been, had'st been,	had been, had'st been,	had been, had'st been,
		-us essem	-us esses	-us esset	-i essemus	-i essetis	-i essent	
		v.	v.	v.	v.	v.	v.	
		fuissem,	fuisset	fuisset	fuissemus,	fuissetis,	fuisissent	
	Future Tense.	shall	shall	shall	shall	shall	shall	shall
have been, have been,		have been, have been,	have been, have been,	have been, have been,	have been, have been,	have been, have been,	have been, have been,	
-us ero		-us eris	-us erit	-i erimus	-i eritis	-i erunt		
	v.	v.	v.	v.	v.	v.		
	fuero	fueris,	fuerit	fuerimus,	fueritis,	fuerint		

Infinitive Mood.	Preterperfect, and Preterpluperfect Tense,	{	to have or
			had been, -um esse v. fuisset.
Future Imperf. Tense,	{	to be about to be	
		1. um iri	2. um iri
		3. um iri	
		4. um iri	

Fut. Perfect.—um fore, to be about to have been.

Adjective

Adjectiva Numeralia

Cardinalia.

I. Unus, <i>u, um</i>	1. One
II. Duo, <i>z, o</i>	2. Two
III. Tres, <i>tria</i>	3. Three
IV. Quatuor, <i>vel quātuor, indiv.</i>	4. Four
V. Quinquē	5. Five
VI. Sex.	6. Six
VII. Septem	7. Seven
VIII. Octo	8. Eight
IX. Nōvem	9. Nine
X. Dēcem	10. Ten
XI. Undēcim	11. Eleven
XII. Duodēcim	12. Twelve
XIII. Trēdēcim	13. Thirteen
XIV. Quātuordēcim	14. Fourteen
XV. Quindēcim	15. Fifteen
XVI. Sexdēcim, Sēdēcim	16. Sixteen
XVII. Septendēcim	17. Seventeen
XVIII. Octōdēcim, <i>vel Duo-</i> <i>desīginti</i>	18. Eighteen
XIX. Nōvendēcim, <i>vel, Undē-</i> <i>vīginti</i>	19. Nineteen
XX. Vīginti	20. Twenty
XXI. ūnus supra vīginti	21. One and Twenty, &c.
XXX. Trīginta	30. Thirty
XL. Quādrāginta	40. Forty
L. Quinquāginta	50. Fifty
LX. Sexāginta	60. Sixty
LXX. Septuāginta	70. Seventy
LXXX. Octōginta	80. Eighty
XC. Nōnāginta	90. Ninety
C. Centum	100. an Hundred
CC. Dūcenti, <i>z, a.</i>	200. Two Hundred
CCC. Trēcenti, <i>z, a.</i>	300. Three Hundred
CD. Quadringenti, <i>z, a.</i>	400. Four Hundred
D. <i>vel</i> ID. Quingenti, <i>z, a.</i>	500. Five Hundred
DC. Sexcenti, <i>z, a.</i>	600. Six Hundred
DCC. Septingenti, <i>z, a.</i>	700. Seven Hundred

DCCC.

DCCC. Oſtingenti, 2, 2	800. <i>Eight Hundred</i>
CM. <i>vel</i> , DCCCC. Nongenti, 2, 2	900. <i>Nine Hundred</i>
M. <i>vel</i> , CII. <i>vel</i> . ∞ Mille, <i>incl.</i>	1000. <i>A Thousand</i>
II CII. Bis Mille, <i>vel</i> , Duo Millia, Millium ibus, <i>n. pl.</i>	2000. <i>Two Thousand</i>
III. M. Ter Mille	3000. <i>Three Thousand</i>
IV. M. Quāter Mille	4000. <i>Four Thousand</i>
V. M. Quinquies Mille	5000. <i>Five Thousand</i>
VI. M. Sexies Mille	6000. <i>Six Thousand</i>
VII. M. Septies Mille	7000. <i>Seven Thousand</i>
VIII. M. Oſties Mille	8000. <i>Eight Thousand</i>
IX. M. Növies Mille	9000. <i>Nine Thousand</i>
X. M. <i>vel</i> CCI. <i>vel</i> XCI. Dēcies M. <i>vel</i> Dēcem Millia.	10000. <i>Ten Thousand</i>
XXCI. Viginti Millia	20000. <i>Twenty Thousand</i>
XXXCI. Trīginta Millia	30000. <i>Thirty Thousand</i>
I. Quinquāginta Millia	50000. <i>Fifty Thousand</i>
CCC. Centum Millia.	100000. <i>A hundred Thousand.</i>
CC. M. <i>vel</i> CC, ∞. Dūcenta Millia	200000. <i>Two hundred Thou- sand.</i>
D. M. <i>vel</i> . D. ∞. Quingen- ta Millia	500000. <i>Five hundred Thou- sand.</i>
CCCC. Dēcies Centēna Millia	1000000. <i>A Million</i>
Vicies Centēna Millia	2000000. <i>Two Millions</i>
Tricies Centēna Millia	3000000. <i>Three Millions</i>
Quādrāgies Centēna Millia	4000000. <i>Four Millions</i>
Centies Centēna Millia	10000000. <i>Ten Millions</i>
Dūcenties centēna Millia	20000000. <i>20 Millions</i>
Millies Centēna Milia	100000000. <i>100 Millions.</i>

Ordinalia.

Primus, a, um	<i>First</i>
Sēcundus, a, um	<i>Second</i>
Tertius, a, um	<i>Third</i>
Quartus, a, um	<i>Fourth</i>
Quintus, a, um	<i>Fifth</i>
Sextus, a, um	<i>Sixth</i>
Septimus, a, um	<i>Seventh</i>
Octāvus, a, um	<i>Eighth</i>

Nōnus, a, um	<i>Ninth</i>
Dēcimus, a, um	<i>Tenth</i>
Undēcimus, a, um	<i>Eleventh</i>
Duōdēcimus, a, um	<i>Twelfth</i>
Dēcimus tertius, a, um	<i>Thirteenth</i>
Dēcimus quartus, &c.	<i>Fourteenth</i>
Vigēsīmus, a, um	<i>Twentieth</i>
Trigēsīmus, a, um	<i>Thirtieth</i>
Quādragēsīmus, a, um	<i>Fortieth</i>
Quinquagēsīmus. a, um	<i>Fiftieth</i>
Sexagēsīmus, a, um	<i>Sixtieth</i>
Septuagēsīmus, a, um	<i>Seventieth</i>
Octogēsīmus, a, um	<i>Eightieth</i>
Nōnagēsīmus, a, um	<i>Nintieth</i>
Centēsīmus, a, um	<i>Hundredth</i>
Dūcentēsīmus, Trēcentēsīmus, Quadringentēsīmus, Quin-	
gentēsīmus, Sexcentēsīmus, Septingentēsīmus, Octingentē-	
sīmus, Nongentēsīmus, Millēsīmus, a, um	<i>Thousandth.</i>

A TABLE of the KALENDS, NONES, and IDES.

	Mar. Jul.	Mai. Octob.	Jan. Decemb.	Aug. Sept.	Apr. Nov.	Jun. Februarius.
1	Kalendæ.		Kalendæ.		Kalendæ.	Kalendæ.
2	6°.—Nonas.		4°.—Nonas.		4°.—Nonas.	4°.—Nonas.
3	5°.—Nonas.		3°.—Nonas.		3°.—Nonas.	3°.—Nonas.
4	4°.—Nonas.		Prid. Nonas.		Pridie Nonas.	Pridie Nonas.
5	3°.—Nonas.		Nonæ.		Nonæ.	Nonæ.
6	Prid. Nonas		8°.—Idus.		8°.—Idus.	8°.—Idus.
7	Nonæ.		7°.—Idus.		7°.—Idus.	7°.—Idus.
8	8°.—Idus.		6°.—Idus.		6°.—Idus.	6°.—Idus.
9	7°.—Idus.		5°.—Idus.		5°.—Idus.	5°.—Idus.
10	6°.—Idus.		4°.—Idus.		4°.—Idus.	4°.—Idus.
11	5°.—Idus.		3°.—Idus.		3°.—Idus.	3°.—Idus.
12	4°.—Idus.		Pridie Idus.		Pridie Idus.	Pridie Idus.
13	3°.—Idus.		Idus.		Idus.	Idus.
14	Pridie Idus.		19°.—Kal.		18°.—Kal.	16°.—Kal.
15	Idus.		18°.—Kal.		17°.—Kal.	15°.—Kal.
16	17°.—Kal.		17°.—Kal.		16°.—Kal.	14°.—Kal.
17	16°.—Kal.		16°.—Kal.		15°.—Kal.	13°.—Kal.
18	15°.—Kal.		15°.—Kal.		14°.—Kal.	12°.—Kal.
19	14°.—Kal.		14°.—Kal.		13°.—Kal.	11°.—Kal.
20	13°.—Kal.		13°.—Kal.		12°.—Kal.	10°.—Kal.
21	12°.—Kal.		12°.—Kal.		11°.—Kal.	9°.—Kal.
22	11°.—Kal.		11°.—Kal.		10°.—Kal.	8°.—Kal.
23	10°.—Kal.		10°.—Kal.		9°.—Kal.	7°.—Kal.
24	9°.—Kal.		9°.—Kal.		8°.—Kal.	6°.—Kal.
25	8°.—Kal.		8°.—Kal.		7°.—Kal.	5°.—Kal.
26	7°.—Kal.		7°.—Kal.		6°.—Kal.	4°.—Kal.
27	6°.—Kal.		6°.—Kal.		5°.—Kal.	3°.—Kal.
28	5°.—Kal.		5°.—Kal.		4°.—Kal.	Pridie Kal.
29	4°.—Kal.		4°.—Kal.		3°.—Kal.	
30	3°.—Kal.		3°.—Kal.		Pridie Kal.	
31	Pridie Kal.		Pridie Kal.			

Anno Biffextili Dies sunt 29 in Februario Mense, tuncque
sexto Kal. Mart. bis ponitur.

RULES to find the *Kalends*, *Nones*, and *Ides*.

Sex *Nonas*, *Maius*, *October*, *Julius*, & *Mars*,
Quatuor at reliqui: tenet *Idus* quilibet octo.
 Inde dies reliquos omnes dic esse *Calendas*.
Nomen sortiri debent à *Mense* sequenti.
Junius, *Aprilis*, *Septémque*, *Novémque* tricenos;
Unum addas reliquis, viginti *Februus* octo.

The Way that the *Romans* used to reckon the Days of their Months, was by the *Kalends*, *Nones*, and *Ides*. *Romulus* began his Months always upon the first Day of the New Moon, and was followed in this by the Authors of other Accounts, to avoid the altering of the immoveable Feasts. Therefore at every new Moon, one of the inferior Priests used to assemble the People in the Capitol, and call over as many Days as there were between that and the *Nones*: And so from the old Word *calo*, to *call*, the first of those Days had the Name of *Kalendæ*. But we must remember, that this Custom of calling the Days continued no longer than the Year of the City 450. when *C. Flavius*, the *Cornelæ* *Edile*, ordered the *Kasti*, or *Kalendar*, to be set up in the publick Places, that every Body might know the Difference of Times, and the Return of Festivals.

The *Nones* were so called, because they reckoned nine Days from them to the *Ides*.

The *Ides* were generally about the Middle of the Month, and then we may derive the Word from *iduarè*, an obsolete Verb, signifying to divide.

The *Kalends* were always fixed to the first Day of every Month; but the *Nones* and the *Ides*, in four Months, were on different Days from the other eight: *March*, *May*, *July*, and *October*, had six *Nones* a-piece, the other only four. Therefore in the first, the *Nones* were the seventh, and the *Ides* the fifteenth; in the last, the *Nones* the fifth, and the *Ides* the thirteenth.

In reckoning these, they always went backwards. Thus, *January* 1, was the first of the *Kalends* of *January*. *December* 31, *Prid. Kal. Jan.* *December* 30, the third *Kal. Jan.* and so on to the thirteenth, and that was *Idus Decembris*; and then the 14th, *Prid. Iduum Decembris*; the 11th, 3.

Idum Decembris, and so on to the fifth Day, and that was *Nonæ Decemb.* And then again the 4th, *Præd. Nonarum Decemb.* the third, 3. *Non. Decemb.* the second, 4. *Non. Decemb.* and the first, *Kalendæ Decembris.*

We must observe, that when we meet with *Kalendas*, *Nonas*, or *Idus*, in the Accusative Case, the Preposition *ante* is always understood: As *tertio Kalendas, Idus, or Nonas*, is the same as *tertio die ante Kal. Non. or Idus.*

These Rules will appear by the foregoing Table.

The words in the rules for the Genders englished.

Adria, the Adriatic gulph, *cometa* a comet, *echinometra* a small shell-fish, *mandragora* a mandrake, *pandectæ* the Digest, *meridies* midday, *dies* a day,——*Vannus* a fan, *acus* a needle, *alvus* a paunch, *domus* an house, *tribus* a tribe, *porticus* a porch, *humus* the ground, *manus* a hand, *carbasus* a sail, *figus* a fig, *quinquatrus* the feast of *Minerva*, *idus* the ides of a month, *colus* a distaff, *grossus* an unripe fig, *phaselus* a pinnace, *rubus* a bramble, *pampinus* a vine leaf, *penus* all manner of provisions for a family, *virus* poison, *pelagus* the sea, *vulgus* the mob.——*Arbor* a tree, *æquor* the sea, *marmor* marble, *ador* fine wheat, *laser* the herb benjamin, *iter* a journey, *tuber* a musbroom, *piper* pepper, *zingiber* ginger, *uber* a teat, *verber* a stripe, *luber* a cork-tree, *cicer* a vetch, *faler* a parsnip, *papaver* a poppy, *ver* the spring, *filer* a kind of willow, *spinther* a clasp, *cadaver* a carcase.——*Linter* a little boat, *laver* waterparsly, *dos* a portion, *cos* a whetstone, *arbor* a tree, *os* a mouth, or bone, *eos* the morning, *diametros* a diameter, *custos* a keeper, *bos* an ox, bull, or cow, *chaos* a confused heap, *epos* a poem, *melos* melody——*Hæpago* a grapple, *cardo* a hinge, *grando* hail, *pugio* a dagger, *findon* fine linen, *icon* an image, *alcyon* a king-fisher, *ædon* a nightingale, *gluten* glew, *unguen* ointment, *inguen* the groin.——As a pound weight, *nefas* impiety, *fas* divine law, *vas* a vessel, *adamas* a diamond, *gigas* a giant, *elephas* an elephant.——*Gurges* a gulph, *poples* the ham, *verres* a boar pig, *paries* a wall, *limes* a boundary, *somes* fuel, *termies* a bough with fruit, *aries* a ram, *lebes* a caldron, *tapes* tapestry, *palmes* a branch, *trames* a cross path, *cespes* a turf, *pēs* a foot, *stipes* a stake, *antes* the fore-ranks of vines, *magnēs* a loafstone, *bes* eight ounces, *æs* brass, *acinaces* a Persian scymitar, *præz* a surety in a cause of money, *ames* a net-sick, *trud*

des a rammer, tudes a mallet.——*Cossis a worm bred in wood, echineis a sea lamprey, antis the fore-rank of wines, cassis a tail, fustis a club, vermis a worm, ensis a sword, torris a fire-brand, caulis a stalk, lapis a stone, follis bellows, axis an axle-tree, orbis any round thing, collis an hill, pollis fine-flower, (urceus a pot,) aqualis a water-pot, (dies a day,) natalis one's birth day, centussis an hundred asses, nummus a coin, decussis ten asses, glis a dormouse, cucumis a cucumber, vomis a plow-share, unguis a man's nail, vepri a briar, sentis a thorn, sanguis blood, piscis a fish, callis a path, cenchris a speckled snake, or speckled hawk, torquis a collar, retis a net, amnis a river, clunis a buttock, corbis a twig-basket, finis an end, pulvis dust, funis a rope.*——

Dens a tooth, seps a venomous serpent, grex a flock, nefrens a pig newly weaned, phoenix a phenix, fons a fountain, me-rops a woodpecker, rudens a cable, fornix an arch, mons a mountain, hydrops the dropsey, gryps a griffon, helops a kind of fish, coccyx a cuckow, pons a bridge, calix a cup, calyx the knop of a flower, chalybs steel, varix a crooked vein, oryx a sort of wild goat, pumex a pumice-stone, limax a snail, silex a flint, cortex rind or bark, carex sedge, fornax a furnace, forfex a pair of sheers, tradux a grass, torrens a land flood, tridens a fork with three spikes, spadix a palm branch, urpax a kind of barrow, bombyx a silk worm, bidens a fork with two spikes, profluens a current, oriens the east, occidens the west, dodrance nine ounces, lynx a beast called an ounce, calx the heel of the foot, stirps when it signifies the body of a tree, imbrex a gutter-tile, perdix a partridge, scrobs a ditch, adeps fat.——*Sal salt, sol the sun, mugil a mullet, salar a young salmon, fur a thief, fursur bran, vultur a vulture, turtur a turtle, Anxur a city in Italy, lepus a hare, mus a mouse, grus a crane, tellus the earth, laus praise, fraus fraud, lagobus the white-partridge, tripus a three legg'd stool, polypus a fish with many feet.*——

Dis Pluto, deus a god, ventus the wind, mensis a month, lapis a stone, gemma a jewel, mons a mountain, fluvius a river, arbor a tree.——*Conjux a husband or wife, atque and parens a father or mother, infans an infant, patruelis a cousin german by the father's side, et and haeres an heir, affinis one allied by marriage, vindex an avenger, judex a judge, dux a leader, miles a soldier, hostis a declared enemy, augur a diviner by observation from birds, antistes a chief priest or priestess, vates a prophet or prophetess, conviva a guest, sacerdos a priest or priestess, que and addas you may add,*

adul, municipi *to one free of the city Rome*, adolescens *a young person*, civis *a citizen*, et *and* auctor *an author*, custos *a keeper*, nemo *no body*, comes *a companion*, testis *a witness*, sus *a swine*, bos *an ox*, bull, or cow, canis *a dog or bitch*, quidam *some* jungunt *join his to these*, præs *a surety in a cause of money*, index *an informer*, martyr *a martyr*, et *and* obles *an hostage*, homo *a man or woman*, sic *so* princeps *a prince or princeps*, que *and* juvenis *a young person*, que *and* cliens *a client*, satelles *an attendant*.

As in præsentî construed.

1. As in præsentî as in the present Tense format forms perfectum the preterperfect tense in avi.

2. Es in præsentî es in the present tense format forms perfectum the preterperfect tense in ui.

Si *if* l vel r *l or r* stet *stands ante before* -geo, geo *ver-*
titur *is changed in si into si*.

Veo *fit is made* vi: et *and sic so* fueo *to be wont* tibi *for-*
mat forms *suevi*.

3. O *fit is made* i in bo, co, do, fo, to, vo, vel *or in* uo.

Ho, go, quo, faciunt tibi *make* xi; et *and ab from*
-esto *fit is made* exi.

Ex *from* lo, mo, *fit is made* ui; no, ro, sco, *formant*
tibi *form* you vi.

Po *format* tibi *forms* psi; sed *but o* tollatur *let o be taken*
ab from -io.

4. Quarta the fourth Conjugation dat *makes is of the*
present tense ivi in the perfect: ut *as*, scio *to know* scivi
monstrat tibi *shows you*.

Simplex *a simple verb* et *and* compositivum *its compound*
dat *makes* idem præteritum the same preterperfect Tense: ut
as docui *I have taught*, edocui *I have taught perfectly* mon-
strat *showeth*: sed *but* syllaba the syllable quam *which* simplex
the simple verb sæpè *often* geminat *doubles* non *geminatur* *is*
not doubled composito in the compound: Creatis the compounds
a of do *to give*, disco *to learn*, sto *to stand*, posco *to require*
exceptis *being excepted*. Flectas *you may decline* præcurro *to*
run

run before, excurro to run out, decurro to run down, accuro to run to, procurro to run forth, dupliciter both ways, per by curri, que and per by cucurri. Compositum the compound a of plico to fold cum with nomine a noun sub or re plievi. Cetera the rest ui, aut or avi; sic so a neco in the compounds of neco. Increpo, to chide sapius oftener optat chooses ui; sed but discrepo to differ, dimico to fight, sapius oftener avi.

Ob-sub-red-oles to cast a scent dant make olui; sed but cetera the rest oleui. Omnia composita all the compounds a of pungo to prick formabunt will form, punxi; unum one repungo to prick again vult will have pupugi, interdumque and sometimes repunxi.

Flecto tertia the third conjugation format tibi forms to you nata the compounds a of do to give didi; abscondo to hide sapius oftener abscondi, nata the compounds a of sto to stand dant give stiti.

Damno to condemn, lacto to wheedle, sacro to dedicate, fallo to deceive, arceo to drive away, tracto to handle, fatiscor to be weary, cando to burn, vetus an old word, capto to lie in wait, jacto to throw, patior to suffer, que and gradior to step, partio to divide, carpo to crop, patro to achieve or finish, scando to climb, spargo to sprinkle, que and pario to bring forth young, si if componantur they are compounded, mutant change vocalem primam the first vowel in e into o.

Hæc these verbs, habeo to have, lateo to lie hid, salio to leap, statuo to erect, cado to fall, lædo to hurt, et and tango to touch, atque and cano to sing, sic so quero to seek, cædo cæcidi to beat, sic so egeo to want, teneo to hold fast, taceo to hold ones peace, sapio to savour, que and rapio to snatch, si if componantur they are compounded, mutant change vocalem primam the first vowel in i into i: sic so displiceo to displease, a from placeo to please: at but complaceo to please, que and perplaceo to please very much.

Composita the compounds a verbis of these verbs calco to tread, salto to leap or dance, mutant change a per u a into u.

Composita the compounds a of claudio to shut, quatio to shake, lavo to wash rejiciunt a cast away a: sic so casso to pretend, incuso to blame. Natum the compound a of plaudo to clap hands ex an from an facit o makes o: ut but applaudo to approve unum alone retinet sibi deep usum the use simplicis of the simple verb.

Si if componas you compound hæc these verbs ago to act, emo to buy, sedeo to sit, -ingo to rule, frango to break, et and

and capio to take, jacio to cast, lacio to allure, specio to behold, premo to press, pango to fasten, sibi mutant they change vocalem primam the first vowel presentis of the present tense, in i into i, nunquam never præteriti that of the preter-perfect tense; ceu as frango to break, refringo to break open refreg.: at but perago to finish sequitur follows formam the form simplicis of the simple verb, que and satago to be busy, depango to fix in the ground, oppango to fasten against, circumpango to fasten about, atque and repango to fasten again. Facio to do variat changeth nil nothing nisi unless præposito præeunte when a preposition goes before; olfacio to smell out docet teaches id that, cum with calfacio to make hot, que and inficio to infect. Nata the compounds a of lego to read, re, per, -præ, -sub, -trans, ad præeunte going before servant keep vocalem the vowel presentis of the present tense, cætera the rest mutant change it in i into i.

Ex from ci, gi, qui, xi, perfectum the perfect-tense definit in-ctus ends in -ctus; ut as, vici to conquer victus. Di, li, ri, si, ti, mutant tibi fines change their endings in sus into sus; ut as vidi to see visus. Sed but mi, ni, pi, formant tibi finalem i form their i final, per tus by tus: ut as, emi to buy emptus. Pfi fiet will become tus præterito in the preterperfect tense vi quoque also fiet will become tus; nam for scripsi to write format formeth scriptus, que and livi to doubt dat giveth litus. Quod a verb that dat makes ui, dat makes itus perfectio in the perfect-tense, ut as, domui to tame domitus, si modo if so be tollas you except verbum in uo a verb in uo, quia because semper formabit it will always form ui in utus into utus, ut as, exui to put of exutus. Nata sevi the compounds of sevi dant give situs, nata do the compounds of do tertiz of the third conjugation dant give ditus. Composita the compounds a of pario to bring forth young pro for partus dant tibi form you pertus. Sic so omnia all the compounds a of rapui raptus formant form reptus. Texui to weave habet hath textus, quoque also serui to set in order habebit will have sertus. Quoque also hæc duo these two compounds de from novi cognitus to know, agnitus to know again extant appear.



